



# Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

---

October 2019



This page intentionally left blank

## Executive Summary Contents

Executive Summary .....	ES-2
Drought Contingency Plan Background .....	ES-3
Lower Platte River Basin .....	ES-3
Basin Water Demands.....	ES-3
Basin Water Supplies.....	ES-4
Vulnerability Assessment .....	ES-4
Drought Monitoring .....	ES-6
Drought Management .....	ES-8
Drought Mitigation Measures .....	ES-8
Drought Response Actions .....	ES-12
Operational and Administrative Framework.....	ES-12
Future Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan Updates .....	ES-12
Continued Communication and Outreach.....	ES-12

## Executive Summary

The Lower Platte South Natural Resources District (NRD), Pappio-Missouri River NRD, Lower Platte North NRD, Metropolitan Utilities District (MUD), Lincoln Water System (LWS), and Nebraska Department of Natural Resources (NeDNR), collectively referred to as the Lower Platte River Consortium (Consortium), have embarked on a collaborative effort to develop a drought contingency plan for the Lower Platte River Basin in Nebraska. Each of the Consortium members have important roles in water management in the Lower Platte River amongst their identified authorities and missions: NRDs are authorized by statute to regulate the use of groundwater while the NeDNR regulates the use of surface water; MUD provides water for the majority of the Omaha metropolitan area; and LWS provides water to the City of Lincoln.

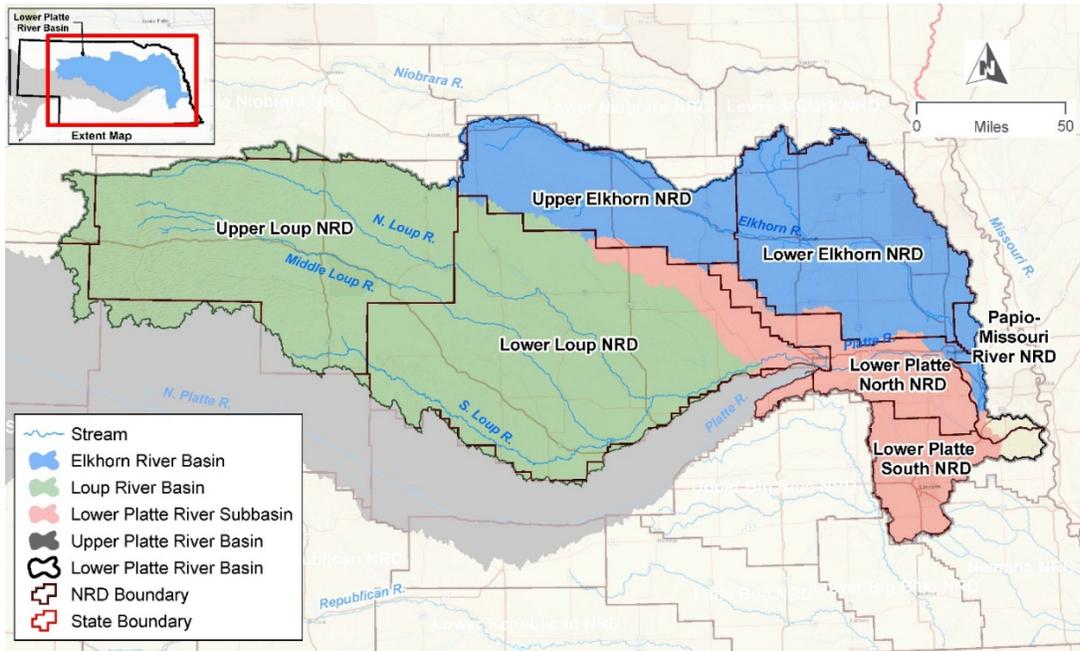
The Lower Platte River, its tributaries, and aquifers serve approximately 80 percent of Nebraska's population, thousands of businesses and industries, includes more than two million irrigated acres, and provides streamflows for threatened and endangered species. The drought-driven risks are diverse and a potential drought in the region would pose serious risk to public health, economy, and fish/wildlife. It is believed that in addressing the water supply shortages during droughts in the Lower Platte River, ancillary benefits to the remaining sectors would accrue including: irrigation, power, environmental, and recreational benefits.

The focus of this first increment of the Drought Plan is to establish a framework for coordination and communication amongst Consortium members to address droughts in the Lower Platte River. In addition a wide range of alternatives for augmenting surface water supplies in the Lower Platte River near Ashland were investigated. This Drought Plan will supplement the current authorities and activities of the Consortium members and is not intended to replace or duplicate efforts (i.e. NRDs address water conservation through their individual groundwater management plans at this time; LWS has a drought management plan prescribing drought triggers and response actions specific to their system operations). With the framework established by this Drought Plan, it is anticipated that Consortium members will continue to evaluate monitoring and communication protocols, mitigation measures, and response actions and revise the plan as necessary.

There are a wide-range of stakeholder interests in the Lower Platte River Basin. The Consortium solicited stakeholder input throughout the planning effort. Two stakeholder workshops and two public open houses were held, and written comments were accepted via comment forms and a project email posted on the project website open to the public.

Member participation in the Consortium is voluntary and member agencies shall not be bound by any initiatives, recommendations or decisions made by the Consortium without a subsequent written agreement or resolution approved by the respective bodies. While represented agencies may elect to seek approval of the Plan by their respective elected officials, formal adoption of the Plan is not required for future participation in the Consortium.

**Figure ES-1: Map of Lower Platte River Basin**



## Drought Contingency Plan Background

In 2017, the Lower Platte River Basin Coalition, which includes the seven NRDs<sup>1</sup> in the Loup, Elkhorn, and Lower Platte River Basins, and NeDNR, adopted the *Lower Platte River Coalition Basin Water Management Plan (Basin Plan)*. The Basin Plan evaluated supplies and demands in the Lower Platte River Basin (Basin) and set criteria for managing new water development, and goals and objectives that work to protect the existing domestic, agricultural, and industrial water uses in the Basin. The Basin Plan found that annual water supplies in the Basin generally tend to be sufficient for most water uses; however, peak demands in the summer months can create water shortages. These shortages are further exacerbated by drought periods when summer flows become most critical in supporting water demands. This planning effort for the *Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan (Drought Plan)* followed the development of the Basin Plan to further address water supply shortages during drought periods, when peak demands overlap periods of low streamflows.

## Lower Platte River Basin

### Basin Water Demands

The water demands and water uses in the Lower Platte River are diverse; they include municipal, domestic, and agricultural uses, instream flows, and hydropower. The water utilities for the municipalities of Omaha and Lincoln, Nebraska, serve the two primary metropolitan areas in Nebraska, constituting approximately 60 percent of Nebraska's population. Both municipalities hold induced recharge permits (permits that protect streamflows adjacent to their well-fields) and municipal groundwater transfer permits (permits where groundwater is transferred from the water well site for use in another location). The Nebraska Game and Parks Commission holds instream flow appropriations for much of the Platte River and specifically in the areas of municipal well-field operations. The Loup Public Power District

<sup>1</sup> This includes the three NRD members of the Consortium (Lower Platte North NRD, Lower Platte South NRD, and Papio-Missouri River NRD).

holds a hydropower appropriation for off-channel hydroelectric power generation. In addition, thousands of individual water rights or groundwater permits are held to support irrigation from both surface water and hydrologically connected groundwater sources.

### **Basin Water Supplies**

Water supplies of the Lower Platte River are driven by snowmelt, rainfall runoff, and aquifer baseflow contributions. Supplies can be highly variable, with annual flows ranging from 2 million acre-feet per year to more than 10 million acre-feet per year.

During low-flow years, the Upper Platte River becomes disconnected from the Lower Platte River with flows at Duncan, Nebraska, representing a negligible portion of flows observed in the Lower Platte River. During these times, most of the flow in the Lower Platte River originates from the groundwater-fed Loup River, Elkhorn River, and Platte River tributaries downstream from Duncan. The water supplies of the Loup River and Elkhorn River subbasins tend to be more reliable because of significant baseflow contributions. During drought periods, these water supplies reliant on baseflow contributions are stressed in support of irrigated agricultural production (primarily corn and soybeans).

While annual water supplies in the Lower Platte River generally tend to be sufficient for most water uses, peak demands in the summer months can create water shortages, typically in July and August. These shortages are further exacerbated by drought periods when summer flows become most critical in supporting water demands.

### **Vulnerability Assessment**

“[V]ulnerability to drought is the product of numerous interrelated factors such as population growth and shifts, urbanization, demographic characteristics, water use trends, social behavior, and environmental susceptibilities.... The degree to which a population is vulnerable hinges on the ability to anticipate, to deal with, resist, and recover from the drought” (Commission on Water Resource Management 2003).

The effects from drought can be classified as direct and indirect. Direct effects include physical destruction of property, crops, natural resources, as well as public health and safety. Indirect effects are consequences of that destruction, such as temporary unemployment and business interruption (National Academy of Sciences 1999). “The most vulnerable portions of the state in terms of economic impact are cropland, pasture land for animals, recreational areas, and businesses that depend on agricultural industries for the bulk of their business. However, all areas of the state can be impacted by drought events” (Nebraska Emergency Management Agency [NEMA] 2014). Figure ES-2 summarizes sectors that are affected by drought (both agriculture and non-agriculture).

**Figure ES-2: An Overview of Drought Economic Effects**



*Source: Adapted from Ding, Hayes, and Widhalm 2010*

Public water systems along the Lower Platte River are largely dependent on aquifers hydrologically connected to the river and its tributaries, and dependent on streamflow for recharge. Omaha and Lincoln, Nebraska’s two largest municipalities, rely heavily on water supplies in the Lower Platte River to support well-field operations adjacent to the river. MUD’s water system receives roughly half of its capacity from the Lower Platte River and the other half is received from the Missouri River. The capacity of Lincoln Water Systems’ Ashland Well-field is directly dependent on flows in the Lower Platte River adjacent to the well-field. The vulnerability of public water supply during drought is amplified in the Lower Platte River Basin due to the lack of redundant water sources. With the exception of MUD, public water systems along the Lower Platte River rely solely on the aquifers hydrologically connected to the Platte River and are reliant on its flows for recharge.

The Lower Platte River provides habitat for numerous species, including federally listed threatened and endangered species, which are dependent on sustained flows. In addition, this reach of the river provides recreational amenities for the eastern portion of the state, including the primary population centers.

## Drought Monitoring

Hydroclimate indices assess drought severity and are essential for tracking and anticipating droughts as well as providing historical reference. Indices provide useful triggers to help direct decision-makers toward proactive risk management. For this increment of the Drought Plan, the Palmer Drought Severity Index (PDSI) will be utilized in combination with streamflow observations for drought determination in the Lower Platte River Basin. The PDSI reflects recent precipitation and the soil moisture balance. Zero or near zero PDSI values indicate normal conditions, a negative PDSI value indicates below normal (drought conditions); and a positive value represents above normal (wetter periods).

Four categories of drought have been identified for the Drought Plan. These levels of drought remain consistent with the National Drought Monitor definitions of drought. These categories and corresponding PDSI and streamflow thresholds are presented in Table ES-1.

The following lists the levels of drought and their corresponding definition:

- A Level 0, “Abnormally Dry”<sup>2</sup> indicates an area may be experiencing “short-term dryness slowing planting, growth of crops or pastures” indicating the onset of drought or may be coming out of drought and experiencing lingering effects of drought.
- A Level 1, “Moderate Drought” involves “some damage to crops, pastures; streams, reservoirs, or wells low, some water shortages developing or imminent; and voluntary water-use restrictions requested.”
- A Level 2, “Severe Drought” means that “crop or pasture losses likely; water shortages common; and water restrictions imposed.”
- A Level 3, “Extreme Drought” involves “major crop/pasture losses” and “widespread water shortages or restrictions.”

**Table ES-1: Drought Triggers**

Category	Level	Palmer Drought Severity Index (PDSI)	Platte River Stream flow at Ashland
<b>Mild Drought</b>	Level 0	-1.0 to -1.99	--
<b>Moderate Drought</b>	Level 1	-2.0 to -2.99	3,000-1,500 cfs
<b>Severe Drought</b>	Level 2	-3.0 to -3.99	1,500-500 cfs
<b>Extreme Drought</b>	Level 3	-4.0 and below	Less than 500 cfs

*Notes: PDSI = Palmer Drought Severity Index*

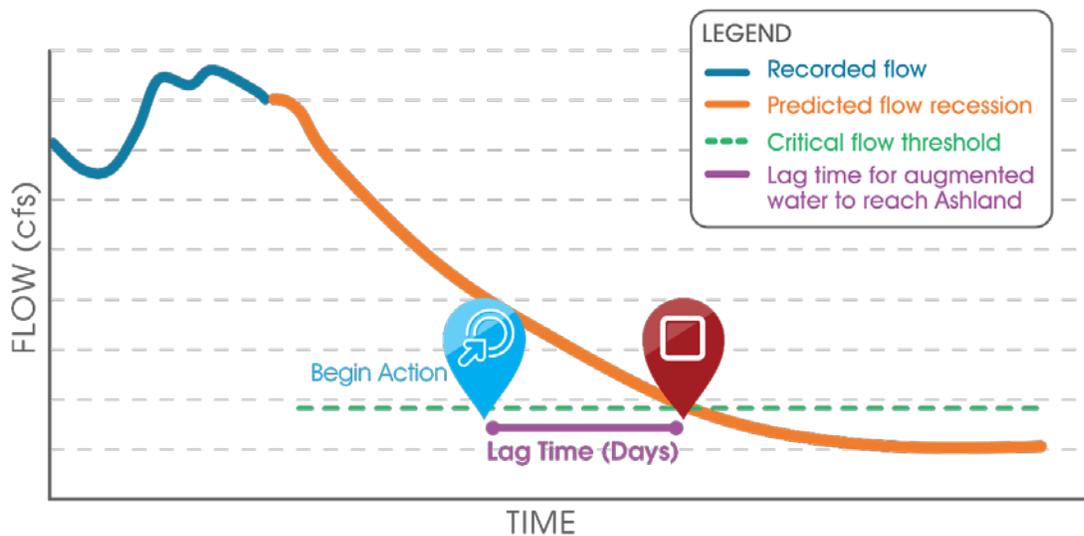
Analysis of historic PDSI values from the last 116 years reveal that mild, moderate, severe, and extreme droughts have historically occurred in the Lower Platte River Basin on average once every three, six, nine, and fourteen years, respectively.

<sup>2</sup> An “Abnormally Dry” classification by the National Drought Monitor corresponds to a PDSI “mild drought” classification. The “Moderate Drought”, “Severe Drought” and “Extreme Drought” classifications are the same between the National Drought Monitor and PDSI.

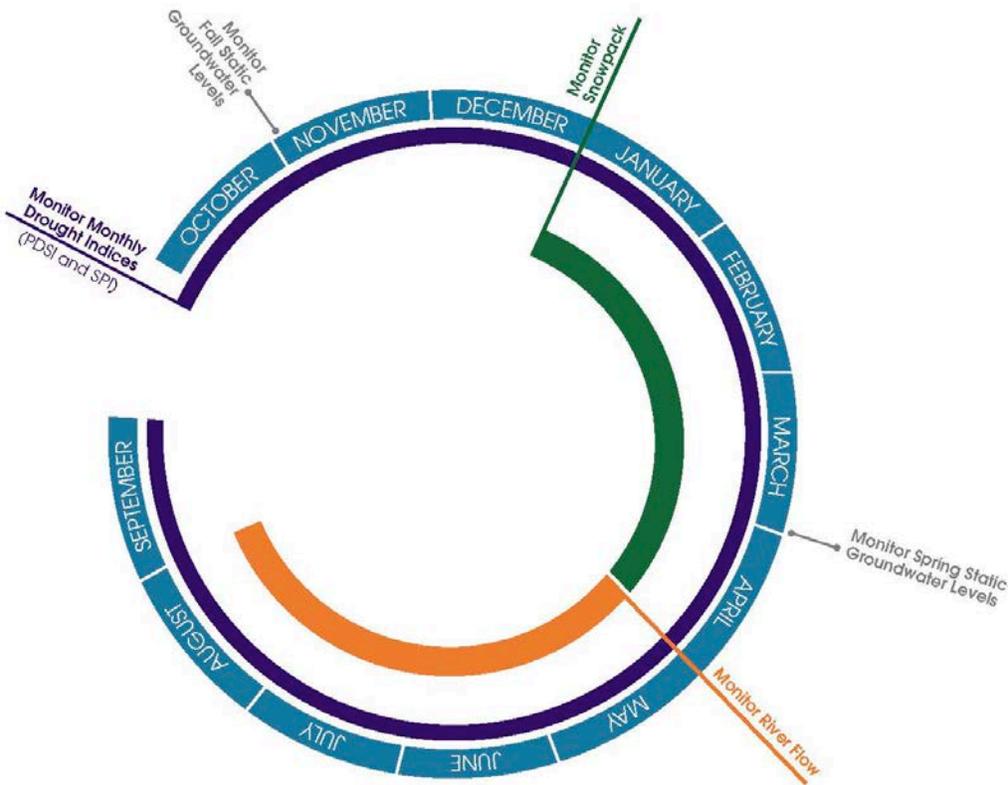
It should be noted that no groundwater trigger is included in Table ES-1. Each NRD has some form of drought monitoring and triggers for response actions in defined areas of their District. The intent of the Drought Plan is not to replace each members' groundwater monitoring and management plans, but rather to provide consistent, basin-scale data and information that can be used by NRDs, while maintaining locally-based management frameworks. The individual NRD plans are discussed in detail in Appendix A.

Understanding the behavior of the Platte River at Ashland as flows recede is important to the ability of the Consortium to forecast and properly time the implementation of response actions. Using the Platte River at Ashland Recession Tool allows the user to enter the current observed flow in the Platte River at Ashland and predict the flow decay behavior for the next 30 days, assuming no further inputs to the system (precipitation runoff or upstream storage releases). The resulting recession curve can be used to estimate the days until a critical threshold is reached. The development of the Platte River at Ashland Recession Tool is discussed in detail in Appendix E. Figure ES-3 is a schematic of the functional utility of the Platte River at Ashland Recession Tool in drought forecasting and response.

**Figure ES-3: Platte River at Ashland Recession Tool**



**Figure ES-4: Drought Monitoring Continuum**



The recommended timeline for drought monitoring is displayed in Figure ES-4. Hydroclimate indices (Standardized Precipitation Index (SPI) and PDSI) should be monitored year round. Groundwater levels are monitored by NRDs in the spring and fall of each year in accordance with their individual groundwater management plans. Snowpack volumes should be monitored from the beginning of the calendar year through the runoff season. Streamflows should be monitored starting in late spring through the summer when water use for irrigation, cooling, and lawn watering is at its peak.

## Drought Management

### Drought Mitigation Measures

Drought mitigation measures are actions, programs, and strategies implemented during non-drought periods to address potential risks and effects and to reduce the need for response actions; implementation of drought mitigation measures improves long-term resilience and reliability of the regional water supply.

Nine mitigation measures, and variations or combinations thereof, were evaluated as part of the Drought Planning effort to estimate potential increases in regional water supply. These measures include the following and are summarized in Tables ES-2A and ES-2B:

- Installing an alluvial well-field adjacent to the Missouri River and pumping water to a tributary of the Elkhorn River for availability on demand (two alternatives considered in Tables ES-2A and ES-2B: one that discharges directly into Bell Creek and a second that discharges into the proposed Bell Creek Reservoir);
- Purchasing storage in the existing Sherman Reservoir and releasing water on demand (two release volumes considered in Table ES-2A);

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan Executive Summary

- A new surface water storage reservoir on Skull Creek near Linwood for releasing water on demand;
- A new surface water storage reservoir on Bell Creek east of Winslow for releasing water on demand;
- Capture of Middle Loup River water in the non-irrigation season and diversion into the Middle Loup Canal system for intentional recharge and increase baseflow (two demand scenarios evaluated in Tables ES-2A and ES-2B: one that considers the historic Loup hydropower operations downstream and a second that considers the full Loup hydropower appropriation downstream);
- Installing a well-field to tap into groundwater aquifers with limited connection to streamflow that can be pumped to the river to augment flows;
- Pumping from alluvial sandpits directly to the river to augment flows; and
- A rapid response area/dry-year-lease agreement with farmers irrigating lands adjacent to the main channel of the Platte River from the alluvial aquifer.
- Interconnection of MUD and LWS finished water supplies, providing LWS access to the Missouri River as a source of potable water

Conceptual design of infrastructure requirements and anticipated operational characteristics were defined for each mitigation measure. In addition, the estimated project yield to the Lower Platte River at the Ashland gage was determined. For projects upstream in the basin, a routing tool was used to estimate the losses that occur during conveyance to the Ashland gage. This routing tool utilizes historic reach loss data during low-flow periods to estimate conveyance losses (see Appendix D). As part of this planning effort, continuous recording monitoring wells paired with stage recorders were installed to foster a better understanding of losses in the Lower Platte River under varying hydrologic conditions.

For comparison of alternative costs and benefits, a 20-year period was evaluated to reflect the relative reliability of water from the mitigation action, i.e. for some mitigation actions water will not be available every year. A 15-day operation period, targeting the typical late-July/early-August critical low-flow period in the Lower Platte River, was assumed for project operations. For developing cost/acre-foot estimates included in Table ES-2A, costs were estimated over a 20-year period without using a discount rate or otherwise accounting for the time value of money. Benefits were based on acre-feet of water estimated to be delivered at the Ashland gage during the 15-day target period over the 20-yr period. Assumptions for each mitigation action are described in Section 5.0 and Appendix C.

Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

Executive Summary

**Table ES-2A: Evaluation of Potential Mitigation Measures (cost estimate versus volume of water added)**

Alternative	Volume Added at Source			Volume Increase at Ashland		Cost Estimate	Cost per acre-foot added at Ashland
	Cumulative AF/15 days	Ave Daily cfs	Where Added	Cumulative AF/15 days	Ave Daily cfs		
 Import Missouri River Water (via alluvial well-field) to Bell Creek (no reservoir)	59,400	100	Waterloo	46,300	80	\$76,572,840	\$1,654
 Sherman Release (400 cfs at St Paul)	47,520	400	St. Paul	15,720	132	\$9,628,000	\$612
 Sherman Release (250 cfs at St. Paul)	29,700	250	St. Paul	9,800	83	\$6,955,000	\$710
 Skull Creek Res. Rel. (100 cfs at Linwood)	59,400	100	Linwood	46,300	80	\$32,630,000	\$705
 Bell Creek Reservoir (Release 100 cfs at Waterloo)	59,400	100	Waterloo	46,300	80	\$81,520,000	\$1,761
 Pump Missouri River water (vial alluvial well-field) into Bell Creek Reservoir	59,400	100	Waterloo	46,300	80	\$129,564,000	\$2,798
 Middle Loup Canal Recharge (Historic Loup Canal Operations)	7,525	13	Arcadia	2,525	4	\$16,360,000	\$6,478
 Middle Loup Canal Recharge (Full Hydropower Right downstream)	2,034	3	Arcadia	634	1	\$5,225,000	\$8,238
 Alluvial sandpit pumping	14,850	100	Leshara	14,850	100	\$5,980,000	\$403
 Augmentation Well-field	59,400	100	TBD	59,400	100	\$81,008,040	\$1,364
 Rapid Response Area/ Dry-year Lease	4,000	33	Columbus to Louisville	4,000	33	\$248,500,800	\$62,125
 Interconnection of MUD and LWS finished water supplies	See notes	See notes	See notes	See notes	See notes	See notes	See notes

*Notes:*

*This list is not intended to be all-inclusive. Potential mitigation measures may be further evaluated in future increments of the Drought Plan*

*AF = acre-feet; cfs = cubic feet per second;*

*20-year period evaluated to reflect relative reliability of each measure;*

*Fifteen-day operating period, targeting late July/early August critical low-flow period;*

*Routing tool used to estimate reach gains/losses;*

*Cost per acre-foot based on water that makes it to Ashland (common point). Reach losses for evaluation assume 66% loss from the Loup River to Ashland, 20% loss from the Elkhorn River to Ashland, and 20% loss from North Bend to Ashland;*

*Interconnection would directly link of MUD and LWS finished water supplies without utilizing the Platte River for conveyance and would directly address impacts of drought on potable water supplies. A more detailed analysis of feasibility and costs associated with this alternative is being conducted as a separate study.*

**Table ES-2B: Evaluation of Potential Mitigation Measures (advantages, disadvantages, and uncertainties)**

Alternative		Advantages	Disadvantages	Uncertainties
	Import Missouri River Water (to Bell Creek/no reservoir)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Secondary source of water outside of Platte River basin increases reliability of supply.</li> <li>Operational every year &amp; year-round</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Larger construction cost than many alternatives</li> <li>Implementation - 5-10 years</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Future regulation on Missouri River</li> <li>Well field siting</li> </ul>
	Sherman Release (400 cfs at St Paul)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Utilizes existing facilities (no construction cost; ability to pilot study)</li> <li>Produces large volume of water on-demand</li> <li>Loup River historically a reliable water supply source.</li> <li>Implementation: 1-2 years</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Likely limitation on frequency of call on storage water</li> <li>Significant conveyance losses from release point to Lower Platte River</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Requires cooperation and agreements with existing facility owners.</li> <li>Negotiations will dictate price.</li> <li>Cost estimates based on similar agreements in state.</li> </ul>
	Sherman Release (250 cfs at St. Paul)			
	Skull Creek Res. Rel. (100 cfs at Linwood)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Produces large volume of water on demand</li> <li>Potential for multi-purpose facility</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Larger construction cost than many alternatives</li> <li>Land requirements, involving multiple landowners</li> <li>Implementation: 5-10 years</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Runoff volume varies year to year</li> <li>Land use impacts on runoff</li> <li>Implementation (permitting, land purchase, etc.)</li> </ul>
	Bell Creek Reservoir (Release 100 cfs at Waterloo)			
 	Pump Missouri River water (via alluvial well-field) into Bell Creek Reservoir	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Secondary source of water outside of Platte River basin increases reliability.</li> <li>Operational every year &amp; year-round.</li> <li>Importing into Bell Creek Reservoir requires a lower capacity system for importing water - saving money</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Larger costs associated with combining alternatives that require both land and infrastructure.</li> <li>Implementation: 5-10 years</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Future regulation on Missouri River</li> <li>Well field siting</li> <li>Implementation (permitting, land purchase, etc.)</li> </ul>
	Middle Loup Canal Recharge (Historic Loup Canal Operations)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The canal recharge and dry-year lease projects are passive mitigation measures whose benefits (passive baseflow returns) accrue throughout the year, adding to the overall supply reliability.</li> <li>Existing infrastructure – no initial construction costs</li> <li>Implementation: 1-2 years</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Unavailable to release a pulse of water volume “on-demand”.</li> <li>Takes time for the full benefit to be realized in river (lag effect) and some attenuation</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Requires cooperation and agreements with existing facility and/or landowners.</li> <li>Negotiations will dictate price.</li> <li>Cost estimates based on similar agreements in state.</li> <li>Amount of improvement of overall system supply reliability from year around accretions</li> </ul>
	Middle Loup Canal Recharge (Full Hydropower Right downstream)			
	Alluvial sandpit pumping	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Minimal infrastructure costs (pumps from existing sandpits)</li> <li>Utilizes existing sandpits (no construction costs)</li> <li>Implementation: 3-5 years</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Limited operation window as pumping this close to the river may cause depletions to the stream (lag effect) that amplify impacts during extended drought</li> <li>Logistics of securing agreements with multiple landowners</li> <li>Likely limitation on the number of calls allowed in a 20-year period</li> </ul>	
	Augmentation Well-field	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available every year &amp; year-round</li> <li>Can be located closer to critical reach to reduce losses compared to alternatives producing similar volumes upstream in the Basin.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Land &amp; infrastructure costs make this one of the more expensive alternatives.</li> <li>Adds to overall depletions</li> <li>Implementation: 5-10 years</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Siting to avoid interference with existing wells.</li> <li>Long-term reliability of aquifer</li> </ul>
	Rapid Response Area/ Dry-year Lease	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No infrastructure or construction necessary.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Logistics of securing agreements with thousands of producers</li> <li>Likely limitation on the number of calls allowed in a 20-year period</li> <li>Most expensive of all the alternatives by an order of magnitude based on assumptions.</li> <li>Crop insurance likely affected in years when agreement enforced</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Negotiations will dictate price.</li> <li>Cost estimates based on similar agreements in state, and factors such as cost differential between irrigated and dry land rental rates.</li> <li>Uncertain how many producers would participate (benefits assume 100% participation which is unlikely)</li> </ul>
	Interconnection of MUD and LWS finished water supplies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Directly and efficiently addresses drought impacts on potable water supplies</li> <li>Provides access to the drought-resistant Missouri River as a source</li> <li>Implementation: 3-5 years</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Does not directly address low flow conditions on the Platte River during drought; however may reduce pumping demands on municipal wells adjacent to the Platte River during drought conditions</li> <li>Infrastructure costs associated with linking finished water supplies</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Feasibility of linking water supplies (water chemistry, system hydraulics, legal framework, etc.)</li> <li>A more detailed feasibility study is currently being undertaken</li> </ul>

Note: This list is not intended to be all-inclusive. Potential mitigation measures may be further evaluated in future increments of the Drought Plan

## **Drought Response Actions**

Drought response actions are near-term actions triggered during specific stages of drought to manage the limited supply and to decrease the severity of immediate effects of drought periods on the regional water supply. In this first increment of the Drought Plan, potential mitigation measures (Table E-2) have been evaluated, but preferred measures have not been determined or constructed; therefore, the primary drought response action available to the Consortium at this time is communication and outreach. Individual members of the Consortium have specific drought response actions that each will continue to implement in response to drought conditions.

Consistent and coordinated messaging to basin water users (municipal, industrial, domestic, irrigation, etc.), as well as the general public, raises awareness of the current water supply conditions, allows water users to proactively alter their demand and usage based on limited water supplies, and defines expectations of forecasted conditions and potential actions in response to the drought.

## **Operational and Administrative Framework**

### **Future Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan Updates**

The Drought Plan and associated planning is meant to be part of an adaptive process that is routinely updated to reflect the needs of the basin. The Consortium will hold meetings each year and will evaluate the need for updating the Drought Plan every five years. The following list provides information related to the anticipated frequency of Consortium actions and steps taken in regard to updating the Drought Plan:

- On an annual basis, the Consortium will gather information and make any necessary updates to the Vulnerability Assessment.
- On an annual basis, the Consortium will review any changes in the Vulnerability Assessment, determine the need for new and revised actions, update the status of existing actions, and add new actions (as needed).
- Every five years, the Consortium will assess the need for and prepare an updated Drought Plan (as needed).

It should be noted that the Consortium may identify planning and technical efforts outside those anticipated that need to be undertaken based on changed conditions or a potential need.

### **Continued Communication and Outreach**

The Consortium will consider the only drought response action available to it at this time, which is communication and outreach. The following list provides information related to communication and outreach:

- The Consortium will keep the project website updated and will send emails to keep interested stakeholders informed of meetings, new materials, and other information related to the Drought Plan and its implementation.
- The Consortium will post drought monitoring information and drought status information on the project website as needed and as conditions change.
- Each individual agency in the Consortium will be responsible for informing its constituents, customers, and the public of any actions initiated and related progress and results.

Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan  
Executive Summary

- Coordination and information sharing with other ongoing efforts will be mutually beneficial (Missouri Basin Plan, Nebraska Emergency Management Agency, etc.). It is anticipated that this coordination and information sharing with other ongoing efforts and agencies will occur on an as-needed basis.

This page intentionally left blank

## Contents

1.0	Background .....	1
1.1	Plan Purpose.....	2
1.2	Pre-Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan Activities .....	2
1.3	Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan Development and Public Outreach Efforts .....	3
1.3.1	Consortium Meetings.....	3
1.3.2	Stakeholder and Public Outreach Efforts .....	3
1.3.3	Consortium Workshops.....	4
1.3.4	Public Open Houses.....	4
2.0	Lower Platte River Basin .....	5
2.1	Loup River Subbasin.....	8
2.2	Lower Platte River Subbasin.....	9
2.3	Elkhorn River Subbasin .....	11
2.4	Upper Platte River Basin.....	12
2.4.1	Platte River Recovery Implementation Program .....	14
2.5	Surface Water and Groundwater Interaction.....	15
2.6	Water Supply .....	18
2.7	Water Demand .....	19
2.7.1	Surface Water Demands.....	20
2.7.2	Induced Groundwater Recharge Permits (Lincoln and Omaha Public Water Utilities) .....	21
2.7.3	Groundwater Demands .....	23
2.8	Non-consumptive use demands .....	31
2.9	Supplies versus Demands.....	32
2.10	Consideration of Future Demands .....	37
2.10.1	Estimated Growth of Groundwater Development.....	37
2.10.2	Population Growth .....	38
2.10.3	Projected Future Water Change in Lower Platte River Basin.....	40
3.0	Vulnerability Assessment .....	41
3.1	Agricultural Sector.....	43
3.2	Non-agricultural Groundwater Users (Domestic, Commercial, Industrial).....	44
3.3	Energy Sector.....	44
3.4	Public Water Supply .....	45
3.4.1	Water Supply Capacity Limitations.....	45
3.5	Recreational and Environmental Sector.....	46

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

3.6	Public Health Sector .....	47
3.7	Potential Future Vulnerabilities attributable to Climate Change .....	48
4.0	Drought Monitoring .....	49
4.1	Defining a Drought .....	49
4.2	Hydro Climate Indices .....	50
4.2.1	Palmer Drought Severity Index.....	51
4.2.2	Standardized Precipitation Index .....	52
4.2.3	Other Drought Indicators .....	52
4.3	Historic Occurrences of Drought .....	53
4.4	Drought Indicators for the Lower Platte River Basin .....	57
4.4.1	Platte River at Ashland Recession Tool.....	59
4.4.2	U.S. Drought Monitor .....	59
4.4.3	North Central U.S. Monthly Climate and Drought Summary Outlook.....	59
5.0	Drought Management .....	60
5.1	Mitigation Alternatives .....	61
5.1.1	Additional Supply – Missouri River .....	62
5.1.2	Surface Water Storage Alternatives .....	62
5.1.3	Canal Recharge through Canal Seepage .....	73
5.1.4	Dry-year Lease Option.....	77
5.1.5	Alluvial Groundwater Pumping .....	78
5.1.6	Groundwater Well-field Augmentation Project .....	79
5.1.7	Interconnection of MUD and LWS Finished Water Supplies.....	80
5.2	Evaluation of Potential Mitigation Measures.....	80
5.3	Response Actions.....	84
5.3.1	Coordinated Public Messaging Effort.....	84
5.4	Additional Drought Resources .....	87
5.4.1	National Drought Mitigation Center .....	88
5.4.2	Nebraska Soil and Water Conservation Program.....	88
5.4.3	Education Programs .....	89
5.4.4	Administrative Actions .....	90
5.4.5	Rural Water Supply.....	91
5.4.6	Agricultural Sector Response Actions .....	92
6.0	Operational and Administrative Framework, and Plan Update Process .....	92
6.1	Plan Implementation .....	93
6.2	Plan Update Process.....	95

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

6.3	Continued Communication and Outreach.....	96
7.0	Glossary of Terms.....	96
8.0	References.....	101

## Tables

Table 1: First 5-Year Increment Allowable Development (Depletions) by Subbasin for New Surface and Groundwater Uses.....	7
Table 2: Minimum Daily Discharge in Platte River at Duncan.....	14
Table 3: List of key water rights and water demands in the Lower Platte River Basin.....	19
Table 4: Surface Water Appropriations by Number of Diversion Points, Lower Platte River Basin.....	21
Table 5: Current Groundwater Well Development by Number of Registered Groundwater Wells, Lower Platte River Basin.....	23
Table 6: Number of irrigated acres by NRD.....	28
Table 7: Palmer Drought Severity Index Classifications.....	51
Table 8: SPI Classifications.....	52
Table 9: North Central Climate Division (Division 02): Percent of Time Spent in Drought – 1900 to 2016.....	53
Table 10: Northeast Climate Division (Division 03): Percent of Time Spent in Drought – 1900 to 2016.....	53
Table 11: Central Climate Division (Division 05): Percent of Time Spent in Drought – 1900 to 2016.....	54
Table 12: East Central Climate Division (Division 06): Percent of Time Spent in Drought – 1900 to 2016.....	54
Table 13: North Central Climate Division (Division 02): Number of Months Spent in Specific Drought Periods.....	55
Table 14: Northeast Climate Division (Division 03): Number of Months Spent in Specific Drought Periods.....	55
Table 15: Central Climate Division (Division 05): Number of Months Spent in Specific Drought Periods.....	56
Table 16: East Central Climate Division (Division 06): Number of Months Spent in Specific Drought Periods.....	56
Table 17: Drought Triggers.....	58
Table 18: Evaluation of Potential Mitigation Measures (cost estimate versus volume of water added)....	82
Table 19: Evaluation of Potential Mitigation Measures (advantages, disadvantages, and uncertainties)...	83
Table 20: Media Contact Information.....	84
Table 21: Scripted Message Template.....	87
Table 22: Nebraska Soil and Water Conservation Program – Drought Relevant Practices.....	88

Table 23: Drought Monitoring Roles/Responsibilities ..... 93  
 Table 24: Drought Monitoring Continuum..... 95

## Figures

Figure 1: Map of Lower Platte River Basin..... 5  
 Figure 2: Lower Platte River Basin – Hydrologically Connected Area..... 6  
 Figure 3: Loup River Subbasin ..... 8  
 Figure 4: Loup River Subbasin Canals ..... 9  
 Figure 5: Lower Platte River Subbasin ..... 10  
 Figure 6: Elkhorn River Subbasin..... 11  
 Figure 7: Upper Platte River Basin and Lower Platte River Basin..... 12  
 Figure 8: Upper Platte Hydropower and Canal Operation..... 13  
 Figure 9: Upper Platte River Basin Hydrologically Connected and Overappropriated Areas..... 13  
 Figure 10: Nebraska Topographic Regions and Principal Aquifers ..... 16  
 Figure 11: Depth to Groundwater ..... 16  
 Figure 12: Saturated Thickness of the High Plains Aquifer, 2009..... 17  
 Figure 13: Groundwater Modeling Studies..... 17  
 Figure 14: USGS Stream Gage Locations ..... 18  
 Figure 15: Streamflow data for the Lower Platte River near Ashland..... 19  
 Figure 16: Surface Water Point of Diversions ..... 20  
 Figure 17: Metropolitan Utilities District and Lincoln Water System Municipal Well-field Locations .... 21  
 Figure 18: Model-Predicted Well-field Capacity and 2012 Pumping Conditions ..... 22  
 Figure 19: Distribution of Groundwater Wells in Lower Platte River Basin..... 24  
 Figure 20: 2012 Estimated Municipal Groundwater Demands by Natural Resources District ..... 25  
 Figure 21: 2012 Estimated Municipal Groundwater Demands by County (Not including Lincoln or MUD well-fields) ..... 26  
 Figure 22: 2012 Estimated Municipal Groundwater Demands by Month..... 27  
 Figure 23: Density of Active Irrigation Groundwater Wells ..... 27  
 Figure 24: Number of Irrigated Acres by County ..... 28  
 Figure 25: 2012 Estimated Industrial Groundwater Demands by NRD ..... 29  
 Figure 26: 2012 Estimated Industrial Groundwater Demands by County ..... 30  
 Figure 27: 2012 Estimated Industrial Groundwater Demands by Month ..... 31  
 Figure 28: Total Platte River instream flow appropriations..... 32  
 Figure 29: Estimated annual supply vs. demands in the Elkhorn River Basin (1988-2012) ..... 33  
 Figure 30: Estimated peak season supply vs. demands in the Elkhorn River Basin (1988-2012)..... 33

Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

Figure 31: Estimated annual supply vs. demands in the Loup River Basin (1988-2012)..... 34

Figure 32: Estimated peak season supply vs. demands in the Loup River Basin (1988-2012) ..... 34

Figure 33: Estimated annual supply vs. demands in the Lower Platte River subbasin (1988-2012)..... 35

Figure 34: Estimated peak season supply vs. demands in the Lower Platte River Subbasin  
(1988-2012) ..... 35

Figure 35: Platte River Streamflow at Louisville versus MUD and LWS induced groundwater  
recharge permits (1988-2012)..... 36

Figure 36: Platte River streamflow at Louisville versus daily instream flow demand (1988-2012) ..... 37

Figure 37: High Capacity Well Development, Lower Platte River Basin ..... 38

Figure 38: 2010 Population by County ..... 39

Figure 39: 2000 – 2010 Population Change by County ..... 39

Figure 40: Projected Percent Change in Future Water Use in the United States from 2005 to 2060  
for the A-1B Climate Scenario ..... 41

Figure 41: An Overview of Drought Economic Effects ..... 42

Figure 42: Groundwater-Level Changes in Nebraska – Spring 2011 to Spring 2016 ..... 43

Figure 43: Percent of Normal Precipitation – January 2011 to January 2016 ..... 43

Figure 44: Loup Public Power Canal System ..... 45

Figure 45: Observed and Projected Temperature Change in Nebraska ..... 48

Figure 46: Drought Transfer Process and Interactions ..... 50

Figure 47: National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration Climate Divisions for Nebraska ..... 51

Figure 48: Number of Active Groundwater Irrigation Wells by Year ..... 57

Figure 49: Platte River at Ashland Recession Tool ..... 59

Figure 50: Drought Monitoring Continuum..... 60

Figure 51: Sherman Reservoir and Farwell Canal System ..... 63

Figure 52: Skull Creek Reservoir Proposed Location..... 64

Figure 53: Skull Creek Reservoir Stage-Storage ..... 65

Figure 54: Skull Creek Reservoir Routing..... 66

Figure 55: Skull Creek Average Monthly Volume ..... 66

Figure 56: Skull Creek Estimated July Releases..... 67

Figure 57: Bell Creek Reservoir Proposed Location ..... 68

Figure 58: Bell Creek Reservoir Stage-Storage ..... 69

Figure 59: Bell Creek Reservoir Routing (Runoff as only inflow)..... 70

Figure 60: Bell Creek Reservoir Average Monthly Storage Volume based on Runoff..... 70

Figure 61: Bell Creek Estimated July Releases (Runoff as only inflow)..... 71

Figure 62: Bell Creek Reservoir Routing (importing Missouri River water) ..... 72

Figure 63: Bell Creek Average Monthly Volume importing Missouri River water ..... 72

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

Figure 64: Bell Creek Estimated July Releases (importing Missouri River water) .....	73
Figure 65: Middle Loup Canals .....	74
Figure 66: Average Middle Loup River Excess Flow (based on Loup Power Surface Water Appropriation) .....	74
Figure 67: Average Middle Loup River Excess Flow (based on historic Loup Power Canal diversion) ...	75
Figure 68: Cumulative Middle Loup Canal Diversions versus Cumulative Returns to Middle Loup River (assuming historic Loup Power Canal diversion).....	76
Figure 69: Cumulative Middle Loup Canal Diversions vs Cumulative Returns to Middle Loup River (assuming Loup Power Surface Water Appropriation) .....	76
Figure 70: Platte River – Five Mile Buffer – Columbus to Louisville .....	77
Figure 71: Platte River Alluvial Sandpits .....	78
Figure 72: 90-Day Stream Depletion Factor Line .....	79
Figure 73: Instream flow Trigger Locations .....	91
Figure 74: Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan Implementation Actions .....	94

## Appendices

Appendix A: Current Drought Monitoring and Drought Plans

Appendix B: Evaluation of Hydroclimate Indices

Appendix C: Cost-Estimate of Potential Mitigation Actions

Appendix D: Modeling Tools

Appendix E: Platte River at Ashland Recession Tool

Appendix F: Public Outreach and Stakeholder Involvement

## 1.0 Background

In 2017, the Lower Platte River Basin Coalition, which includes the seven NRDs<sup>3</sup> in the Loup, Elkhorn, and Lower Platte River Basins, and NeDNR, adopted the *Lower Platte River Coalition Basin Water Management Plan (Basin Plan)*. The Basin Plan evaluated supplies and demands in the Lower Platte River Basin (Basin) and sets criteria for managing new water development, and goals and objectives that work to protect the existing domestic, agricultural, and industrial water uses in the Basin. The Basin Plan found that annual water supplies in the Basin generally tend to be supportive of most water uses; however, peak demands in the summer months can create water shortages. These shortages are further exacerbated by drought periods when summer flows become most critical in supporting water demands.

The governing philosophy in developing the criteria for new water development in the Basin Plan was to responsibly allow new development based on average peak season supplies and not forego opportunities for new development based on the potential for low flows to occur a few weeks each year. The Consortium's efforts then build upon the Basin Plan by developing a Drought Plan aimed at mitigating water supply shortages during drought periods, when peak demands overlap periods of low streamflows.

The Lower Platte South Natural Resources District (NRD), Papio-Missouri River NRD, Lower Platte North NRD, Metropolitan Utilities District (MUD), Lincoln Water System (LWS), and Nebraska Department of Natural Resources (NeDNR), collectively referred to as the Lower Platte River Consortium (Consortium), embarked on a collaborative effort to develop a drought contingency plan for the Lower Platte River Basin in Nebraska (*Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan [Drought Plan]*).

The Lower Platte River, its tributaries, and aquifers serve approximately 80 percent of Nebraska's population, thousands of businesses and industries, including more than two million irrigated acres, and provides streamflows for threatened and endangered species. It was recognized that a potential drought in the region would pose serious risk to public health, economy, and fish/wildlife. The drought-driven risks are diverse and the alternatives for resolving them were investigated through this planning effort.

MUD provides drinking water to more than 600,000 customers while LWS provides drinking water to more than 265,000 customers. Both MUD and LWS have water supply well-fields near Ashland, Nebraska, on the Lower Platte River. While MUD has alternate sources of water supply, LWS's sole source of water for its public water supply is the Platte River. While the Drought Plan assesses the water supplies, demands, and vulnerabilities in the Lower Platte River Basin as a whole, the mitigation measures and response actions presented herein are focused on augmenting surface water supplies in the Lower Platte River while referencing additional drought management resources available through the University of Nebraska, National Drought Mitigation Center, and other sources. It is believed that in addressing the water supply shortages in the Lower Platte River, ancillary benefits to the remaining sectors should accrue including irrigation, power, environmental, and recreational benefits.

Member participation in the Consortium is voluntary and member agencies shall not be bound by any initiatives, recommendations or decisions made by the Consortium without a subsequent written agreement or resolution approved by the respective bodies. While represented agencies may elect to seek approval of the Plan by their respective elected officials, formal adoption of the Plan is not required for future participation in the Consortium.

---

<sup>3</sup> This includes the three NRD members of the Consortium (Lower Platte North NRD, Lower Platte South NRD, and Papio-Missouri River NRD).

## 1.1 Plan Purpose

The focus of this first increment of the Drought Plan is to establish a framework for coordination and communication amongst Consortium members to address droughts in the Lower Platte River. The Drought Plan will refine the Consortium's collective understanding of drought vulnerabilities while developing more robust monitoring and forecasting tools coupled with timely triggers, new mitigation strategies, and responsive actions to create a sound, operational framework and to improve critical water supply needs of the area through drought periods. A wide range of alternatives for augmenting surface water supplies in the Lower Platte River near Ashland were also investigated.

This Drought Plan will supplement the current authorities and activities of the Consortium members and is not intended to replace or duplicate efforts (i.e. NRDs address water conservation through their individual groundwater management plans at this time; LWS has a drought management plan prescribing drought triggers and response actions specific to their system operations). With the framework established by this Drought Plan, it is anticipated that Consortium members will continue to evaluate monitoring and communication protocols, mitigation measures, and response actions and revise the plan as necessary.

## 1.2 Pre-Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan Activities

Prior to starting the Drought Plan development, the Consortium members (Lower Platte South NRD, Papio-Missouri River NRD, Lower Platte North NRD, MUD, LWS, and NeDNR) completed the following three required activities:

1. Development of detailed Work Plan.

The Work Plan guided the Drought Plan development process. It described the specific planning tasks and the manner in which each would be completed, the associated schedule, and the roles and responsibilities. The Work Plan included four sections:

- a. Section A: Introduction – Description of the scope and purpose of the Drought Plan, the planning area, and background information.
- b. Section B: Planning Approach – Description of the project schedule for Drought Plan development, scope of work to complete the six required Drought Plan elements, planning oversight structure, decision-making process, roles and responsibilities, and coordination.
- c. Section C: Documentation and Reporting – Description of deliverables and documentation requirements, reporting requirements and responsibilities, and review process.
- d. Section D: Communication and Outreach Plan – Description of anticipated stakeholder and public involvement and schedule.

The Drought Plan Work Plan was accepted by the Bureau of Reclamation in May 2017.

2. Establishment of a Drought Planning Task Force (DPTF).

The Consortium members serve as the active participants for the DPTF. The Consortium members are key water management agencies that represent the Municipal and Industrial (M&I) and agricultural water suppliers in the Lower Platte River Basin. The NRDs are political sub-divisions within Nebraska with broad jurisdictional authorities in flood control, soil erosion, irrigation runoff, groundwater quantity and quality regulation, and integrated management planning. Each NRD is composed of local officials from business, industry, agriculture, planning/zoning, academia, and environmental backgrounds elected to the board. NRDs serve as key focal points for local input on a variety of water-related issues.

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

3. Development of a Communication and Outreach Plan to maximize stakeholder involvement during development of the Drought Plan.
  - a. Section A: Introduction
  - b. Section B: Goals for Stakeholder and Public Involvement
  - c. Section C: Communications and Outreach Approach, Activities, and Tools

### **1.3 Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan Development and Public Outreach Efforts**

The Consortium's stakeholder and public outreach efforts continued throughout the development of the Drought Plan. All Consortium meetings were given public notice and were held at the offices of Lower Platte South NRD in Lincoln, Nebraska.

#### **1.3.1 Consortium Meetings**

The following is a list of Consortium meetings and dates those meetings were held (public notice was given for all meetings).

- Kickoff Meeting – November 9, 2016
- Project Meeting – December 15, 2016
- Project Meeting – February 23, 2017
- Project Meeting – March 27, 2017
- Project Meeting – May 2, 2017
- Project Meeting – August 22, 2017
- Project Meeting – November 28, 2017
- Project Meeting – February 22, 2018
- Project Meeting – March 30, 2018
- Project Meeting – May 9, 2018
- Project Meeting – July 17, 2018
- Project Meeting – September 20, 2018
- Project Meeting – October 29, 2018
- Project Meeting – November 26, 2018
- Project Meeting – February 25, 2019

#### **1.3.2 Stakeholder and Public Outreach Efforts**

Several activities were undertaken to encourage stakeholder and public participation, including the following:

- Consortium Project Meetings – All Consortium meetings were open to the public.

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

- Website updates – A website with Drought Plan-related content is managed by Lower Platte South NRD so that interested stakeholders could track Drought Plan progress:  
<https://www.lpsnrd.org/lower-platte-river-consortium>
- NRD Briefings – Elements for the draft plan were provided to the participating NRDs on October 30, 2018 (Lower Platte North NRD), November 7, 2018 (Papio-Missouri River NRD), and November 14, 2018 (Lower Platte South NRD). These NRD meeting were open to the public.

### 1.3.3 Consortium Workshops

Two technical workshops were held in May 2017 and June 2018, respectively. These technical workshops targeted industry experts and NRD, LWS, and MUD personnel.

- Consortium Workshop 1 – May 16, 2017; (26 stakeholders in attendance)
- Consortium Workshop 2 – June 19, 2018 (31 stakeholders in attendance)

### 1.3.4 Public Open Houses

The first public open house was held June 19, 2018, in which 35 stakeholders attended. The following lists the public outreach efforts related to Public Open House 1:

- “Know Your NRD” Summer 2018 newsletter distributed electronically the week of June 4 and inserted into five district newspapers, including the *Lincoln Journal Star*, *Ashland Gazette*, *Hickman Voice*, *Plattsmouth Journal*, and *Waverly News* the week of June 11. Total distribution of the newsletter was 148,497.
- Legal notices of technical workshop and open house published two times in June, prior to June 19 in *Lincoln Journal Star*.
- Notice posted on Lower Platte South NRD Facebook page on June 14 and June 18.
- Notice posted on Lower Platte South NRD website home page from June 4 through June 19.
- Workshop and open house notices and agenda posted on Consortium and Lower Platte South NRD webpage.
- News release sent to local media in early June by HDR.

The second public open house was held December 5, 2018, in which approximately 50 stakeholders attended. The following lists the public outreach efforts related to Public Open House 2:

- Legal notices of open house published two times in November in *Lincoln Journal Star*.
- Notice posted on Lower Platte South NRD Facebook page.
- Notice posted on Lower Platte South NRD website home page...
- Open house notices and agenda posted on Consortium and Lower Platte South NRD webpage.
- News releases were sent to local media in November by HDR. The Omaha World-Herald ran an article on the Drought Plan efforts that was published on December 2, 2018.

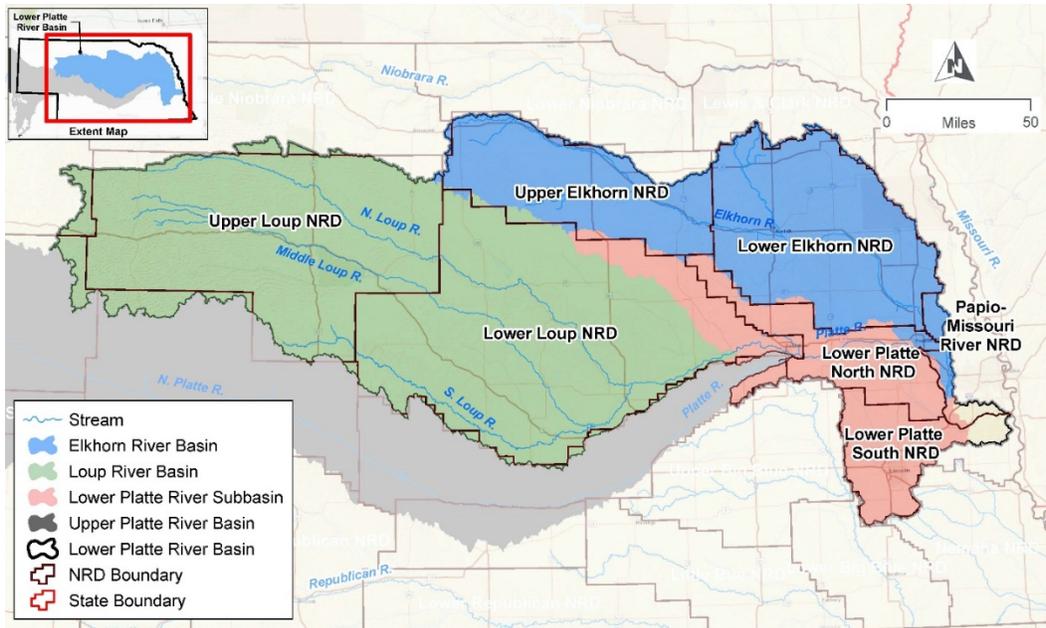
Meeting materials and public comments received from the Open House meetings are included in Appendix F.

## 2.0 Lower Platte River Basin

The Lower Platte River Basin is defined as all surface areas that drain into the Lower Platte River, including those areas that drain into the Loup River and the Elkhorn River and all aquifers that affect surface water flows of the basin (Figure 1). The total area of the Lower Platte River Basin is approximately 25,400 square miles, which encompasses both the Loup River subbasin and the Elkhorn River subbasin. NRDs with significant area in the basin include Lower Platte South NRD, Lower Platte North NRD, Upper Elkhorn NRD, Lower Elkhorn NRD, Upper Loup NRD, Lower Loup NRD, and Papio-Missouri River NRD (NeDNR 2017).

The Upper Platte River Basin is located immediately upstream of the Lower Platte River Basin and is contributor of streamflow to the Lower Platte River Basin; therefore, discussion is included to characterize the Upper Platte River Basin and its behavior during times of drought and how this may affect the Lower Platte River Basin.

**Figure 1: Map of Lower Platte River Basin**



The Nebraska Legislature passed Nebraska Legislative Bill 962 (LB 962) on July 16, 2004, to address conflicts between surface water and groundwater users and to provide a framework for joint management of water resources. As required under LB 962, NeDNR must evaluate the expected long-term availability of hydrologically connected water supplies each year (Figure 2) to meet both existing and new surface water and groundwater uses for each river basin in the state.

Under Nebraska Revised Statutes § 46-713(3), a basin is considered fully appropriated when certain conditions for hydrologically connected surface water and groundwater are met, namely the following:

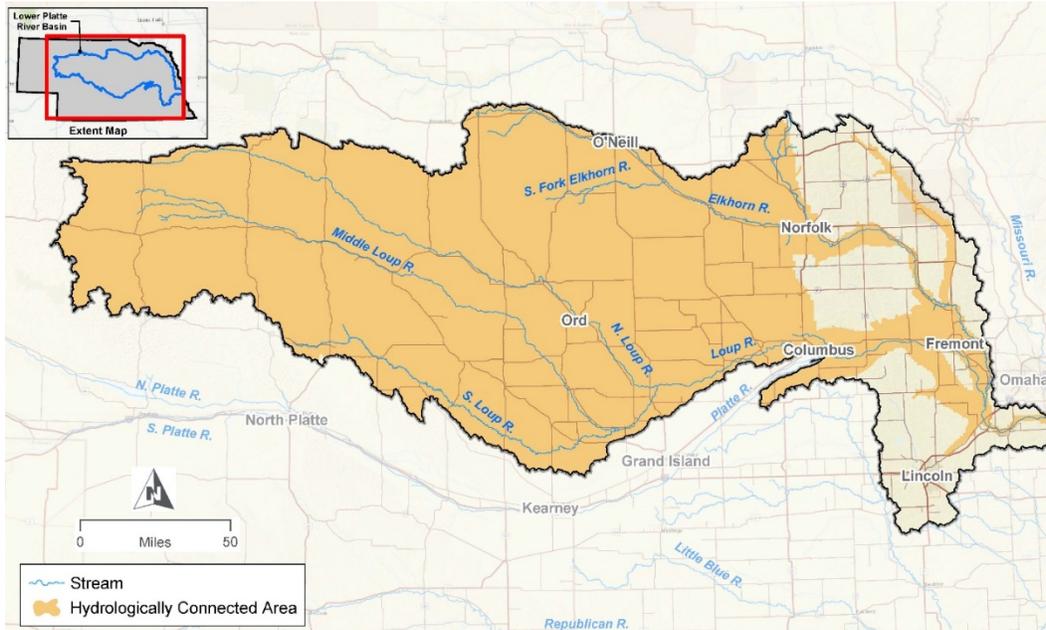
When “then-current uses of hydrologically connected surface water and groundwater [...] will in the reasonably foreseeable future cause:

- (a) the surface water supply to be insufficient to sustain over the long term, the beneficial or useful purposes for which existing natural-flow or storage appropriations were granted and the beneficial or useful purposes for which, at the time of approval, any existing instream appropriation was granted.

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

- (b) the streamflow to be insufficient to sustain over the long term the beneficial uses from wells constructed in aquifers dependent on recharge from the river or stream involved.
- (c) reduction in the flow of a river or stream sufficient to cause noncompliance by Nebraska with an interstate compact or decree, other formal state contract or agreement, or applicable state or federal laws” (Nebraska Revised Statutes § 46-713[3]).

**Figure 2: Lower Platte River Basin – Hydrologically Connected Area**



Source: Map layer provided by Nebraska Department of Natural Resources (Obtained 2016)

On December 16, 2008, NeDNR made a preliminary determination that the Lower Platte River Basin was fully appropriated. Following the preliminary determination, NeDNR held four public hearings on February 17, February 24, March 11, and March 12, 2009, where new information was brought forward. On April 8, 2009, NeDNR reversed its preliminary determination, making the determination that the Lower Platte River Basin was not yet fully appropriated.

Subsequent to the reversal of the preliminary determination, Nebraska Governor Dave Heinemann signed LB 483, which established procedures to limit new irrigation development in areas such as the Lower Platte River Basin. In accordance with LB 483, whenever NeDNR reverses the preliminary determination that a basin is fully appropriated, the NRDs subject to LB 483 adopt a 4-year plan to limit the number of new wells, so that the basin remains “not yet fully appropriated”.

Together with NeDNR, the seven NRDs in the Lower Platte River Basin<sup>4</sup> entered into an Interlocal Cooperative Agreement in April 2013 to form the Lower Platte River Basin Water Management Plan Coalition (Coalition). The Coalition recognizes the interrelation of water resources inherent within the basin and has embarked on a critical mission to manage new uses while protecting and sustaining the long-term balance between the water uses and water supplies throughout the basin within the seven represented NRDs.

<sup>4</sup> Upper Loup NRD, Lower Loup NRD, Upper Elkhorn NRD, Lower Elkhorn NRD, Lower Platte South NRD, Lower Platte North NRD, and Papio-Missouri River NRD, along with NeDNR

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

For the first 5-year increment of the *Lower Platte River Basin Water Management Plan* (through 2022), each Coalition member agreed to limit the total depletive effect of allowable new surface water and groundwater uses during the peak season (that is, June, July, and August). The allowable new depletions shown in Table 1 correspond to the effect new development (both agricultural and non-agricultural uses) would have on a stream in 50 years. Depletion estimates for new uses will be made using the best available data and models.

**Table 1: First 5-Year Increment Allowable Development (Depletions) by Subbasin for New Surface and Groundwater Uses**

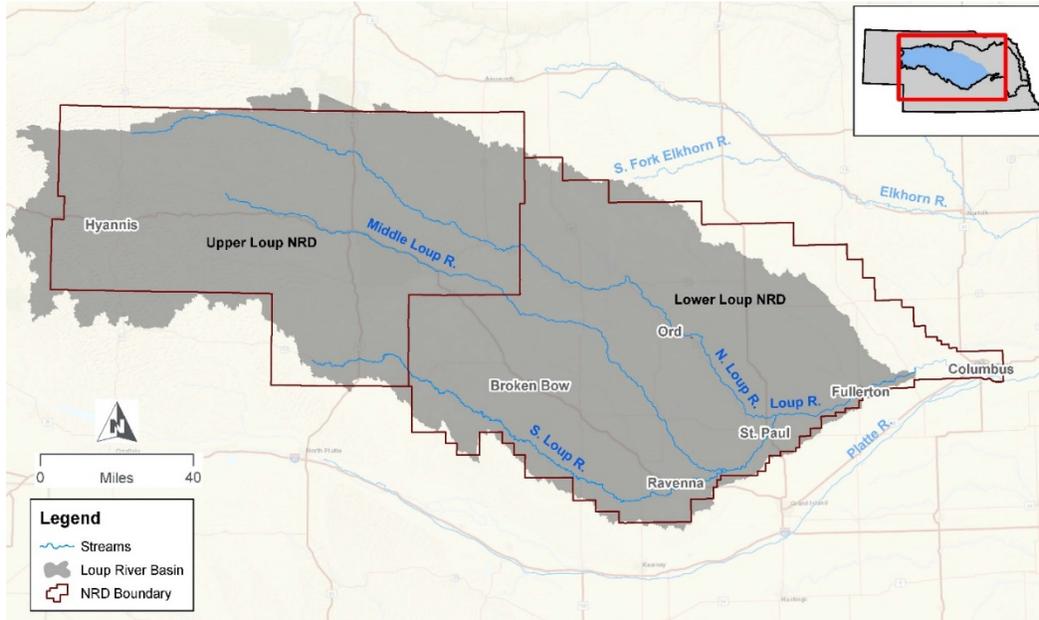
NRD	Subbasin	First 5-year Increment Allowable Development (Depletions) – Peak Season	
		Acre-feet/90-day season	Cubic feet per second
<b>Upper Loup NRD</b>	Loup River subbasin	2,768	15.5
<b>Lower Loup NRD</b>		5,883	33.0
<b>Upper Elkhorn NRD</b>	Elkhorn River subbasin	1,504	8.4
<b>Lower Elkhorn NRD</b>		4,514	25.3
<b>Papio-Missouri River NRD</b>	Lower Platte River subbasin	869	4.9
<b>Lower Platte South NRD</b>		993	5.6
<b>Lower Platte North NRD</b>		2,276	12.8
<b>Total</b>	Full Basin	18,807	105.5

Source: Basin Plan; Note: NRD = Natural Resources District

## 2.1 Loup River Subbasin

The Loup River subbasin is located in central Nebraska, and primarily includes the Upper Loup NRD and the Lower Loup NRD. The Loup River subbasin has an area of approximately 14,900 square miles (Figure 3).

**Figure 3: Loup River Subbasin**



At its farthest western extent, the Loup River subbasin boundary is about halfway between Alliance, Nebraska, and Hyannis, Nebraska, in Sheridan and Garden Counties. The Loup River headwaters are about seven miles northwest of Hyannis. The Loup River subbasin is defined as draining to the confluence of the Loup River and Platte River at Columbus, Nebraska. The Loup Hydropower facility, a major water user in the Loup River subbasin, is located near the bottom of the Loup River subbasin, approximately 32 miles upstream of the Loup River and Platte River confluence.

According to the 2010 U.S. Census, the largest city in the Loup River subbasin is Columbus, with a population of about 22,000. In descending order, the next largest cities in the Loup River subbasin in Nebraska include Broken Bow (3,600), St. Paul (2,300), Ord (2,100), Ravenna (1,400), and Fullerton (1,300).

Encompassing portions of the Sandhills, most of the upper portion of the Loup River subbasin is used as pasture and rangeland; water table lakes and wetlands are common, especially in the north and west portions of the subbasin. In the remainder of the subbasin, mostly in river valleys, the primary crop grown is corn, followed by soybeans.

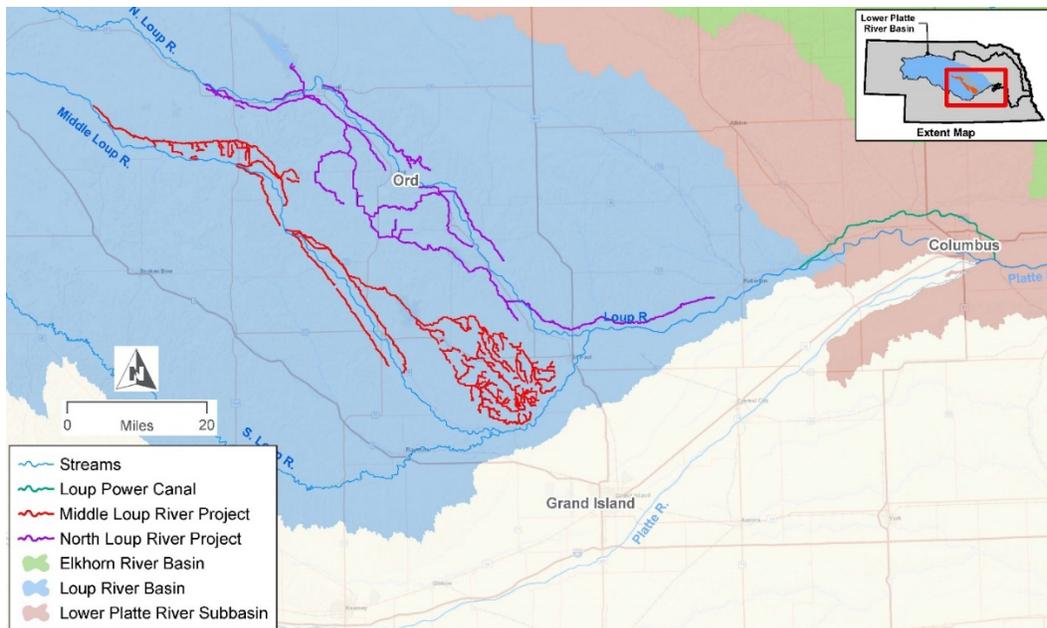
The primary aquifer in the Loup River subbasin is the Ogallala Group, which is part of a vast system of related sediments that make up the High Plains Aquifer. Early spring snowmelts contribute to high aquifer recharge. The highly permeable soils of the sand dunes limit runoff, enhance infiltration, and recharge the groundwater system. Large saturated thicknesses, high porosity and yield, and high hydraulic conductivity are common in the subbasin. The eastern margin of the subbasin is underlain by undivided Quaternary-aged units of the Great Plains Aquifer. In contrast to the western subbasin, rivers in the eastern subbasin are wide and shallow and groundwater contributes less to total streamflow with these streams showing more seasonal fluctuation.

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

There are three reservoirs with normal pool surface area greater than one square mile in the Loup River subbasin. The Calamus Reservoir has a normal storage volume of almost 130,000 acre-feet, Sherman Reservoir has a normal storage volume of almost 70,000 acre-feet, and the Davis Creek Reservoir has a normal storage volume of more than 47,000 acre-feet.

There are five surface water irrigation districts (Sargent, Farwell, Middle Loup, North Loup, and Twin Loups) that serve approximately 129,000 acres of the approximately 1,081,481 total irrigated acres within the subbasin. Loup Public Power District is a hydropower district located within the Loup River subbasin with a natural flow appropriation of 3,500 cubic feet per second (cfs). The Loup Power Canal diverts Loup River flows upstream of Genoa, Nebraska, and the canal returns flow to the Platte River downstream of Columbus. Irrigators along the Loup Power Canal divert surface water from the Loup Canal to irrigate approximately 7,500 acres. These individual appropriations are independent and junior to Loup Public Power District's appropriation and the appropriators have entered into interference agreements with Loup Public Power District to fulfill their appropriation (Figure 4).

**Figure 4: Loup River Subbasin Canals**

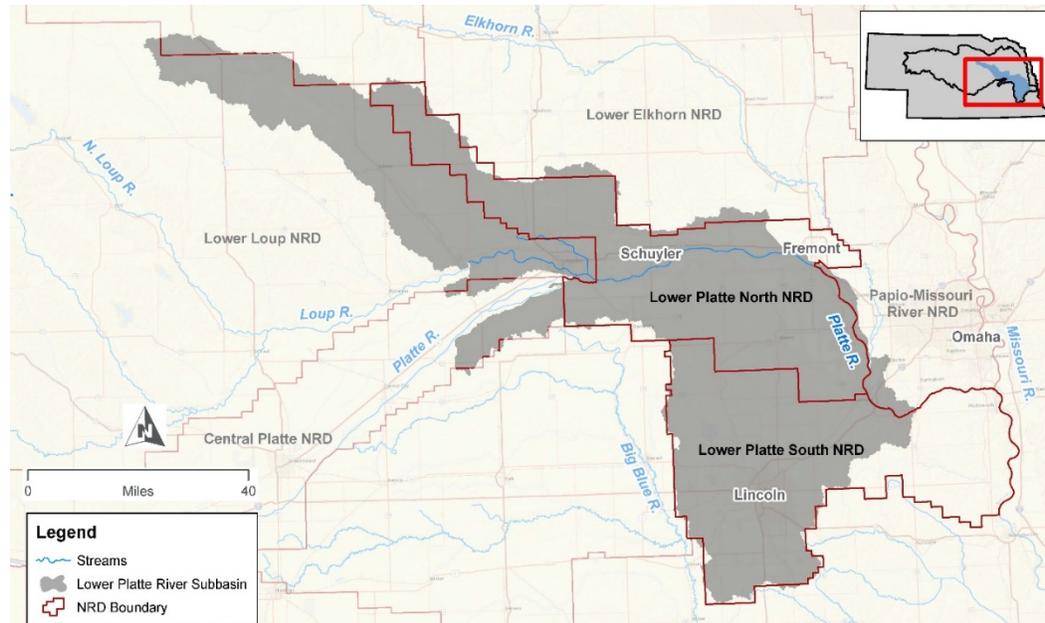


Average annual precipitation varies from 16 to 18 inches per year in the westernmost end of the subbasin and up to 28 inches per year in the easternmost end of the subbasin. The Loup River subbasin has an average subbasin water supply of 2.2 million acre-feet per year, an average near-term demand of 1.4 million acre-feet per year, and an average long-term demand of 1.8 million acre-feet per year (excluding hydropower demand).

## 2.2 Lower Platte River Subbasin

The Lower Platte River subbasin includes the Lower Platte River and its tributaries (except the Elkhorn River) beginning at the confluence of the Loup River and Platte River at Columbus. It primarily includes a majority of the Lower Platte South NRD and Lower Platte North NRD, as well as a smaller portion of the Papio-Missouri River NRD. Approximately 3,400 square miles comprise the Lower Platte River subbasin. The subbasin extends from northeastern Boone County downstream to the Louisville, Nebraska, gage location (Figure 5).

**Figure 5: Lower Platte River Subbasin**



Lincoln, the capital of Nebraska, is the largest city wholly contained within the Lower Platte River subbasin, with a 2010 U.S. Census population of almost 260,000. The next largest city intersecting the Lower Platte River subbasin is Fremont, Nebraska, with about 26,000 citizens (Fremont is also in the Elkhorn River subbasin). The next largest city in the Lower Platte River subbasin in Nebraska is Schuyler (6,200). While Omaha is not contained within the Lower Platte River subbasin, several municipal well-fields that serve the metropolitan area are located within the subbasin.

In the northwestern corner and along the southwestern margins of the Lower Platte River subbasin, the land is primarily used as pasture and rangeland. The remainder of the subbasin is primarily agricultural production, with corn and soybeans as the primary crops.

Part of the Lower Platte River sub-basin between the Elkhorn and Platte Rivers is considered to be within the High Plains Aquifer system which consists of several geologic units including the Ogallala group and more recent Quaternary-Aged alluvial sediments. The Ogallala Group sediments generally do not extend east into the Lower Platte River Sub-Basin. Instead, alluvial unconsolidated sand and gravel aquifers in hydrologic connection with the Platte and Elkhorn Rivers are the High Plains aquifer sediments found in the sub-basin. Nearly all irrigation and major municipal well fields draw groundwater from this interconnected alluvial aquifer. The eastern portion of the subbasin is also underlain by the Great Plains aquifer system (which includes the Dakota Formation).

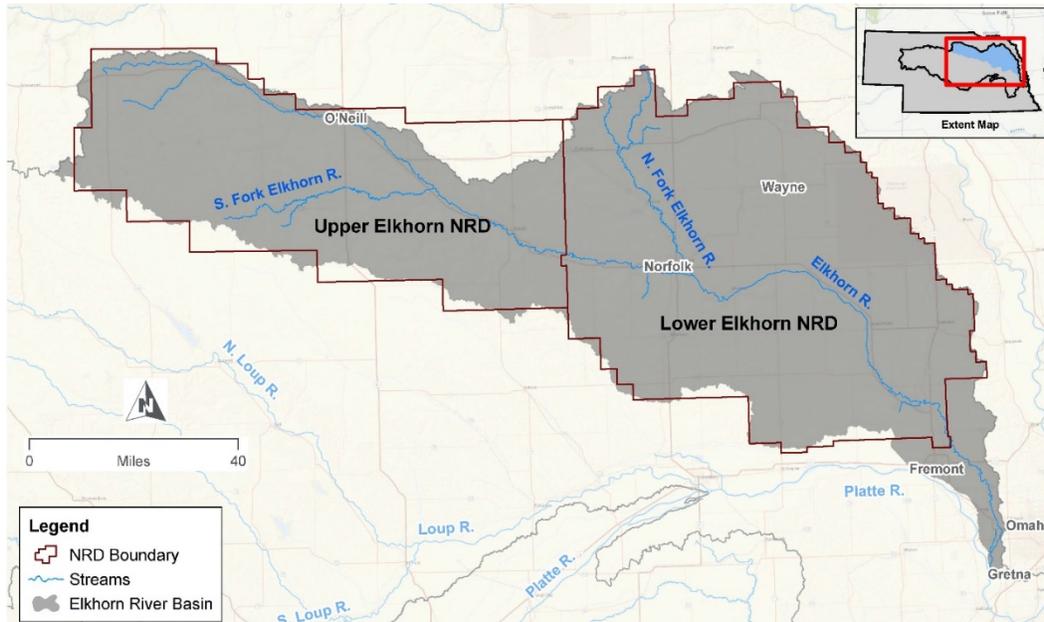
There are approximately 460,500 irrigated acres within the Lower Platte River subbasin. Average annual precipitation varies from 26 inches per year in the westernmost end of the subbasin up to 32 inches per year in the easternmost end of the subbasin. Based on the 25-year average (water year 1988 to 2012), the Lower Platte River subbasin has an average basin water supply of 2.66 million acre-feet per year, an average near-term demand of 2.55 million acre-feet per year, and an average long-term demand of 2.64 million acre-feet per year.

Three reservoirs exist in the subbasin with normal pool surface area greater than one square mile, Branched Oak Lake, Pawnee Lake, and Lake Wanahoo.

## 2.3 Elkhorn River Subbasin

The Elkhorn River subbasin is located in northeastern Nebraska, and primarily includes the Upper Elkhorn NRD and Lower Elkhorn NRD. Approximately 7,000 square miles comprise the Elkhorn River subbasin (Figure 6).

**Figure 6: Elkhorn River Subbasin**



At its farthest western extent, the Elkhorn River's headwaters feed into three major tributaries all in Rock County, Nebraska. The Elkhorn River extends to its junction with the Platte River just west of Gretna, Nebraska.

The largest city intersecting the Elkhorn River subbasin is Omaha, with some of its western suburbs located within the subbasin. A portion of Fremont is also within the subbasin. Based on the 2010 U.S. Census, Norfolk, Nebraska (24,000), is the largest city entirely within the subbasin, followed by Wayne, Nebraska (5,700), and O'Neill, Nebraska (3,700).

A majority of the subbasin is underlain by the High Plains aquifer (which includes the Ogallala Group). Pleistocene sand and gravel units overlie the Ogallala Group and comprise the primary aquifer unit in the western half of the Elkhorn River subbasin. The eastern portion of the subbasin is mostly underlain by the Great Plains aquifer system (which includes the Dakota Formation). The High Plains aquifer and alluvial sand and gravel aquifers are generally characterized by large saturated thicknesses, high porosity and yield, and high hydraulic conductivity, capable of supporting high capacity well development. Much of the Dakota aquifers groundwater availability remains unknown; however, there is generally adequate quantity in areas with sandstone dominant formations that are readily recharged by surface water. Glacial loess and till cover much of the eastern third of the subbasin, and where saturated, have much lower porosity and hydraulic conductivity and are not usually suitable as aquifers (Korus et al. 2013).

In the western third of the Elkhorn River subbasin, the land is primarily used as pasture and rangeland; water table lakes and wetlands are common. In the remainder of the subbasin, the primary crop grown is corn, followed by soybeans, with small amounts of alfalfa and open pasture and range lands.

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

One reservoir exists in the Elkhorn River subbasin with normal pool surface area greater than one square mile; Willow Creek Reservoir on Willow Creek in Pierce County with more than 6,800 acre-feet of normal storage.

Approximately 900,000 irrigated acres exist within the Elkhorn River subbasin. Average annual precipitation varies from 20 inches per year in the westernmost end of the subbasin up to 30 inches per year in the easternmost end of the subbasin. The Elkhorn River subbasin has an average subbasin water supply of 1.39 million acre-feet per year, an average near-term demand of 0.8 million acre-feet per year, and an average long-term demand of 1.0 million acre-feet per year.

## 2.4 Upper Platte River Basin

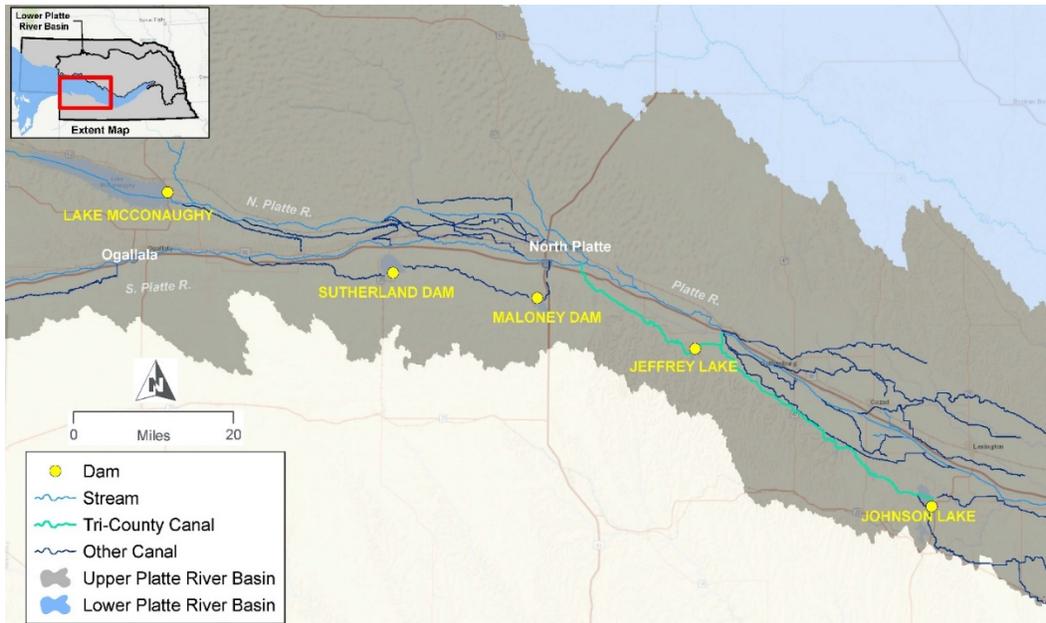
The Upper Platte River Basin is located immediately upstream of the Lower Platte River Basin and is a contributor of streamflow to the Lower Platte River Basin; therefore, it is important to understand the characteristics of the Upper Platte River Basin and its behavior during times of drought. The Upper Platte River Basin includes the North Platte River, South Platte River, and the Platte River from the confluence to Duncan as shown in Figure 7.

**Figure 7: Upper Platte River Basin and Lower Platte River Basin**



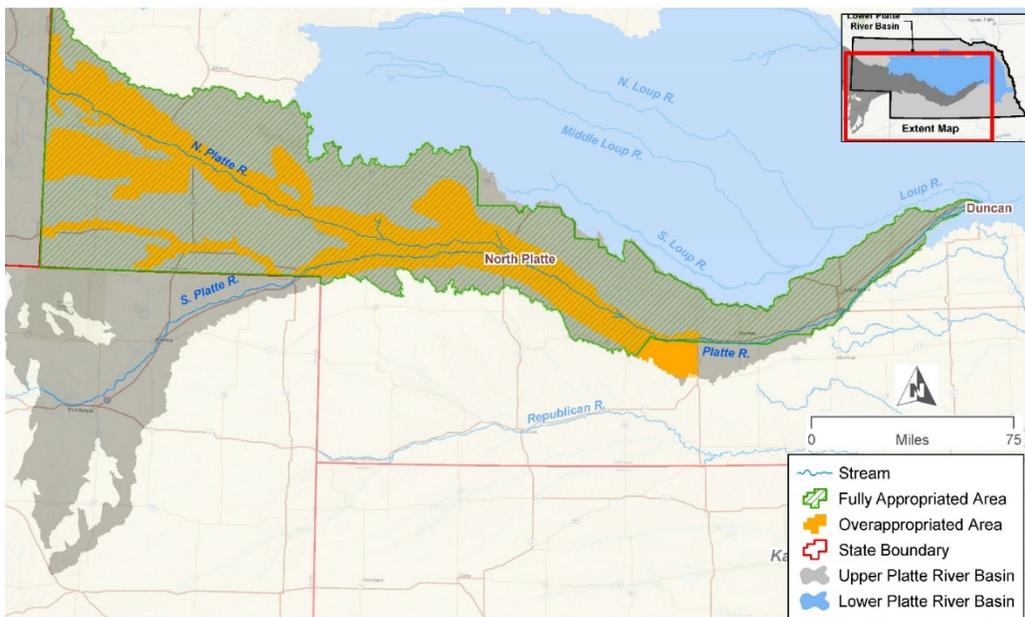
Multiple hydropower demands exist within the Upper Platte River Basin. The Central Nebraska Public Power and Irrigation District (CNPPID) owns and operates multiple hydropower facilities in the Upper Platte River Basin. CNPPID diverts water released from Nebraska's largest reservoir, Lake McConaughy (35,700 acres), into the Tri-County Canal, directs the water through Jeffrey Lake and Johnson Lake (regulating reservoirs), through three hydroelectric plants (Jeffrey, J-1, J-2), and then delivers it to the irrigation system (during the irrigation season) or back to the Platte River (non-irrigation season) (CNPPID n.d.) (Figure 8).

**Figure 8: Upper Platte Hydropower and Canal Operation**



As defined in LB 962 (and outlined in Section 2.0 of this document), the Upper Platte River Basin above Elm Creek, Nebraska, was declared overappropriated and the area from Columbus to Elm Creek was designated as fully appropriated; meaning, any additional uses would cause water supply to be out of balance with demand (Figure 9). With those designations, the NRDs and NeDNR developed Integrated Management Plans (IMPs) calling for no new uses in the river basin above Columbus that would adversely affect an existing surface water right or groundwater use. New uses are allowed, but any depletion to existing rights and uses must be offset with water.

**Figure 9: Upper Platte River Basin Hydrologically Connected and Overappropriated Areas**



Source: Map layer provided by Nebraska Department of Natural Resources (Obtained 2016)

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

Flow in the Upper Platte River originates from snowmelt in the Rocky Mountains of Colorado and Wyoming, as well as from precipitation runoff and baseflow contributions from the underlying aquifer.

Results from a 2007 U.S. Geological Survey (USGS) study pointed to difference in streamflow regimes between the central Platte River system and the Lower Platte River system (Ginting, Zelt, and Linard 2008). Reservoirs upstream and diversions for power generation and irrigation control the majority of flow in the Upper Platte River. Many of the tributary streams upstream of Grand Island, Nebraska, where annual precipitation is less than 25 inches, are intermittent and most flow in those tributaries is from snowmelt and precipitation runoff. Therefore, Platte River flows near Grand Island and Duncan are extremely variable (Huntzinger and Ellis 1993).

A review of the minimum streamflow gage data for the Platte River at Duncan (Table 2) reveals that the Platte River has gone dry at Duncan during historical drought periods, effectively disconnecting the Upper Platte River Basin from the Lower Platte River Basin. During these times of drought, the water supply for the Lower Platte River Basin is dependent on the more reliable groundwater-fed Loup River subbasin (Section 2.1) and Elkhorn River subbasin (Section 2.3).

**Table 2: Minimum Daily Discharge in Platte River at Duncan**

Year	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sept	Oct	Nov	Dec
2000	2,430	2,400	2,530	1,870	1,050	736	460	209	248	498	502	640
2001	960	1,200	1,820	1,790	734	226	125	156	373	709	399	608
2002	700	840	660	449	514	21	0	0	0	76	120	349
2003	270	520	608	508	554	342	0	0	0	0	0	0
2004	194	627	384	185	37	3	2	0	0	0	0	561
2005	669	925	500	474	346	430	13	0	0	0	211	303
2006	510	375	414	446	26	0	0	0	0	39	240	180
2007	150	500	1,070	1,060	1,070	948	463	656	229	253	559	432
2008	440	583	841	896	906	1,350	662	225	227	257	1,160	266
2009	678	869	821	823	516	521	378	222	172	678	2,140	1,290
2010	1,150	955	1,570	1,280	1,320	2,540	2,130	957	948	1,170	1,330	1,670
2011	832	1,500	3,030	3,940	3,440	7,400	5,630	3,300	4,000	3,350	2,740	2,110
2012	1,720	2,410	1,490	1,270	399	64	0	0	0	14	55	197
2013	229	438	553	582	622	259	1	5	0	1,510	700	716
2014	454	298	749	731	283	293	134	74	575	508	323	1,010

Note: Measurements are in cubic feet per second.

### 2.4.1 Platte River Recovery Implementation Program

In 1997, the governors of Nebraska, Colorado, and Wyoming and the Secretary of the Interior entered into a Cooperative Agreement to address the needs of four threatened or endangered species<sup>5</sup> using the Platte River system—forming the *Platte River Recovery Implementation Program (PRRIP)*. The long-term goal of the PRRIP is to improve and maintain the associated habitats, which includes the following:

---

<sup>5</sup> The four threatened or endangered species are the least tern, piping plover, whooping cranes, and pallid sturgeon.

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

1. Improving and maintaining migration habitat for whooping cranes and reproductive habitat for least terns and piping plovers;
2. Reducing the likelihood of other species found in the area being listed under the Endangered Species Act; and
3. Testing the assumption that managing water flow in the central Platte River also improves the pallid sturgeon's Lower Platte River habitat.

The PRRIP is led by an 11-member governance committee consisting of representatives of Colorado, Wyoming, Nebraska, the Bureau of Reclamation, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, South Platte River water users, North Platte River water users, downstream water users, and environmental groups. The first increment of the PRRIP is for 13 years, from 2007 to 2019.

The PRRIP's objective is to use incentive-based water projects to provide sufficient water to and through the central Platte River habitat area to assist in improving and maintaining habitat for the target species. During the first increment, the PRRIP focus will be on re-timing and improving flows to reduce target flow shortages by an average of 130,000 to 150,000 acre-feet per year. In addition to the improved flow conditions, small pulse flows in the spring are intended to create vegetation-free sand bars suitable for plover and tern nesting (PRRIP 2018).

Flow re-timing will be accomplished in part by releases from the Environmental Account in Lake McConaughy. The Environmental Account is a portion of the water stored in Lake McConaughy that is set aside and managed by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service for the benefit of the target species. Other actions will include slightly revised operations of other water systems; general re-timing of Platte River system water projects and other project management actions; and implementation of new water supply and conservation projects in the Upper Platte Basin. Success of the PRRIP relies on implementation of agreed-upon New Depletions Plans in Colorado, Wyoming, and Nebraska and by the federal government in accordance with the PRRIP goal of offsetting new depletions to the Platte River that occurred after July 1997 (PRRIP 2018).<sup>6</sup>

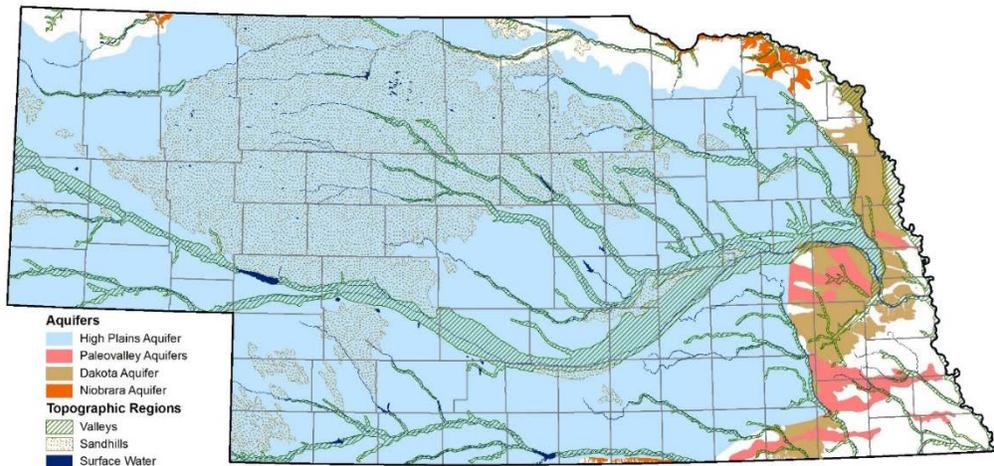
## 2.5 Surface Water and Groundwater Interaction

Many of the municipal, industrial, and domestic wells in the Lower Platte River draw on this alluvial aquifer. In the Platte River valley and its tributaries, the alluvial aquifers are highly connected to the streams, relying almost exclusively on streamflow for recharge. Drought effects on streamflow have a direct effect on groundwater users relying on the alluvial aquifers, as well as surface water users (Figure 10 and Figure 11).

---

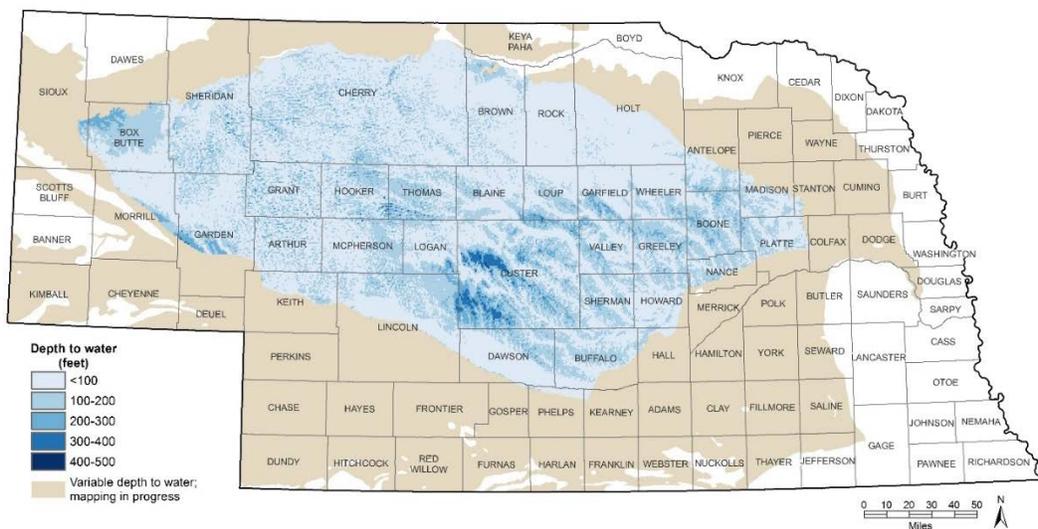
<sup>6</sup> <https://www.platteriverprogram.org>

**Figure 10: Nebraska Topographic Regions and Principal Aquifers**



Source: University of Nebraska–Lincoln, Conservation and Survey Division

**Figure 11: Depth to Groundwater**

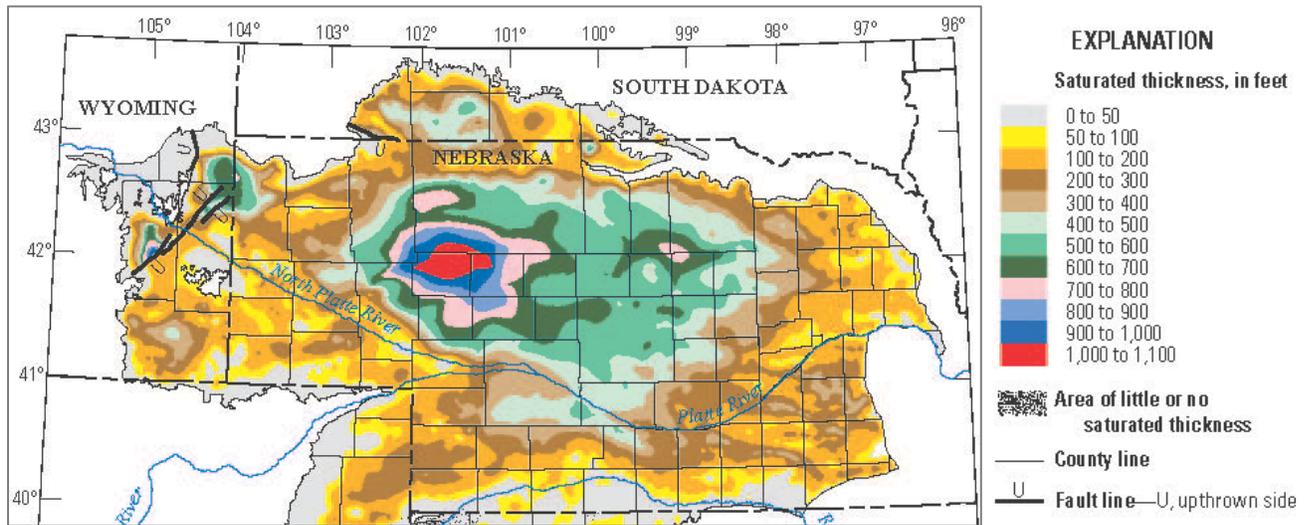


Source: University of Nebraska–Lincoln, Conservation and Survey Division (obtained August 2018)

The Nebraska Sandhills cover portions of the western Elkhorn River subbasin. Streamflow in the western region of the Elkhorn River subbasin stems from a combination of interflow and groundwater. Flows in the downstream reaches of the Elkhorn River, its tributaries, Salt Creek, and some downstream tributaries to the Platte River are affected by large runoff in spring and fall that result from more intense storms on steeper slopes and less permeable soil than occur farther west. Sixty-six percent of the annual flow in the Elkhorn River is derived by the groundwater discharge (USGS 2008).

Tributaries to the Loup River are sustained by shallow groundwater in the Sandhills and have an extremely consistent baseflow. The surficial material of the Sandhills region is very permeable resulting in nearly no overland runoff. The baseflows of the Loup tributaries and runoff in the eastern part of the Loup River watershed combine to produce larger and more consistent flows in the Platte River at North Bend (Figure 12).

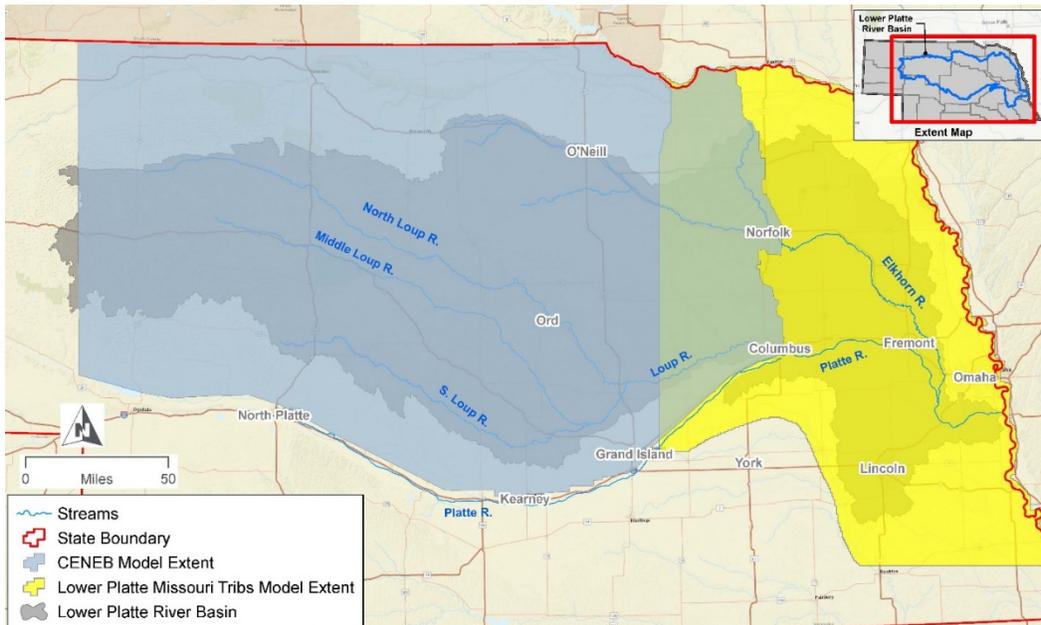
**Figure 12: Saturated Thickness of the High Plains Aquifer, 2009**



Source: USGS Scientific Investigations Report 2012-5177

Three main groundwater water models are encompassed by the Lower Platte River Basin. These include the Central Nebraska Model (CENEB) and Elkhorn-Loup Model (ELM) models in the western and central portions of the basin and the Lower Platte Missouri Tributaries Model (LPMT), currently under development, covering the eastern portion of the basin. These models analyze the surface and groundwater interaction in the basin (Figure 13). Background on these models is discussed in more detail in Appendix D.

**Figure 13: Groundwater Modeling Studies**

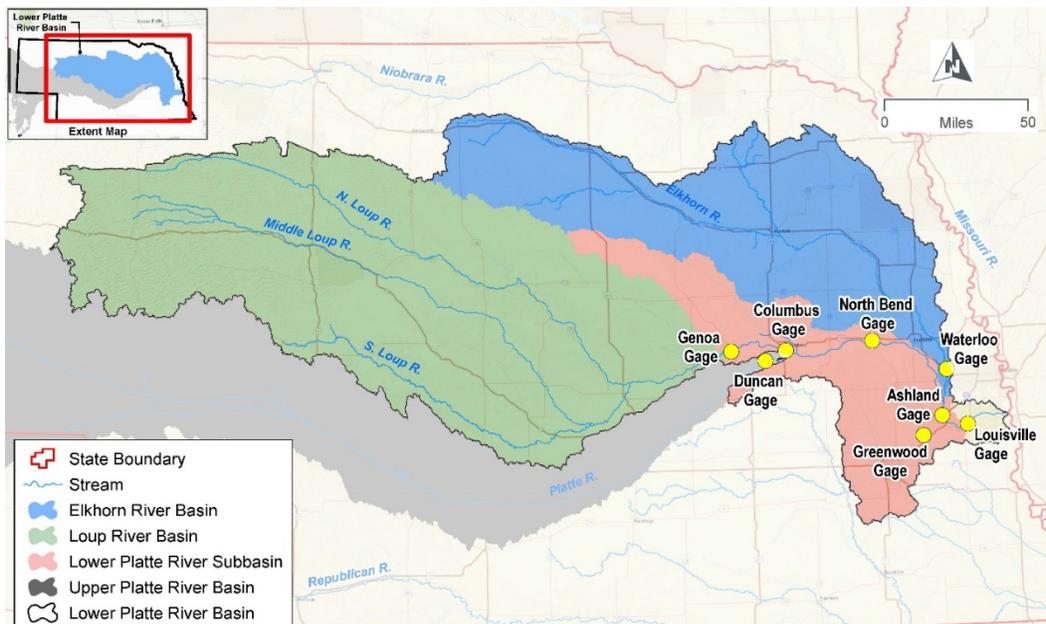


## 2.6 Water Supply

The Lower Platte River is a key source of water supply for more than 80 percent of Nebraska’s population, thousands of businesses and industries, and more than two million irrigated acres. Streamflows of the Lower Platte River also support habitat for threatened and endangered species. Water supplies of the Lower Platte River can be highly variable, with annual flows ranging from 2 million acre-feet per year to more than 10 million acre-feet per year.

For the period 1954 through 2004, the Elkhorn River at Waterloo gage comprised, on average, about 21 percent of the annual mean flows recorded at the Platte River at Louisville gage while the Salt Creek at the Greenwood gage comprised, on average, 5 percent of the annual flow recorded at the Platte River at Louisville gage (Dietsch, Godberson, and Steele 2009). For the same period, about 37 percent of annual mean flows recorded at the Platte River at Louisville gage were measured in the Loup River near Genoa and an average of 26 percent were recorded in the Platte River at the Duncan gage (Figure 14).

**Figure 14: USGS Stream Gage Locations**

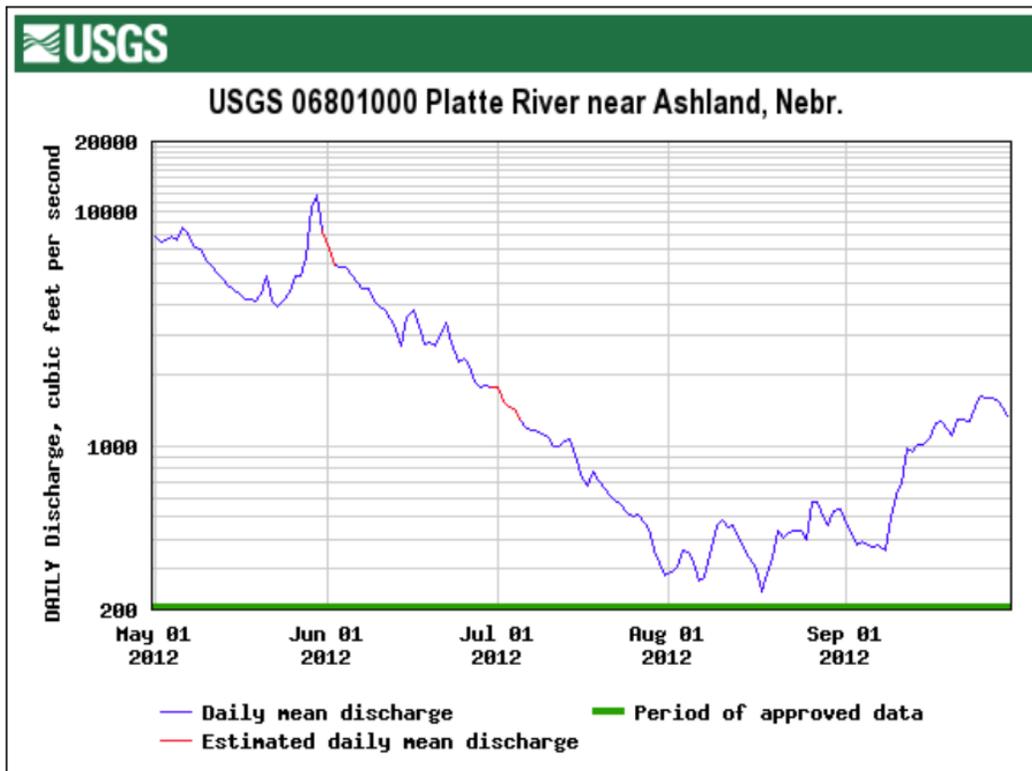


The water supplies of the Loup River subbasin and Elkhorn River subbasin tend to be more reliable because of more significant baseflow contributions. During drought periods, these upstream water supplies are stressed in support of irrigated agricultural production (primarily corn and soybeans). During low-flow years, the Upper Platte River becomes disconnected from the Lower Platte River with observed flows at Duncan, representing a negligible portion of flows observed on the Platte River at Duncan (see Section 2.4 for discussion). During these times, most of the flow in the Lower Platte River originates from the groundwater-fed Loup River, Elkhorn River, and other tributaries downstream from Duncan.

While annual water supplies in the Lower Platte River generally tend to be supportive of most water uses, peak demands in the summer months can create water shortages. These shortages are further exacerbated by drought periods when summer flows become the most critical in supporting water demands.

Figure 15 shows the daily discharge for the Platte River at Ashland during the drought of 2012. These low-flows directly affected the City of Lincoln (discussed further in Section 3.4).

Figure 15: Streamflow data for the Lower Platte River near Ashland



## 2.7 Water Demand

The water demands and uses in the Lower Platte River are diverse. They include municipal and domestic uses, agriculture, instream flows, and hydropower. The water utilities for the municipalities of Omaha and Lincoln serve the two primary metropolitan areas in Nebraska. Both municipalities hold induced recharge permits (permits that require streamflows adjacent to their well-fields) and municipal groundwater transfer permits (permits where groundwater is transferred from the water well site for use in another location). The Nebraska Game and Parks Commission holds instream flow appropriations for much of the Platte River and specifically in the areas of municipal well-field operations. The Loup Public Power District holds a hydropower appropriation for off-channel hydroelectric power generation. In addition, thousands of individual water rights are held to support irrigation from both surface water and hydrologically connected groundwater sources. Table 3 lists key water rights and water demands in the Lower Platte River Basin.

Table 3: List of key water rights and water demands in the Lower Platte River Basin

Water Right Holder	Appropriation Type	Grant Amount
Metropolitan Utilities District, Omaha – Platte West	Induced Recharge (1993)	1,000 cfs Population: 600,000
Metropolitan Utilities District, Omaha – Platte South	Induced Recharge (1970)	500 cfs Population: 600,000
Lincoln Water System, Lincoln	Induced Recharge (1964)	704 cfs Population: 265,000

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

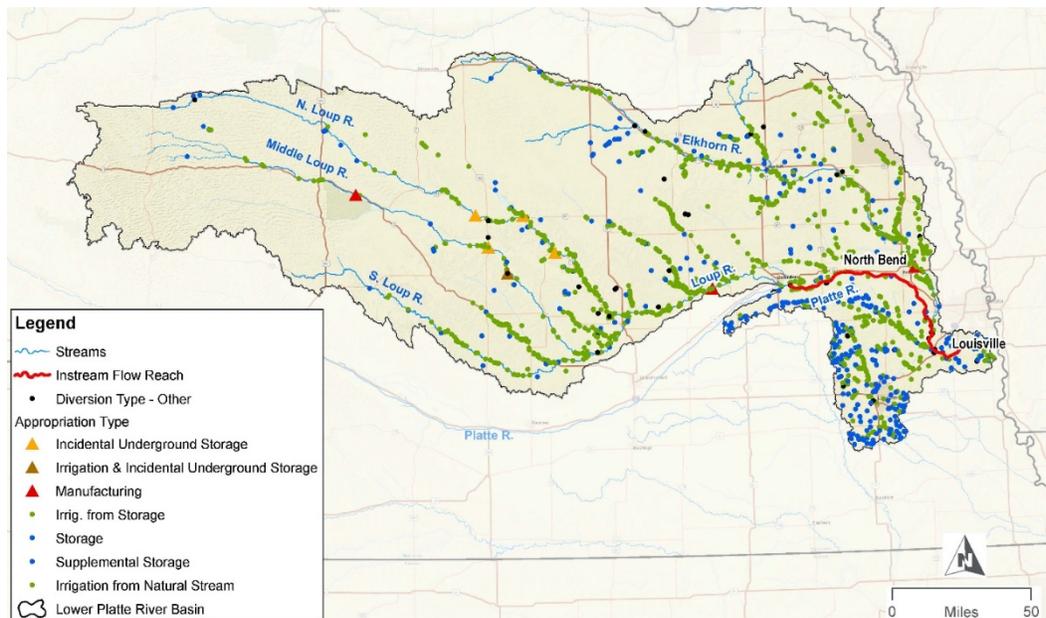
Water Right Holder	Appropriation Type	Grant Amount
Metropolitan Utilities District, Omaha – Platte South	Municipal Transfer	60 MGD
Metropolitan Utilities District, Omaha – Platte West	Municipal Transfer	104 MGD
Lincoln Water System, Lincoln	Municipal Transfer	110 MGD
Nebraska Game and Parks Commission	Instream flow Protection at the Platte River/Missouri River confluence	3,100 – 3,700 cfs
North Loup Division (USBR)	Irrigation	53,000 acres
Sargent/Farwell Irrigation Districts	Irrigation	67,000 acres
Loup Public Power District	Hydropower	3,500 cfs
<b>Total irrigation in the Lower Platte River Basin</b>	Both surface water and groundwater sources	Greater than 2,000,000 acres

Notes: cfs = cubic feet per second; MGD = million gallons per day; USBR = U.S. Bureau of Reclamation.

### 2.7.1 Surface Water Demands

As of December 31, 2015, there were 2,250 surface water appropriations held in the Lower Platte River Basin. Table 4 summarizes these appropriations by type: irrigation, storage, manufacturing, or other. Most of the surface water appropriations are for irrigation use and tend to be located on the major streams (Figure 16). In addition, two instream flow appropriations are held in the basin. The instream flow appropriations are located on the Platte River and are measured at North Bend and Louisville and are discussed in more detail in Section 2.8 (NeDNR 2017).

**Figure 16: Surface Water Point of Diversions**



Source: NeDNR Map layer (obtained 2014)

**Table 4: Surface Water Appropriations by Number of Diversion Points, Lower Platte River Basin**

Type	Number of Appropriations
Irrigation from Natural Stream	1,667
Storage	490
Manufacturing	4
Other	89

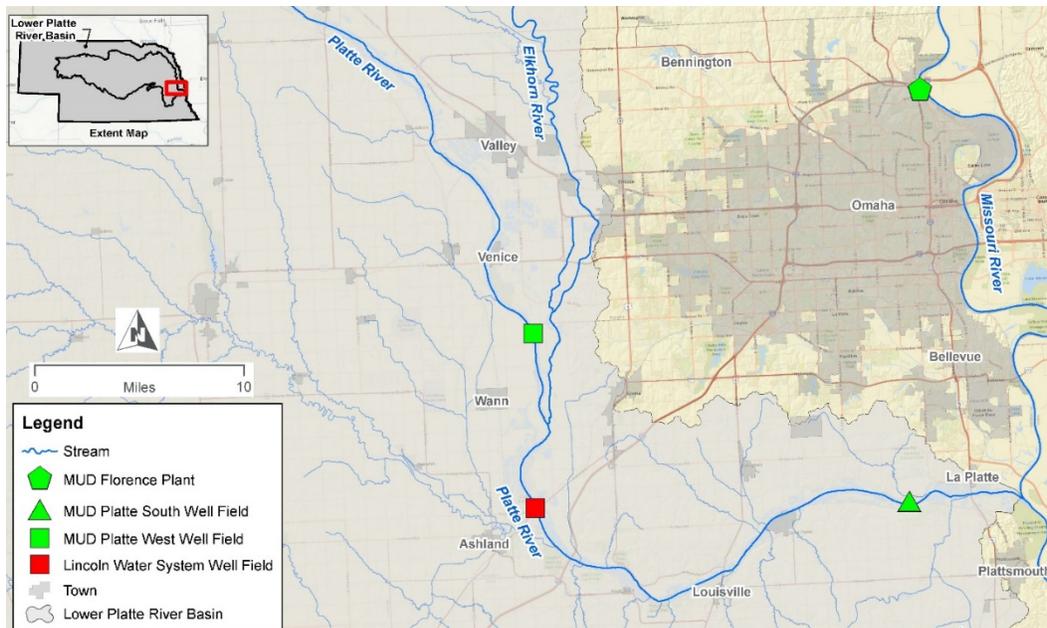
Source: NeDNR Fully Appropriated Basin Analysis (NeDNR 2017)

Note: 2,250 appropriations as of December 31, 2015.

### 2.7.2 Induced Groundwater Recharge Permits (Lincoln and Omaha Public Water Utilities)

MUD has three supply locations: 1) Florence Plant in north Omaha that obtains its water from the Missouri River with a capacity of 160 million gallons per day (MGD); 2) Platte West well-field located south of Venice, Nebraska, that obtains its water from the Platte River with a capacity of 100 MGD; and 3) Platte South well-field located near La Platte, Nebraska, that obtains water from the Platte River with a capacity of 60 MGD. Total system output for MUD from all three facilities is 320 MGD. MUD has the ability to use all three of their facilities interchangeably to meet their demand (Figure 17).

**Figure 17: Metropolitan Utilities District and Lincoln Water System Municipal Well-field Locations**



LWS serves the City of Lincoln. Currently, LWS’s only source of water is the Platte River. LWS’s well-field consists of 40 vertical wells, four (4) existing horizontal collector wells. LWS’s well-field has a maximum instantaneous pumping capacity of between 135 MGD and 145 MGD, depending on streamflow conditions. The summer seasonal capacity of the well-field for 50- and 90-day production capacity ranges from 85 to 90 MGD when streamflow in the Platte River at Ashland is less than 1,000 cfs. (City of Lincoln 2018).

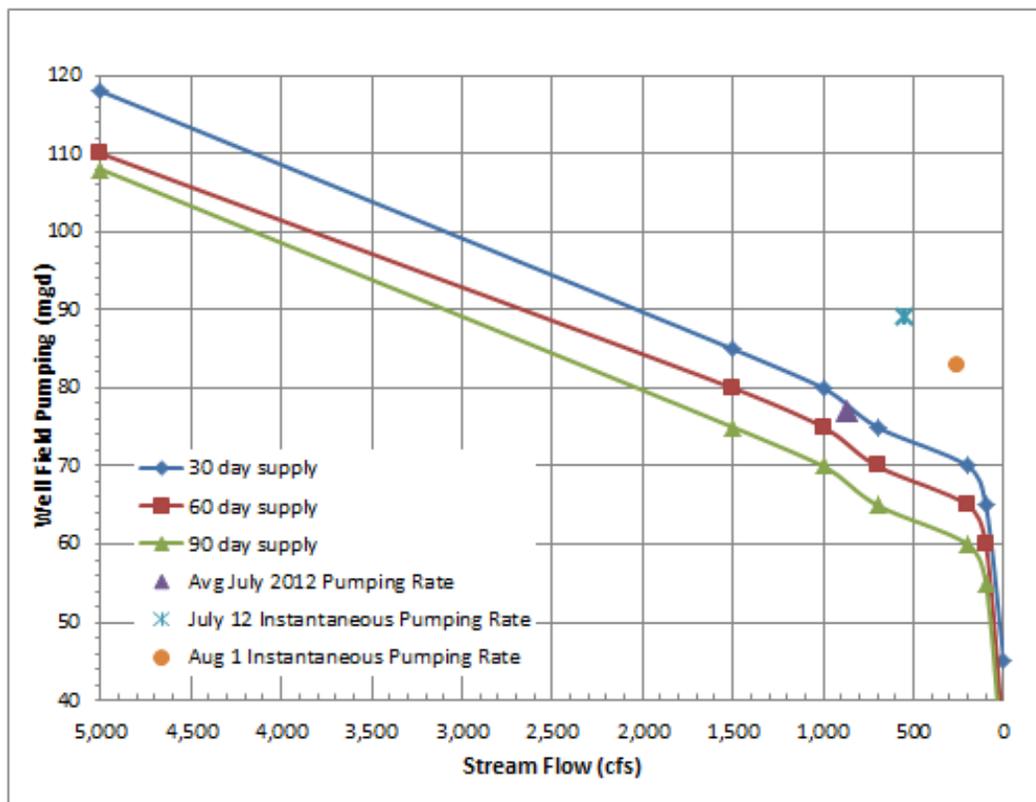
## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

LWS maintains two types of water rights permits through NeDNR: an induced recharge permit and groundwater transfer permits. The induced recharge permit allows LWS to induce groundwater recharge from the Platte River for municipal use. LWS maintains two groundwater transfer permits maintained by the City of Lincoln (totaling 110 MGD) (City of Lincoln 2014b)<sup>7</sup>.

The *LWS Facilities Master Plan* projected the future water demand using demand projections (City of Lincoln 2014b). The anticipated future seasonal peak water demand is approximately 84 MGD by 2040 and approximately 116 MGD by 2060.

Figure 18 shows that the model-predicted maximum availability of groundwater that can be pumped from the well-field varies based on streamflow and decreases with increased pumping duration. These model predictions were developed using LWS’s well-field configuration as of 2003 and do not include the third horizontal collector well (City of Lincoln 2014b).

**Figure 18: Model-Predicted Well-field Capacity and 2012 Pumping Conditions**



Source: *LWS Facilities Master Plan* (City of Lincoln 2014b)

There is a nearly linear relationship between the well-field yield and change in streamflow over a large range of streamflow values. When streamflow is below 200 cfs, the relationship between streamflow and well-field yield changes dramatically, which indicates that, based on the model results, 200 cfs is a critical streamflow value for Lincoln’s well-field. At this streamflow condition, it appears that the source of water to the well-field changes from predominantly induced recharge of the Platte River to predominantly

<sup>7</sup>The groundwater transfer permits are optional permits. There is no limitation to only pump within the terms of these permits. The maximum daily withdrawal under permit A-10367 is 60 MGD and under permit A-16917 is 50 MGD. If LWS pumps more groundwater than the permitted amount, the portion that exceeds their permitted amounts is simply being withdrawn without a specific permit tied to that portion of pumping.

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

groundwater in aquifer storage. A daily streamflow of 200 cfs has never been observed at the Ashland gage. The lowest daily streamflow observed at the Ashland gage is 237 cfs, and the lowest monthly average streamflow observed at this gage is 368 cfs. Both of these record low streamflow values were observed in August 2012 (City of Lincoln 2014b).

It should be noted that the wellfield capacity is dependent on duration of pumping as well as the location of the river channel during low flow conditions.

### 2.7.3 Groundwater Demands

Groundwater in the Lower Platte River Basin is used for a variety of purposes: domestic, industrial, livestock, irrigation, and other uses (Table 5). As of December 31, 2015, 49,092 groundwater wells had been registered within the basin (NeDNR 2016). Nebraska leads the nation in irrigated acres accounting for one acre of every six acres of irrigated land in the U.S. in 2007 (UNL 2009).

**Table 5: Current Groundwater Well Development by Number of Registered Groundwater Wells, Lower Platte River Basin**

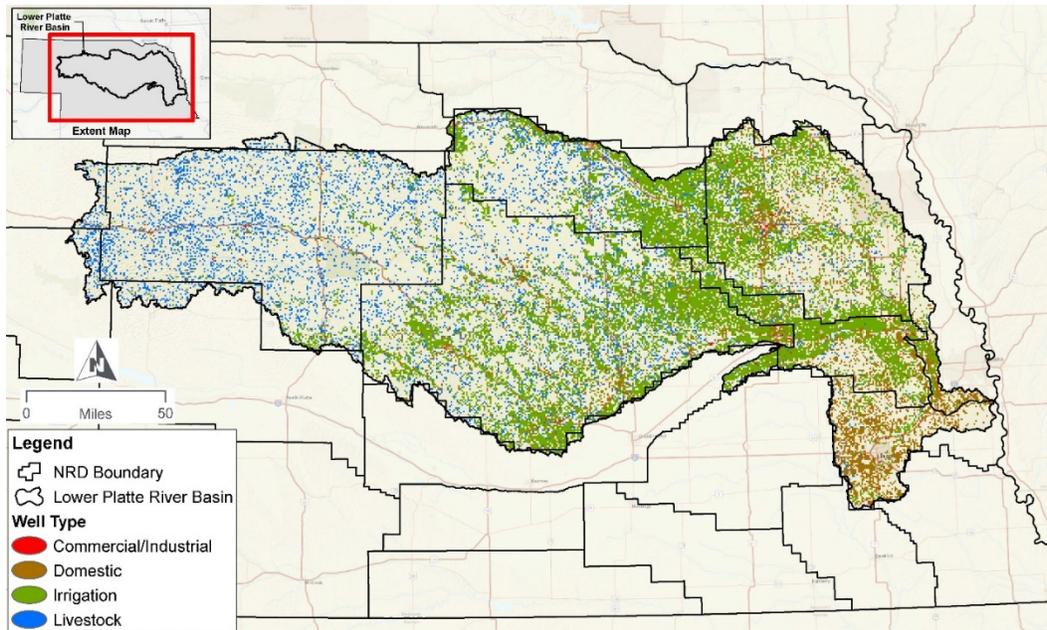
Type	Percentage of Wells
Irrigation	51.2
Domestic	26.9
Livestock	17.4
Commercial/Industrial	10.9
Public Water Supplies	2.1
Other	1.5

Source: NeDNR Fully Appropriated Basin Report (NeDNR 2017)

Note: 49,092 wells as of December 31, 2015.

Figure 19 shows the distribution of groundwater wells in the Lower Platte River basin by type. The Sandhills of the Upper Loup subbasin are dominated by livestock wells.

**Figure 19: Distribution of Groundwater Wells in Lower Platte River Basin**



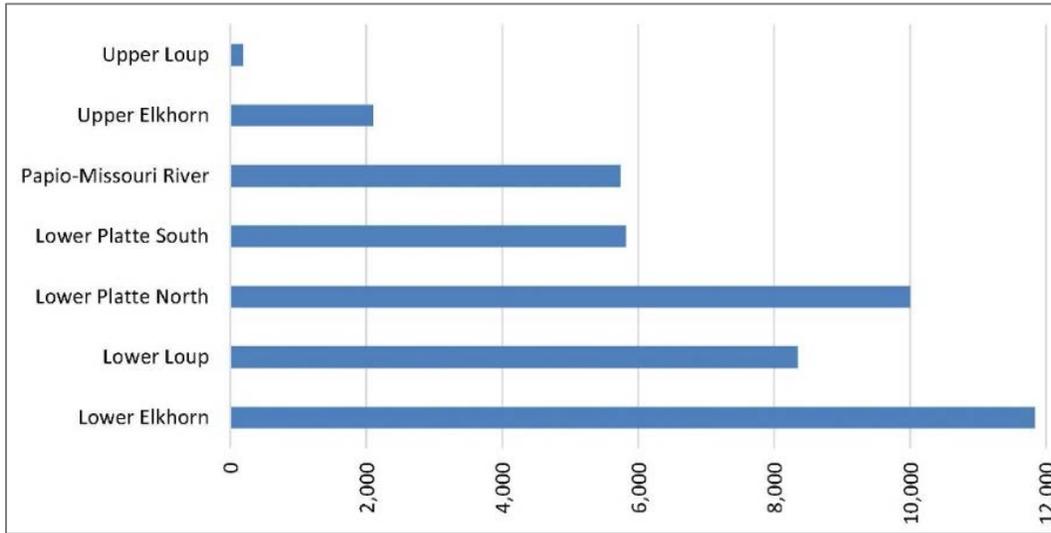
Source: NeDNR Map layer (obtained February 2018)

The majority of the commercial and industrial wells are located in the larger population centers, as expected. There are noticeably less irrigation wells located in the eastern portion of the Lower Platte River Basin where the irrigation is primarily located in the hydrologically connected areas.

### **2.7.3.1 Municipal Groundwater Demands**

The Flatwater Group (TFG), under contract with the NeDNR, estimated 2012 municipal water use for Nebraska. The estimated pumping for municipal (with the exception of MUD and LWS), governmental, and educational wells was developed using monthly per capita pumping estimates and 2012 population estimates. A summary of LWS and MUD demand was previously discussed in Section 2.7.2. Outside of MUD and LWS, the top five public water suppliers are the cities of Fremont, Papillion, Columbus, Norfolk, and Schuyler. Those areas not served by public water providers are assumed served by domestic groundwater wells. Figure 20 shows the estimated municipal groundwater demand by NRD (excluding MUD and Lincoln well-fields). Outside of Omaha and Lincoln, the largest municipal groundwater demand is located in the Lower Elkhorn NRD followed by the Lower Platte North NRD, Lower Loup NRD, Lower Platte South NRD, Papio-Missouri River NRD, and Upper Loup NRD, respectively.

**Figure 20: 2012 Estimated Municipal Groundwater Demands by Natural Resources District**

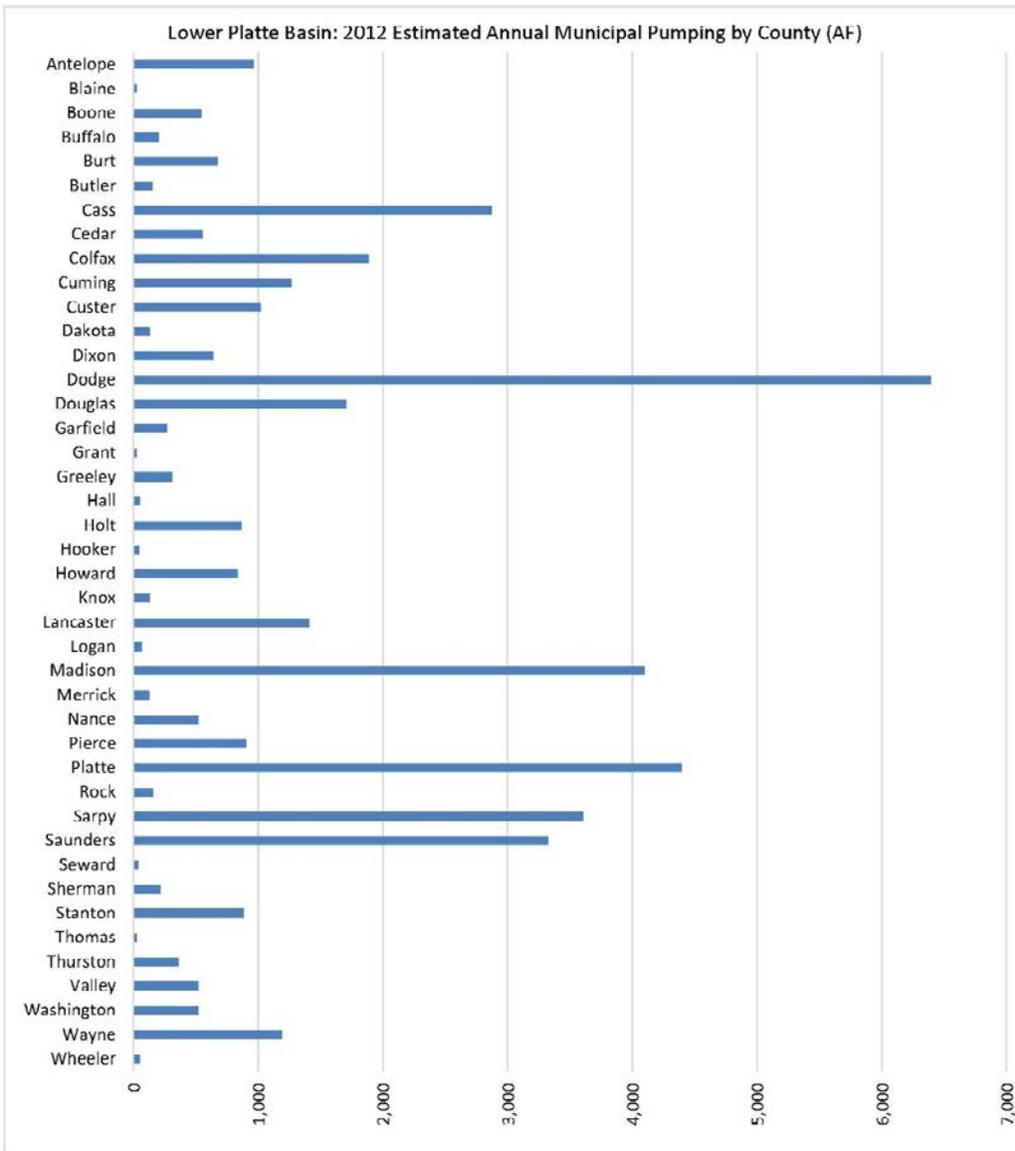


Source: *Municipal and Industrial Pumping, TFG, January 2014.*

Notes: Measurements are in acre-feet. This figure only reflects groundwater demands. This figure does not reflect the demand of the Lincoln or MUD well-fields.

Figure 21 shows the same information aggregated by county. It should be noted that the demands are accounted for at the point of extraction, which does not necessarily correspond to the point of use. This figure does not reflect the demands of the Lincoln or MUD well-fields.

**Figure 21: 2012 Estimated Municipal Groundwater Demands by County (Not including Lincoln or MUD well-fields)**

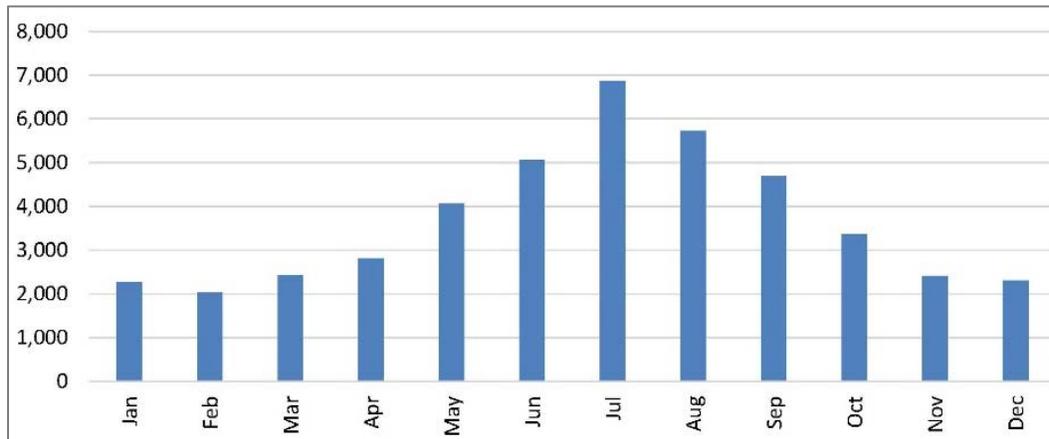


Source: *Municipal and Industrial Pumping, TFG, January 2014.*

Notes: Measurements are in acre-feet. This figure only reflects groundwater demands. This figure does not reflect the demands of the Lincoln or MUD well-fields. The Dodge County demand corresponds to the demand for Fremont.

Figure 22 shows the estimated municipal demands as they occur over a calendar year. As expected, the largest demands occur in the summer months when the temperatures are highest and the demand increases for air-conditioning and lawn watering.

**Figure 22: 2012 Estimated Municipal Groundwater Demands by Month**



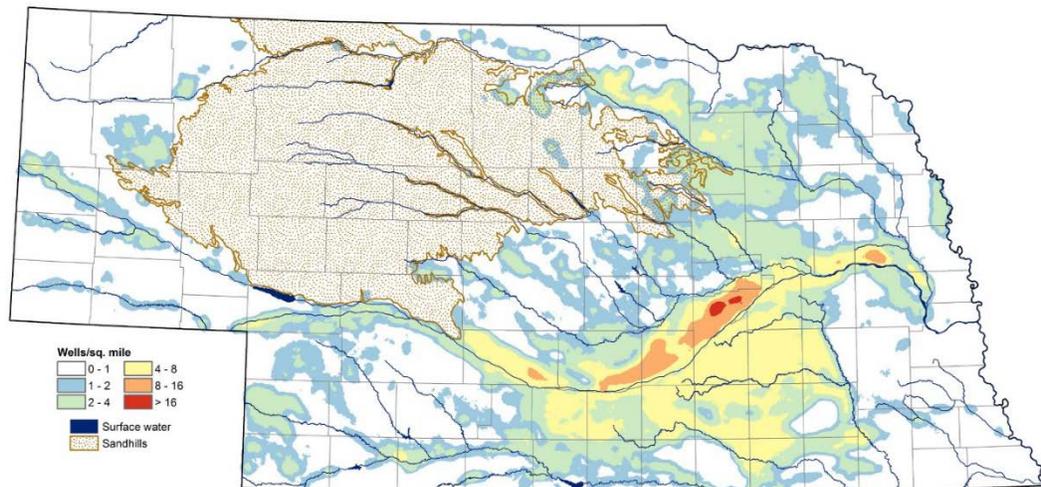
Source: *Municipal and Industrial Pumping, TFG, January 2014.*

Notes: Measurements are in acre-feet. This figure only reflects groundwater demands. This figure does not reflect the demands of the Lincoln or MUD well-fields.

**2.7.3.2 Irrigation Groundwater Demands**

Figure 23 displays the density of only the irrigation wells (the largest category of groundwater wells).

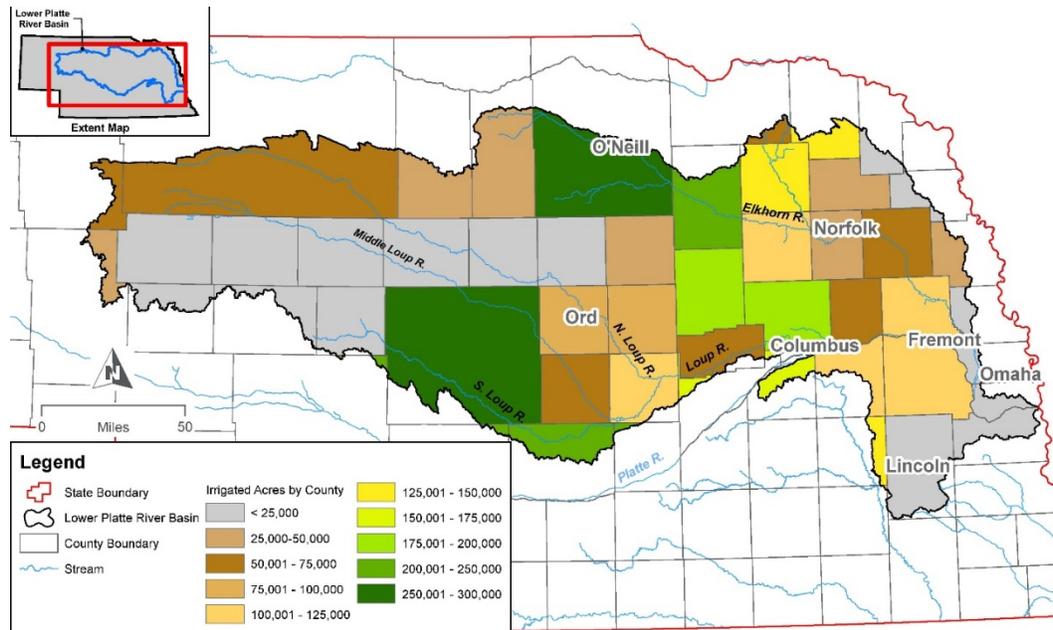
**Figure 23: Density of Active Irrigation Groundwater Wells**



Source: *Nebraska Statewide Groundwater-Level Monitoring Report (University of Nebraska–Lincoln Conservation and Survey Division 2017)*

Figure 24 shows irrigated acres by county. It can be seen that there is little to no irrigation in the northwestern portion of the Lower Platte River Basin, which is predominately Sandhills. The bulk of the irrigated acres occurs in the central portions of the Lower Platte River Basin.

**Figure 24: Number of Irrigated Acres by County**



Source: 2012 Census of Agriculture, U.S. Department of Agriculture, National Agricultural Statistics Service

**Table 6: Number of irrigated acres by NRD**

NRD	Number of Irrigated Acres				
	Total	Groundwater	Surface Water	Comingled	Wastewater
<b>Upper Loup</b>	82,858	82,858	0	0	--
<b>Lower Loup</b>	1,222,485	1,019,096	155,181	48,209	--
<b>Upper Elkhorn</b>	465,317	465,317	0	0	--
<b>Lower Elkhorn</b>	671,633	626,183	15,807	0	29,643
<b>Lower Platte North</b>	373,433	364,456	4,195	4,782	--
<b>Lower Platte South</b>	3,267 <sup>1</sup>	3,267 <sup>1</sup>	0	0	--
<b>Papio-Missouri River</b>	Estimated 25,000 <sup>2</sup>	--	--	--	--

<sup>1</sup>LPSNRD acres listed are irrigated acres hydrologically connected to the Platte River. There are approximately 20,000 groundwater irrigated acres total within the lower Platte River basin in the LPSNRD.

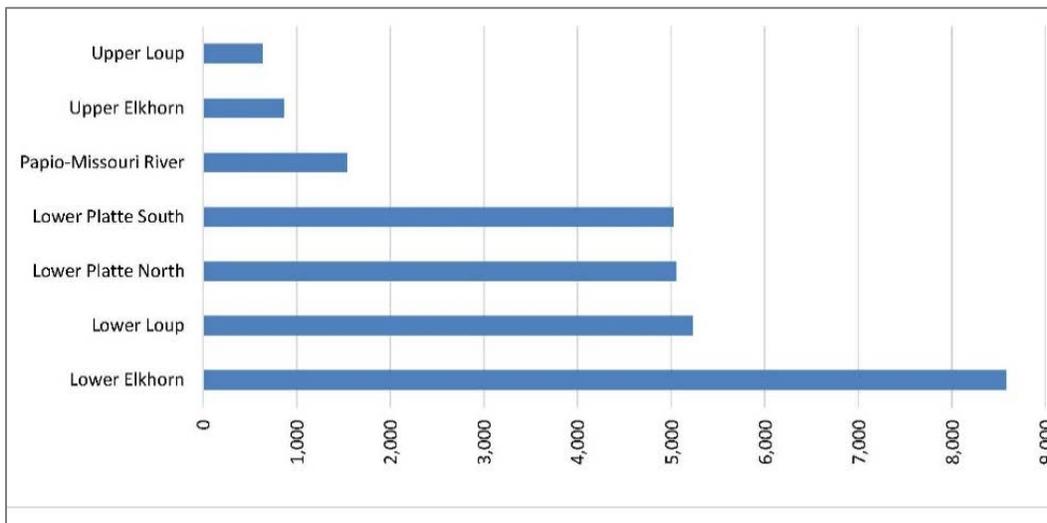
<sup>2</sup>P-MRNRD has not yet completed certifying irrigated acres.

Source: Basin Plan (2017 Annual Reports)

### 2.7.3.3 Industrial Groundwater Demands

TFG, under contract with NeDNR, estimated self-supplied industrial groundwater use for Nebraska for 2012 using historical and industrial surveys provided by NeDNR. This study does not include industrial uses served by public water supply. The survey results provided water use information for 50 different industrial sites. TFG categorized these industrial sites into 12 industrial classes based on similar types of water use (average annual volume of water usage and the average monthly pumping distribution). Figure 25 shows the estimated industrial groundwater demands for industries served by self-supplied groundwater by NRD. The largest collective industrial use occurs in the Lower Elkhorn NRD followed by the Lower Loup NRD, Lower Platte North NRD, Lower Platte South NRD, Upper Elkhorn NRD, and Upper Loup NRD, respectively. Figure 26 displays the same information for industrial uses aggregated by county.

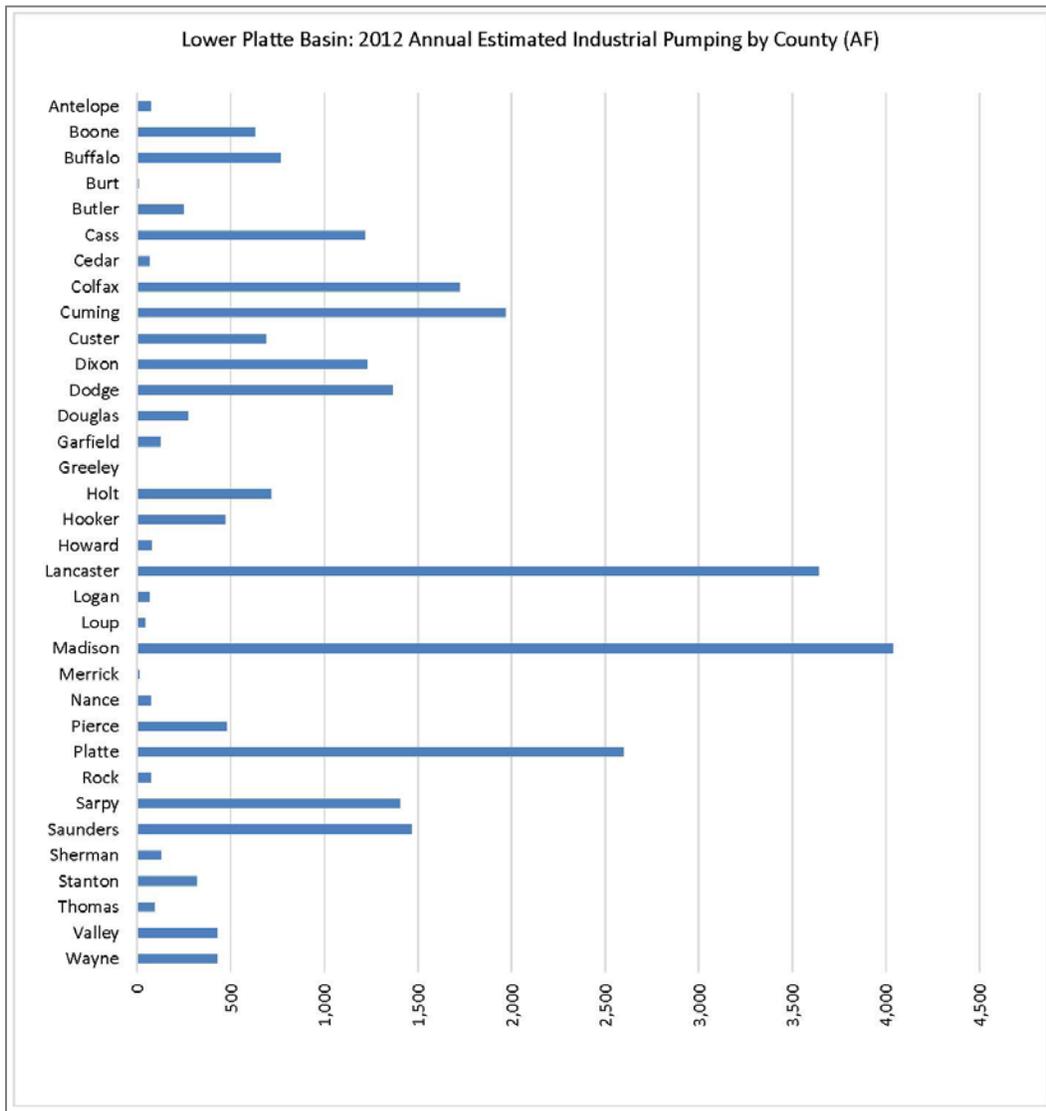
**Figure 25: 2012 Estimated Industrial Groundwater Demands by NRD**



Source: *Municipal and Industrial Pumping*, TFG, January 2014.

Note: Measurements are in acre-feet.

**Figure 26: 2012 Estimated Industrial Groundwater Demands by County**

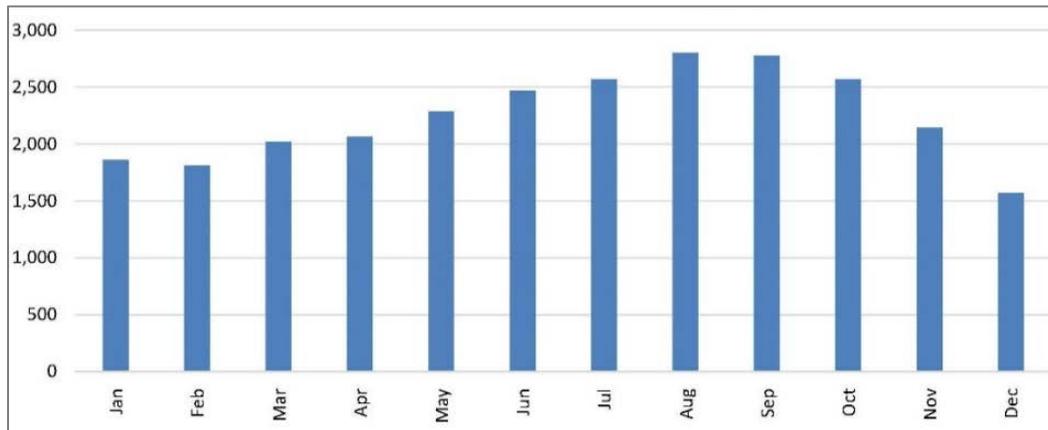


Source: *Municipal and Industrial Pumping, TFG, January 2014.*

Note: *Measurements are in acre-feet.*

Figure 27 shows the estimated annual distribution of industrial demands. The demand peaks during the summer months but remains relatively stable throughout the year.

**Figure 27: 2012 Estimated Industrial Groundwater Demands by Month**



Source: *Municipal and Industrial Pumping, TFG, January 2014.*

Note: Measurements are in acre-feet.

## 2.8 Non-consumptive use demands

Non-consumptive use demands are demands on the water supply that are available to meet other demands. Examples of non-consumptive use demands are hydropower demands and induced groundwater recharge demands.

The Nebraska Game and Parks Commission holds instream flow appropriations for the protection of fish and wildlife. The instream flow rights have a priority date of November 30, 1993<sup>8</sup>. The instream flow appropriations are measured at the North Bend gage and the Louisville gage, although the appropriations extend to the confluence with the Missouri River. Figure 28 lists the instream flow appropriations by location. Section 5.4.4 discusses in more detail the administration of these instream flow appropriations by the NeDNR.

---

<sup>8</sup> The instream flow appropriation has a priority date of 11/30/1993; however, it was not approved until 6/26/1998. The NeDNR has placed a priority call on the Lower Platte River for the instream flow right a total of 23 times between 1999 and 2018. See Section 5.4.4.5 for discussion of surface water administration in Nebraska.

**Figure 28: Total Platte River instream flow appropriations**

Total Platte River Instream Flow Needs For Purposes of Water Administration All Quantities in CFS						
Central Platte figures in blue (Priority date of 7-25-1990) Game & Parks figures in red (Priority date of 11-30-1993) Totals in black						
TIME PERIOD	VERTON GAGE	ODESSA GAGE	GRAND ISLAND GAGE	DUNCAN GAGE	NORTH BEND GAGE	LOUISVILLE GAGE
January	500	500	500	500	1,800	3,100
February	500	500	500	500	1,800	3,700
March	1,100	1,100	1,100	500	1,800	3,700
April 1-14	1,300	1,350 (1,300 + 50)	1,350 (1,300 + 50)	500	1,800	3,700
April 15-30	1,500	1,500	1,500	500	1,800	3,700
May 1-3	1,500	1,500	1,500	500	1,800	3,700
May 4-10	500	1,350 (includes 500)	1,350 (includes 500)	500	1,800	3,700
May 11-31	500	500	500	500	1,800	3,700
June 1-23	500	1,000 (500 + 500)	1,000 (500 + 500)	1,000 (500 + 500)	1,800	3,700
June 24-30	600	1,000 (600 + 400)	1,000 (600 + 400)	1,000 (600 + 400)	1,800	3,700
July 1-31	600	1,000 (600 + 400)	1,000 (600 + 400)	1,000 (600 + 400)	1,800	3,700
August 1-22	600	800 (600 + 200)	800 (600 + 200)	900 (600 + 300)	1,800	3,500
August 23-31	500	800 (500 + 300)	800 (500 + 300)	900 (500 + 400)	1,800	3,500
September	500	500	500	500	1,800	3,200
October 1-11	1,100	1,350 (includes 1,100)	1,350 (includes 1,100)	500	1,800	3,700
October 12-31	1,500	1,500	1,500	500	1,800	3,700
November 1-10	1,500	1,500	1,500	500	1,800	3,700
November 11-30	500	500	500	500	1,800	3,700
December	500	500	500	500	1,800	3,700

Source: NeDNR

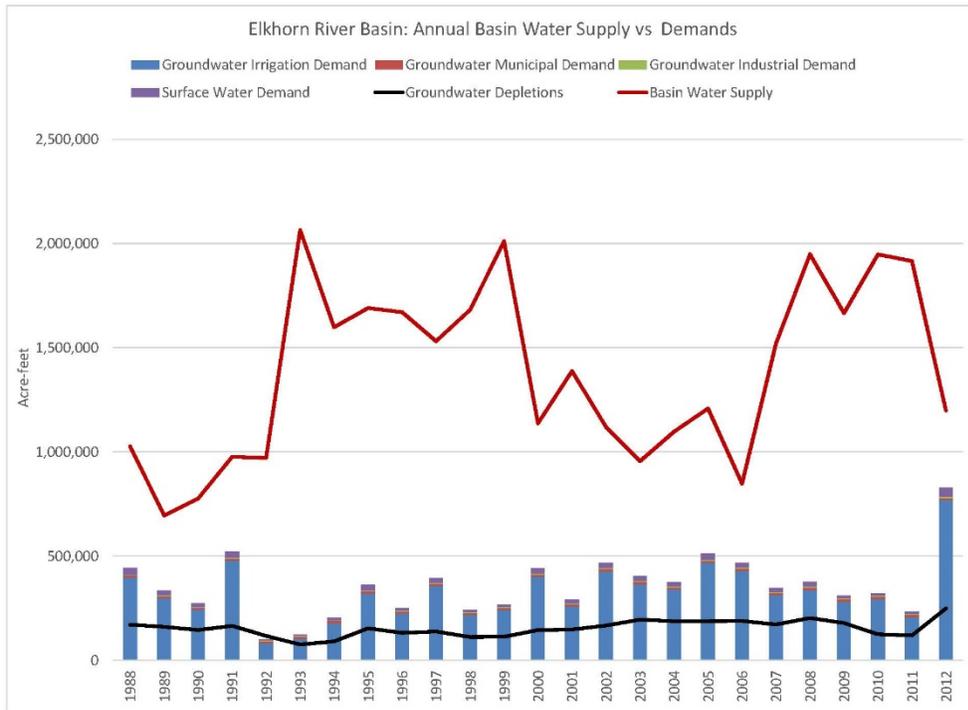
## 2.9 Supplies versus Demands

As previously mentioned, the Basin Plan quantified basin supplies and basin demands. Section 2.6 described the sources of water supply in the Basin while Sections 2.7 and 2.8 discussed each demand component in detail. This section evaluates the comparison of basin supplies versus demands, in addition to observed daily flows versus existing appropriations..

Figure 29 through Figure 34 illustrate the basin supply and demand comparisons used in developing the Basin Plan. For this effort, the basin water supply is inclusive of the historic surface water diversions and groundwater depletions to recreate the water supply in the absence of human depletions. This is then compared to full permitted demand (which may be greater than what was historically consumed). In general, basin water supplies are have been historically adequate to meet subbasin demand on a seasonal basis.

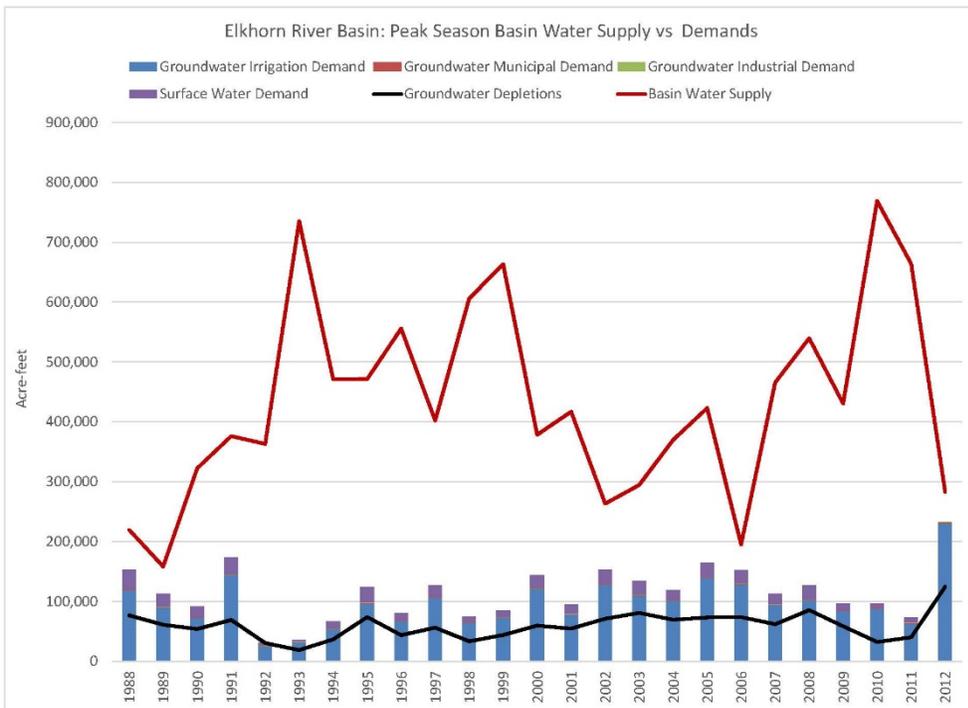
Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

**Figure 29: Estimated annual supply vs. demands in the Elkhorn River Basin (1988-2012)**



Source: Basin Plan accounting

**Figure 30: Estimated peak season supply vs. demands in the Elkhorn River Basin (1988-2012)**

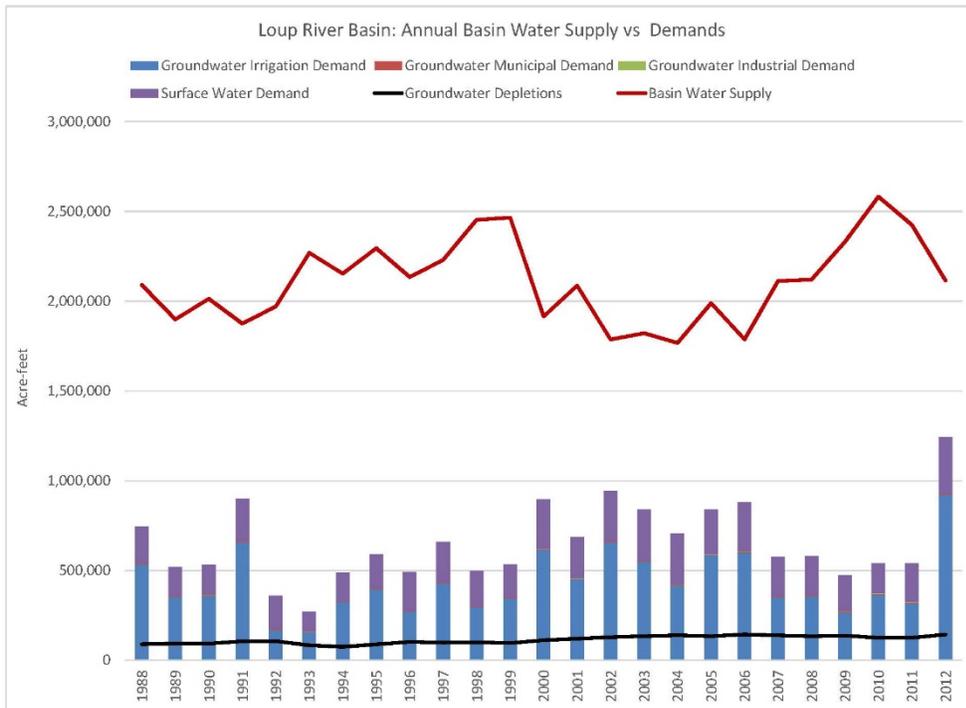


Note: Peak Season corresponds to June 1 through August 31.

Source: Basin Plan accounting

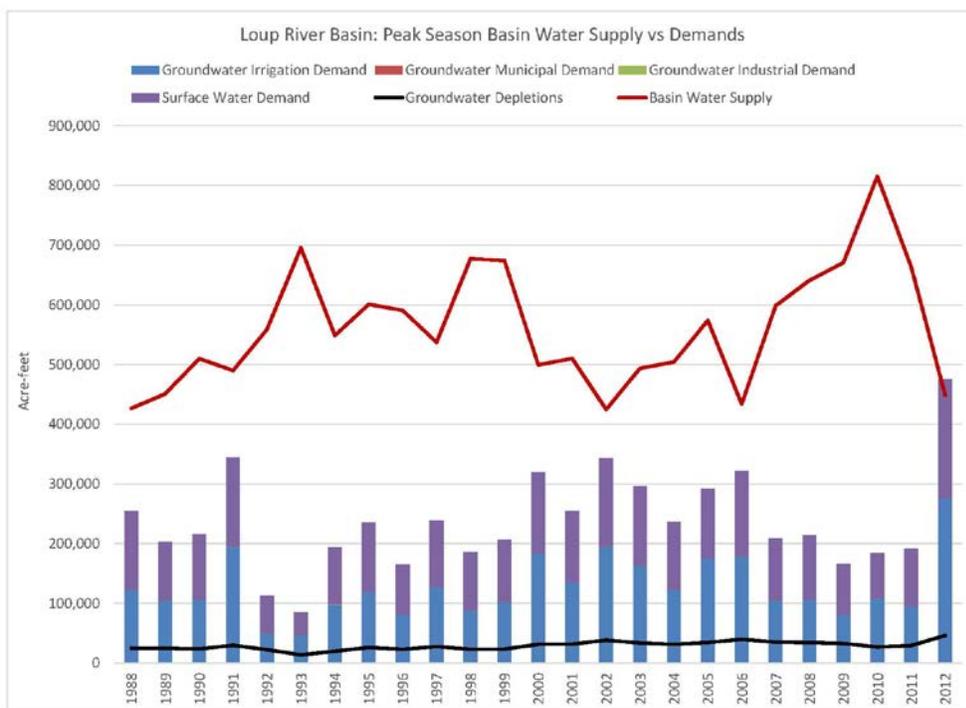
Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

**Figure 31: Estimated annual supply vs. demands in the Loup River Basin (1988-2012)**



Source: Basin Plan accounting

**Figure 32: Estimated peak season supply vs. demands in the Loup River Basin (1988-2012)**

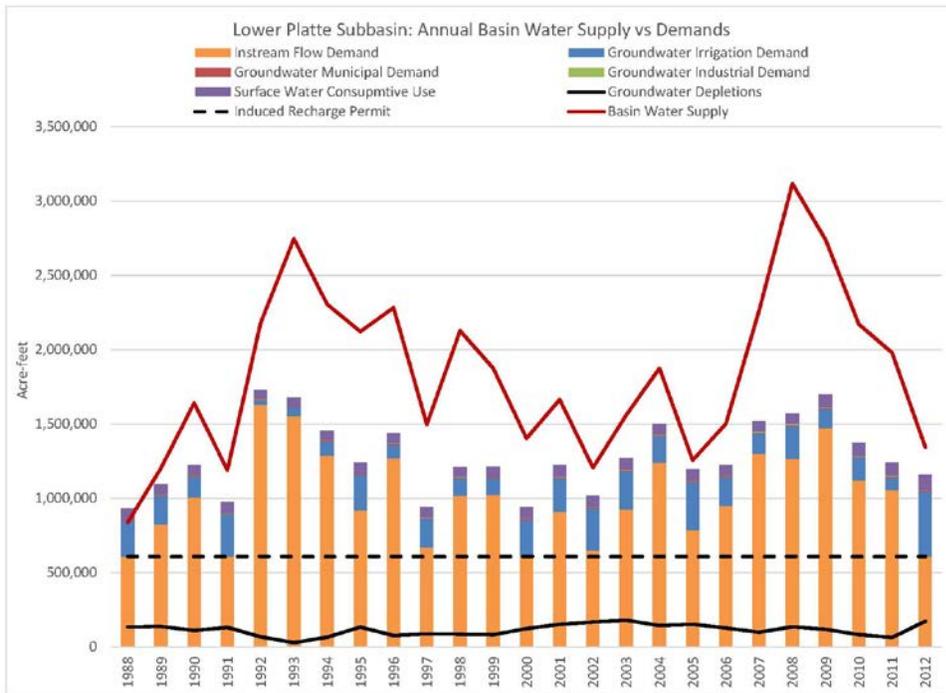


Note: Peak Season corresponds to June 1 through August 31.

Source: Basin Plan accounting

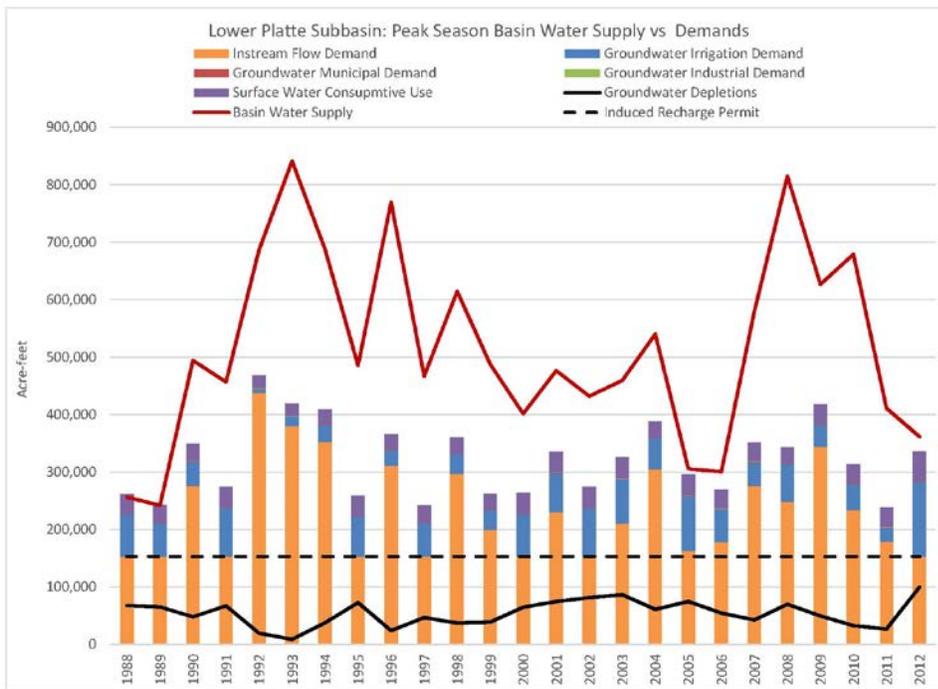
Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

**Figure 33: Estimated annual supply vs. demands in the Lower Platte River subbasin (1988-2012)**



Source: Basin Plan accounting

**Figure 34: Estimated peak season supply vs. demands in the Lower Platte River Subbasin (1988-2012)**



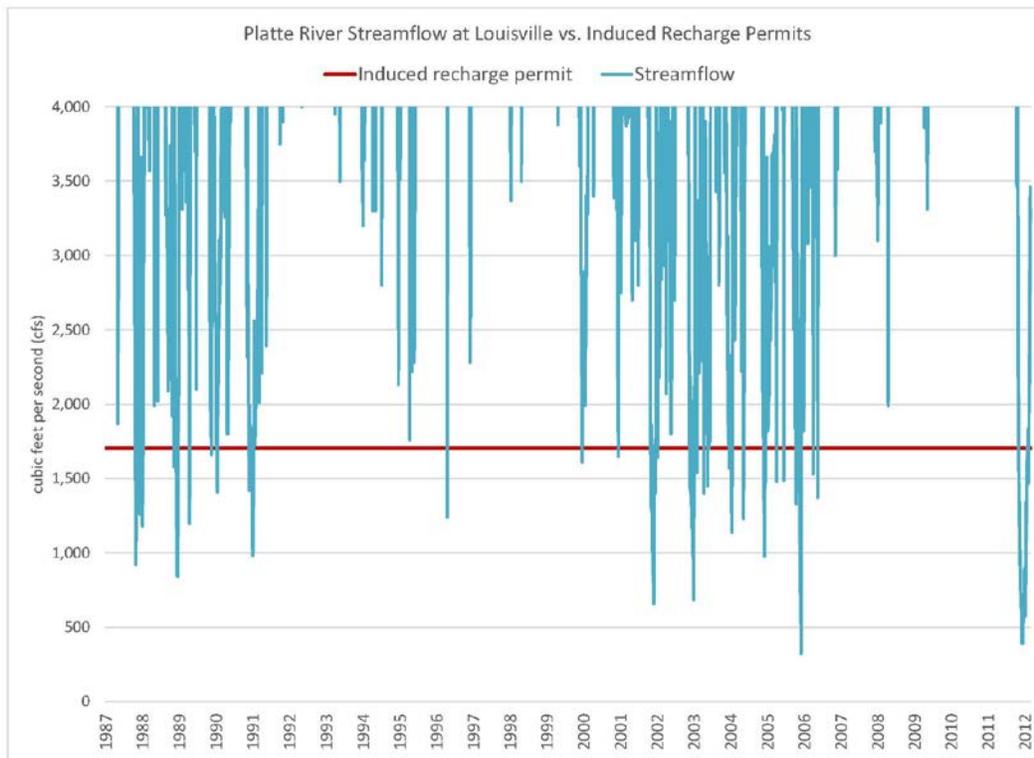
Note: Peak Season corresponds to June 1 through August 31.

Source: Basin Plan accounting

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

Figure 29 through Figure 34 considered basin water supplies versus demands on a seasonal basis. These plots reveal that, in general, basin supplies are adequate to meet basin demands on a seasonal basis. However, this generalization does not always hold when considering observed flows versus appropriations on a daily basis. Figure 35 and Figure 36 compare observed Platte River streamflow at Louisville against the induced groundwater recharge appropriation (1,704 cfs/day for MUD Platte West and LWS well fields) and the daily instream flow appropriation. Comparing streamflow versus appropriations on a daily basis reveals that at times the streamflow in the Lower Platte River has not been adequate to meet these appropriations.

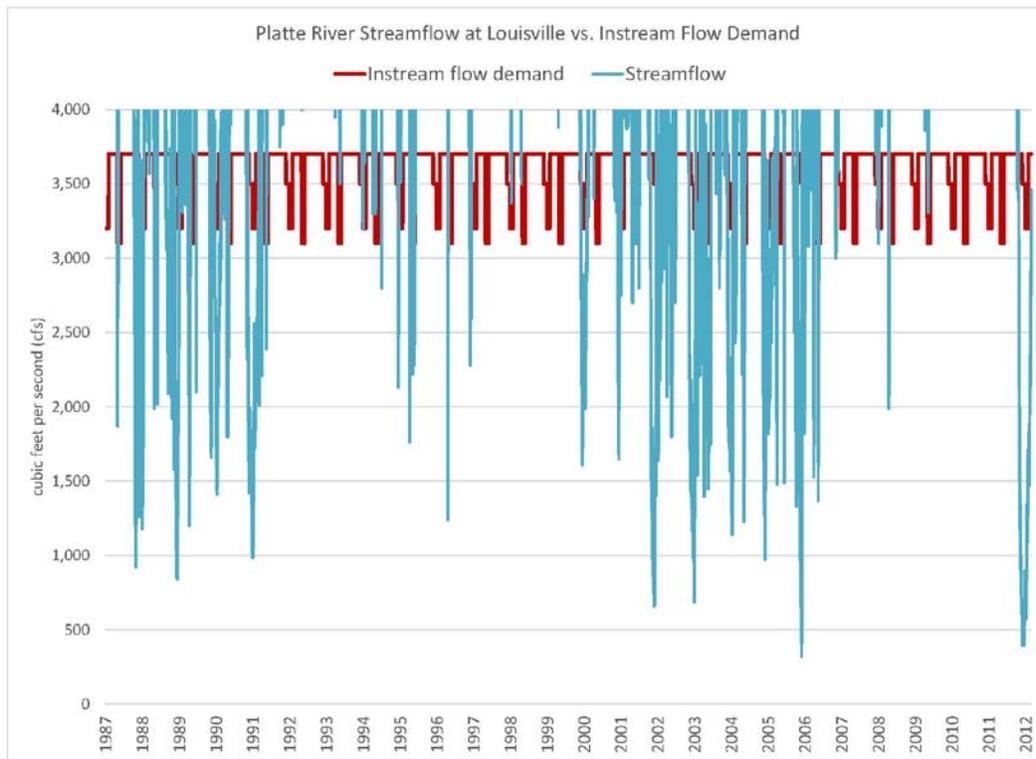
**Figure 35: Platte River Streamflow at Louisville versus MUD and LWS induced groundwater recharge permits (1988-2012)**



*Note: MUD Platte West well field has an induced recharge permit of 1,000 cfs/day. LWS well field has an induced recharge permit of 704 cfs/day.*

*Source: Louisville daily stream flow was obtained from USGS.*

**Figure 36: Platte River streamflow at Louisville versus daily instream flow demand (1988-2012)**



Source: Louisville daily stream flow was obtained from USGS.

## 2.10 Consideration of Future Demands

Several factors influence future water demands. Population growth and expansion of irrigated acres are the two largest contributors to growth in new water use demands. In addition, climate change over the next century is projected to increase demand for current and future uses.

The growth in future demands was addressed through the basin-wide planning effort by the Lower Platte Basin Coalition described in Section 2.0 of this Plan. The Coalition’s Basin Plan contains accounting methodologies that considers demands from future population growth and establishes controls to manage the growth in future demands to protect existing uses. As such, future growth in demands is not explicitly incorporated into the development of mitigation or response actions as part of this Drought Contingency Plan.

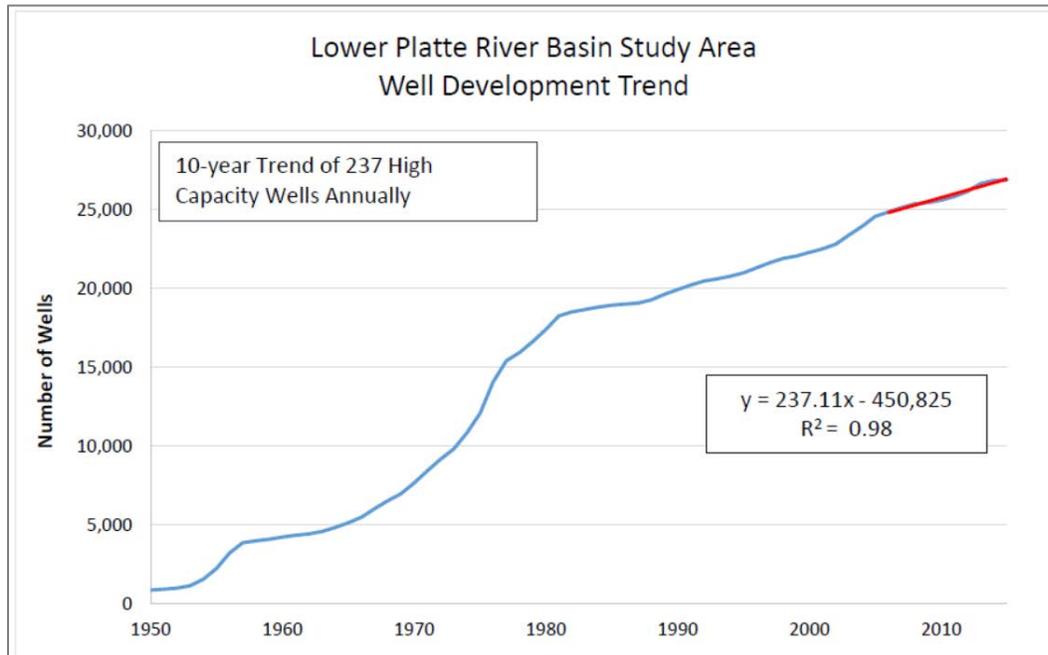
### 2.10.1 Estimated Growth of Groundwater Development

Estimates of the number of high capacity groundwater wells (wells pumping greater than 50 gallons per minute [gpm]) that would be completed over the next 25 years, if no new legal constraints on the construction of such wells were imposed, were calculated based on extrapolating the present-day rate of increase in well development into the future (Figure 37). The present-day rate of development is based on the linear trend of the previous 10 years of development. Based on the analysis of the past 10 years of

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

development, the rate of increase in high capacity wells is estimated to be 237 wells per year in the Lower Platte River Basin (NeDNR 2016).<sup>9</sup>

**Figure 37: High Capacity Well Development, Lower Platte River Basin**



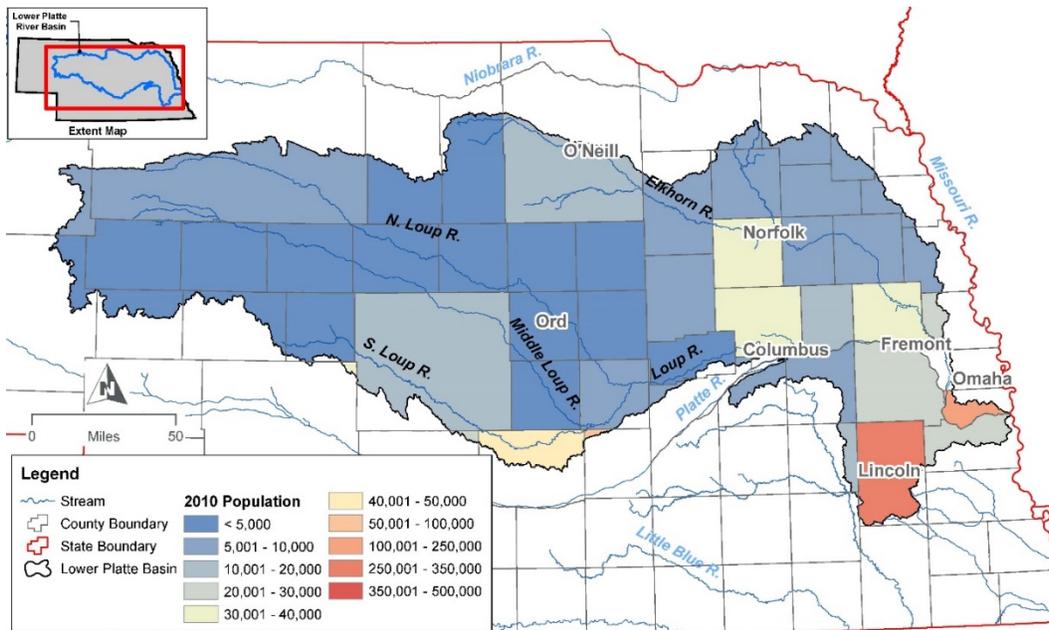
Source: NeDNR Fully Appropriated Basin Report (NeDNR 2017)

### 2.10.2 Population Growth

Figure 38 includes population ranges for each county located within the Lower Platte River Basin. It should be noted that the populations presented are for the entire county, even though portions of the county may lie outside the boundaries of the Lower Platte River Basin. It is important to understand population trends to understand where growth is occurring, and consequently, increased municipal water use. It is equally important for drought preparedness to understand the population centers. The largest population centers in the Lower Platte River Basin are located in Douglas County, followed by Lancaster and Sarpy Counties.

<sup>9</sup> See Section 2.0 on Lower Platte River Basin Coalition Basin Water Management Plan and limits of future groundwater and surface water development in the Lower Platte River Basin.

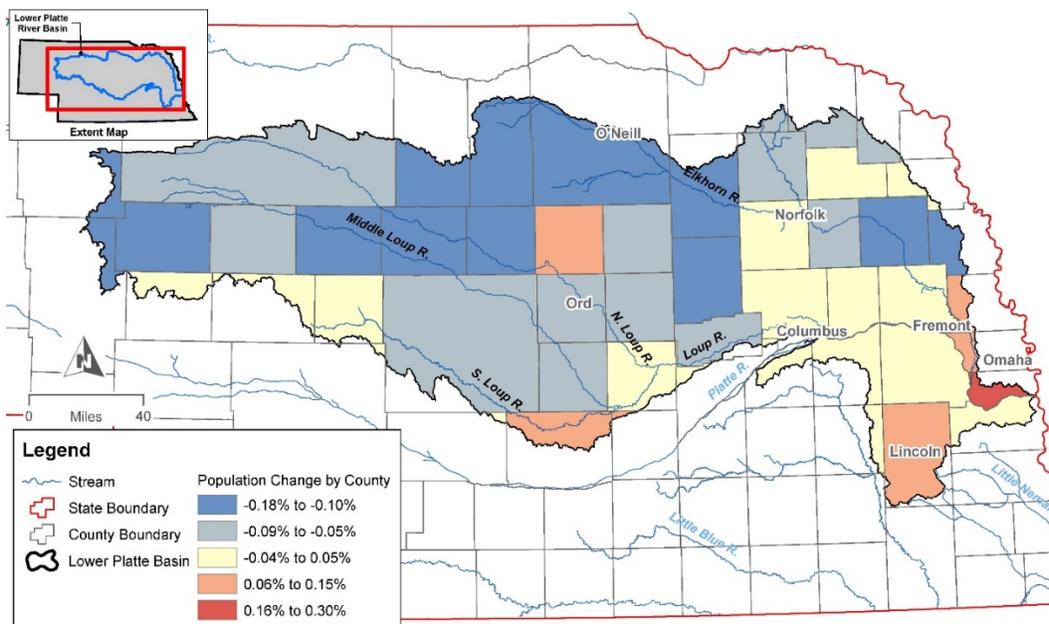
**Figure 38: 2010 Population by County**



Source: United States Census Bureau

Figure 39 shows the population growth by county between the 2000 and 2010 Census. In general, the rural areas of the Lower Platte River Basin have seen a decline in population (up to a maximum of 18 percent decline in certain areas) and population has increased by as much as 6 to 30 percent around major metropolitan areas (Washington, Douglas, Lancaster, and Sarpy Counties).

**Figure 39: 2000 – 2010 Population Change by County**



Source: United States Census Bureau

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

Water conservation measures implemented by MUD, LWS, and other municipal and industrial water suppliers, as well as their customers, have been successful in offsetting much of the water demands associated with increased population served within the Lower Platte River basin.

“Contrary to an ongoing discourse around urbanization as a key driver of regional water stresses, urban water withdrawals for Lincoln have decreased over time even as the population has increased. Whereas drought prompted an increase in well installations [ . . . ] in the agricultural sector, outdoor water use restrictions rapidly curtailed water withdrawals in the urban sector, where water conservation has gradually decoupled total withdrawals from population growth. [R]ather than exacerbating inter-sectoral conflict, cities may introduce a high-value and flexible water use that can be rapidly curtailed during drought.” (Zipper et. Al, 2017)

### 2.10.3 Projected Future Water Change in Lower Platte River Basin

Founded in 1988 by the World Meteorological Organization and United Nations, the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) is the international body for assessing the science related to climate change. In 2007, IPCC published its *Fourth Assessment: Climate Change 2007*, which includes projected future climate change based on various future emission scenarios.

“Projected Freshwater Withdrawals in the United States under a Changing Climate” (Brown, Foti, and Ramirez 2013) utilizes three of these future emission scenarios in their analysis: A-1B, A-2, and B-2. These are described as follows:

- “The A-1B scenario expects a high level of technological change and rapid spread of new and efficient technologies, with a balanced emphasis on all energy sources. This scenario most closely extends historic population and economic growth patterns”.
- “The A-2 scenario expects a lower rate of technological change and higher population growth”. “Of the three scenarios, the A-2 scenario results in the highest [ . . . ] atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> concentration”.
- “The B-2 scenario expects slower population growth but also a lower rate of technological change, with more emphasis on environmental protection”. Of the three scenarios, [ . . . ] B-2 [results in] the lowest atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> concentration”.

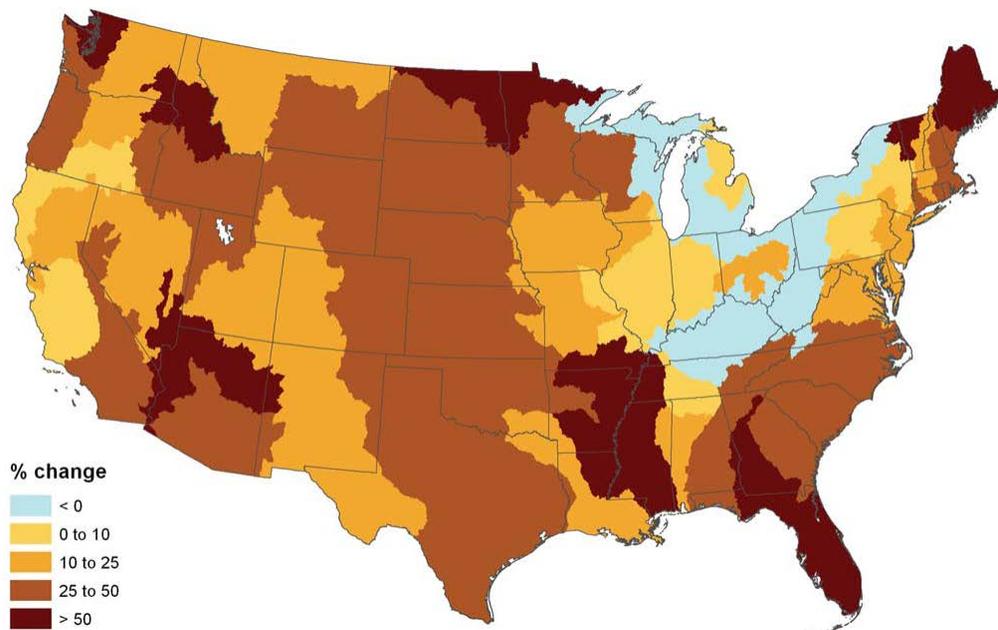
“Projected Freshwater Withdrawals in the United States under a Changing Climate” (Brown, Foti, and Ramirez 2013) investigated the effects of population growth effects on water withdrawals both with and without climate change to isolate plausible impacts from climate change alone.

This assessment found that despite an expected 70 percent increase in population from 2005 to 2090 with the A-1B scenario, in the absence of future changes in climate, total water withdrawals in the U.S. would increase by only 13 percent, assuming water supply were no more limiting to growth in withdrawal than it has been in the recent past. (Brown, Foti, and Ramirez 2013)

This projection assumes “future gains in water use efficiency and reductions in irrigated area in the west” (2013). However, when climate change is considered, significant increases in water demand occur. “The U.S. withdrawals are projected to increase from 2005 to 2060 by 26 percent, 34 percent, and 5 percent for the A-1B, A-2, and B-2 scenarios, respectively; corresponding increases from 2005 to 2090 are 42 percent, 82 percent, and 12 percent respectively” (2013).

Figure 40 shows the geographic distribution of the projected increases in water withdrawal based on the A-1B scenario. It is shown that the Midwest is expected to have a 25 to 50 percent increase in water withdrawals under this scenario.

**Figure 40: Projected Percent Change in Future Water Use in the United States from 2005 to 2060 for the A-1B Climate Scenario**



Source: “Projecting Freshwater Withdrawals in the United States Under a Changing Climate” (Brown, Foti, and Ramirez 2013)

The study analyzed the increases isolated to climate change by evaluating effects of increasing temperature (T), decreasing precipitation (P), and increased evapotranspiration (ET<sub>p</sub>).

A decrease in precipitation results in increases in agricultural irrigation and landscape watering. “Although specific regions of the U.S. are projected to experience increases or decreases in precipitation, at the national scale, little change in precipitation is projected” (Brown, Foti, and Ramirez 2013). As temperatures increase, there is an “increase[s] in water use at thermoelectric plants to accommodate the electricity needed to satisfy increasing space cooling demands that occur with rising temperatures” (2013). Increasing ET<sub>p</sub> (corresponding to increased temperatures) results in increased agricultural irrigation and landscape watering “as plant water use responds to changes in atmospheric demand” (2013).

“The temperature effect is slightly larger than the precipitation effect, reaching 3 percent in 2060 and 5 percent in 2090” (2013). “The ET<sub>p</sub> effect is [much larger], reaching 16 percent in 2055 and 23 percent in 2090” (2013). “The combined (temperature, precipitation, ET<sub>p</sub>) effect of a changing climate is to increase total withdrawal in the U.S. by about 20 percent in 2060 and by about 30 percent in 2090, as compared to a future without climate change” (2013).

### 3.0 Vulnerability Assessment

“Factors influencing drought vulnerability are numerous, and their inclusion may depend on data availability” (Wilhelmi and Wilhite, 2002) “[V]ulnerability to drought is the product of numerous interrelated factors such as population growth and shifts, urbanization, demographic characteristics, water use trends, social behavior, and environmental susceptibilities” (Commission on Water Resource Management 2003). “The degree to which a population is vulnerable hinges on the ability to anticipate, to deal with, resist, and recover from the drought” (Commission on Water Resource Management 2003).

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

The effects from drought can be classified as direct and indirect. Direct effects include physical destruction of property, crops, natural resources, as well as public health and safety. Indirect effects are consequences of that destruction, such as temporary unemployment and business interruption (National Academy of Sciences 1999). “The most vulnerable portions of the state in terms of economic impact are cropland, pasture land for animals, recreational areas, and businesses that depend on agricultural industries for the bulk of their business. However, all areas of the state can be impacted by drought events” (Nebraska Emergency Management Agency [NEMA] 2014). Figure 41 summarizes sectors that are affected by drought (both agriculture and non-agriculture).

**Figure 41: An Overview of Drought Economic Effects**



Source: Adapted from Ding, Hayes, and Widhalm 2010

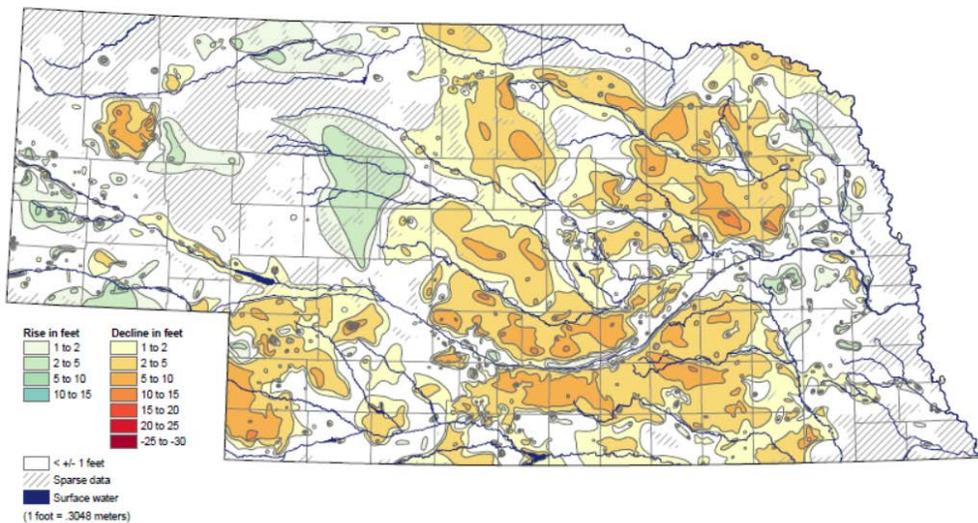
The drought of 2012 was considered the most severe single-year drought on record for Nebraska, with the driest May-to-September on record coupled with extreme heat. From the spring of 2012 to the spring of 2013, most wells in Nebraska experienced declines ranging from 1 foot to more than 20 feet. The increased demand for irrigation water combined with slower rates of recharge resulted in some of the greatest recorded 1-year water-level declines in Nebraska (Young, Burbach, and Howard 2013).

Streamflows respond more quickly to drought than to groundwater. “[T]he lag time between the beginning of a drought and the start of declining ground-water levels is longer than for streamflows. This time-lag pattern continues following the end of a drought when streamflows are returning to normal and ground-water levels may still be declining” (USGS 2005). Figure 42 shows the groundwater-level

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

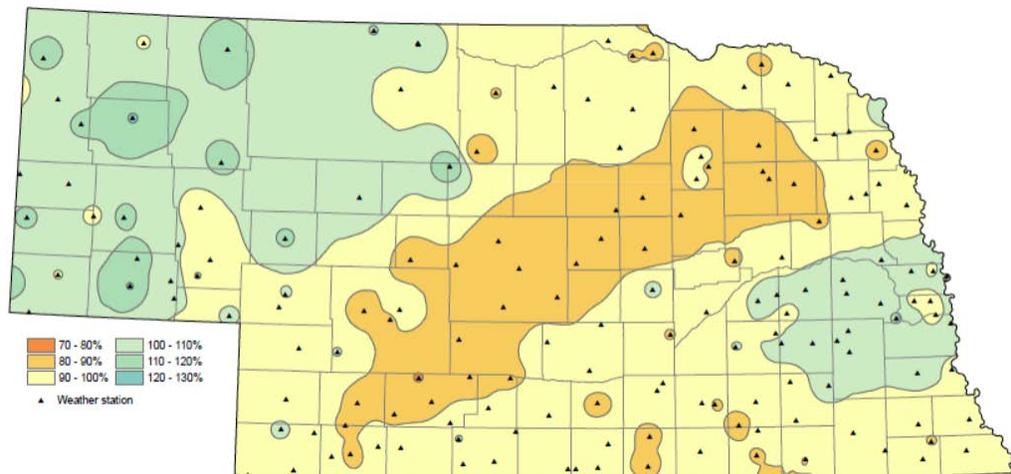
changes between 2011 and 2016. It can be seen that the groundwater levels in the majority of the Lower Platte River Basin have not fully recovered with groundwater levels 1 to 15 feet below 2011 levels. Figure 43 shows that precipitation for the same period was 70 to 100 percent of normal across the basin.

**Figure 42: Groundwater-Level Changes in Nebraska – Spring 2011 to Spring 2016**



Source: Nebraska Statewide Groundwater-Level Monitoring Report (Young et al. 2016)

**Figure 43: Percent of Normal Precipitation – January 2011 to January 2016**



Source: Nebraska Statewide Groundwater-Level Monitoring Report (Young et al. 2016)

### 3.1 Agricultural Sector

Nebraska is the nation’s third largest producer of corn (USDA NASS 2017). “Relatively little corn in the US is used for direct human consumption. Close to 40% is used for livestock feed. So higher corn prices translate to higher feed costs and higher beef prices, and ultimately to higher food prices.” (Reed 2015)

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

In 2012, Nebraska was the fourth largest consumer of crop insurance and the fifth largest recipient of indemnity payments (Reed 2015). During the drought of 2012, the total Nebraska indemnities were at \$544 million, with \$502 million due to drought, heat, and dry wind on more than two million acres of cropland. (Reed 2015) “Governors and some members of Congress urged the EPA to ease the Renewable Fuel Standard, requiring increased production of ethanol, a biofuel commonly produced from corn. The leaders argued that the mandate exacerbated the corn shortage, and in turn, increased costs for food producers.” (Reed 2015)

“Crop failures and pasture losses are the primary direct economic impact of drought within the agricultural sector. Drought-induced production losses cause negative food supply shocks, but the amount of incurred economic impacts and distribution of losses depends on the market structure and interaction between the supply and demand of agricultural products” (Ding, Hayes, and Widhalm 2010).

“Drought causes losses in crop yields and quality, insect infestation, disease and wildlife damage, and damage to grazing lands” (NEMA 2014). Drought causes long-term impacts on perennial crops and livestock productions that can last for years.

“During the long-term and/or severe droughts, farmers may have a higher cost of crop production because of increased water and energy cost for irrigation. In some cases, farms may temporarily lose water rights because of seniority and this could result in reduced crop yields. However, in most cases, and especially, during a short-term drought, irrigated farming provides more security for crop grower” (Wilhemli & Wilhite, 2002) “[W]here available, irrigated was being effectively used as a tool for creating agricultural drought resistance. Taken in aggregate, [this] point[s] to an “all eggs in one basket” approach: irrigating as the sole means of agricultural drought resistance. [Continued] reliance on agricultural irrigation as a drought mitigation measure may leave the Basin vulnerable to future multiyear drought.” (Zipper et al, 2017)

“Drought-induced losses are not completely borne by farmers; instead, a portion of the losses [is] passed on to consumers through increased prices. [...] Additionally, farmers purchasing crop insurance will get part of their losses compensated by insurance companies, and some eligible farmers may receive direct disaster aid from the government” (Ding, Hayes, and Widhalm 2010). Additional indirect effects include reduced supplies to downstream industries, reduced fertilizer sales, and diminished expenditures (2010).

### **3.2 Non-agricultural Groundwater Users (Domestic, Commercial, Industrial)**

In addition to irrigation, groundwater supplies businesses and industries. The effect of drought on business depends on the importance of water for operations. Businesses such as grocers and food production, nurseries, car washes, and construction can be especially hit hard. For industries, key components of operations are dependent on water at a specific time. Droughts affect production, sales, and operations of these industries. Drought can lead to lost production, lost revenue, and increased costs to consumers.

As these industries increase pumping during a drought, they may cause the groundwater level to be drawn down, which can directly affect domestic groundwater users, potentially drawing the water table below their domestic wells and effectively cutting off their domestic water supply.

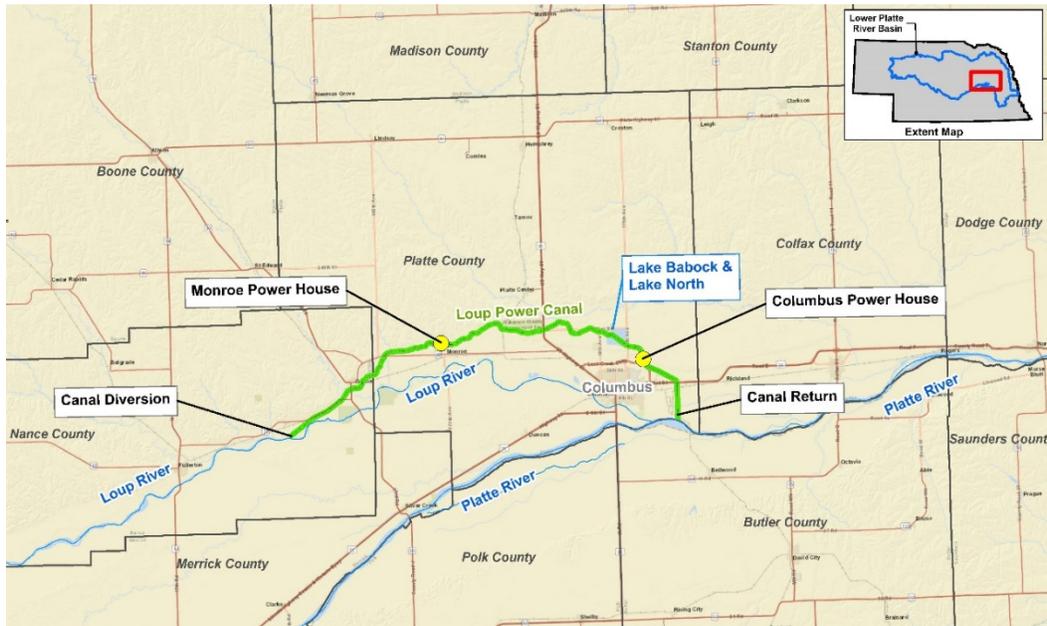
### **3.3 Energy Sector**

The Loup River Public Power District, headquartered in Columbus, is a public power electric utility serving Boone, Colfax, Nance, and Platte Counties as well as a small portion of Madison County. Loup River Public Power District’s Columbus Powerhouse is one of the largest hydro-generating houses in Nebraska. Loup River Public Power District Hydropower’s service area covers approximately

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

2,028 square miles (Figure 44). Total population within Loup River Public Power District's service area numbers about 50,000. The canal diverts water from the Loup River into the Loup Power Canal to the Monroe powerhouse. The canal then carries water from the Monroe plant to two regulating reservoirs north of Columbus that feed the Columbus powerhouse. These lakes have enough storage capacity for 48 hours of emergency hydro-generation. The Loup Power Canal then returns to the Platte River. Less water flowing to the hydro-generating facilities limits the ability to generate energy.

**Figure 44: Loup Public Power Canal System**



### 3.4 Public Water Supply

Public water systems along the Lower Platte River are largely dependent on aquifers hydrologically connected to the river and its tributaries and dependent on streamflow for recharge. Omaha and Lincoln, Nebraska's two largest municipalities, rely heavily on water supplies in the Lower Platte River to support well-field operations adjacent to the river. MUD's water system receives roughly half of its capacity from the Lower Platte River and the other half is received from the Missouri River. The capacity of Lincoln Water Systems' Ashland Well-field is directly dependent on flows in the Lower Platte River adjacent to the well-field. The vulnerability of public water supply during drought is amplified in the Lower Platte River Basin due to the lack of redundant water sources. With the exception of MUD, public water systems along the Lower Platte River rely solely on the aquifers hydrologically connected to the Platte River and reliant on its flows for recharge.

#### 3.4.1 Water Supply Capacity Limitations

The supply capacity of the Lincoln well-field has a maximum instantaneous capacity of between 135 MGD and 145 MGD, depending on streamflow conditions (City of Lincoln 2018). The summer seasonal capacity of the well-field for 60- to 90-day production capacity ranges from 85 to 90 MGD when streamflow in the Platte River at Ashland is less than 1,000 cfs. Figure 19 (Section 2.7.2) relates the projected demand to the river flow-dependent pumping capacity of Lincoln well-field. There is a projected supply deficit with the instantaneous and short-term pumping capacity of the well-field, where it is projected that the well-field may not be able to meet the maximum day demand as early as 2030

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

during low-flow periods. In addition to water quantity stresses on these well-fields, previous droughts have provided indications that the well-fields may become more vulnerable to water quality issues during these periods of prolonged drought.

MUD has three supply locations: 1) Florence Plant in north Omaha that obtains its water from the Missouri River with a capacity of 160 MGD; 2) Platte West well-field located south of Venice that obtains its water from the Platte River with a capacity of 100 MGD; and 3) Platte South well-field located near La Platte that obtains water from the Platte River with a capacity of 60 MGD. Total system output for MUD from all three facilities is 320 MGD. MUD has the ability to use all three of their facilities interchangeably to meet their demand.

MUD is currently undergoing an analysis of both its Platte West and Platte South well-fields capacities under drought conditions. According to MUD, their system capacity is not expected to be a concern for the foreseeable future. During the 2012 drought, MUD voluntarily reduced operations at Platte West to 30 to 40 MGD and increased operations at the Florence plant.

### **3.4.1.1 Infrastructure Failure or Needed Upgrades**

Extreme heat during drought can cause increased water main breaks due to dry soil conditions and increase water volumes being pumped through the distribution system. In the summer of 2012 (June, July, and August), 217 water main breaks were reported by MUD officials in Omaha. For comparison, the 10-year average from 2007 to 2016 was 118 breaks for the same period. LWS experienced similar increases in 2012 with a record 234 water main breaks for the year, or a 65 percent increase in breaks.

### **3.4.1.2 Increased Water Treatment Costs**

Drought conditions that result in significant declines in groundwater elevations have the potential to negatively affect water quality; specifically related to iron, manganese, and levels in the water supplies.

Salt Creek is a smaller tributary to the Platte River in terms of flow, can affect water quality in the lower reach of the Platte River as it becomes a larger portion of the total streamflow because of large dissolved solids concentrations in shallow groundwater originating from mineralized areas of the Dakota Sandstone.

### **3.4.1.3 Single-Source Supply and Lack of Redundancy**

An additional risk to the water supply in the Lower Platte River Basin is the lack of redundant surface water sources. While Lake McConaughy, a major surface water reservoir, is located in the Upper Platte River Basin, the Platte River often becomes disconnected during times of low-flow (see Section 2.4). Additionally, LWS does not hold a water right to storage water from Lake McConaughy. There are no major surface water supply storage water reservoirs in the Lower Platte River Basin downstream of Duncan. The sole water source for the LWS is the Platte River.

## **3.5 Recreational and Environmental Sector**

Droughts can be detrimental to the recreational and environmental sectors. The result of sustained drought conditions is decreased streamflow. Streamflows support threatened and endangered species that can become vulnerable during drought periods. The endangered species that could be the most affected by drought include the interior least tern, the piping plover, and the pallid sturgeon. Instream-flow targets represent discharge conditions that are intended to result in favorable habitat for pallid sturgeon in the Lower Platte River. For the pallid sturgeon, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service identified favorable river conditions, including the presence of sandy bottoms, islands or bars, and sediment-rich waters. Factors contributing to the decline in abundance of pallid sturgeon are diverse and in some cases incompletely

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

documented. High water temperatures and loss of connectivity during years of low discharge may be important limiting factors (National Research Council 2005).

“The piping plover is endangered due to the loss of suitable nesting areas. During prolonged droughts, grasses and vegetation can begin growing on the beaches and sandbars along the Platte River making these areas unsuitable for plover nesting. The interior least tern prefers the sandbars along the Platte River for nesting. The same issue that causes a problem for the plover may also present a problem for the least tern” (Ehrman et al. 2015).

Low streamflows are associated with higher water temperatures and degraded water quality that can lead to fish kills and increased water treatment costs. The 2012 drought and extended high air temperatures caused a number of Nebraska’s rivers and stream to be reduced to low-flow, and in some instances, no flow. As a result, a large number of fish kills were caused by thermal stress. These same weather conditions likely caused many of the “low dissolved oxygen” fish kills that were reported in ponds, lakes, and reservoirs (NDEQ 2013).

Lower lake levels are associated with droughts. Lower lake levels have higher water temperatures and are correlated with blue-green algae blooms (NDEQ 2013). Lower lake levels result in decreased boating, fishing, and tourism.

Fish kills in lakes are typically caused by low dissolved oxygen concentrations stemming from eutrophic conditions. Eutrophication is a term that describes water quality conditions as a lake or reservoir ages, which is common during droughts when fresh inflows into the lake or reservoir are limited or non-existent. Lakes or reservoirs that are eutrophic tend to be shallow with high nutrient concentrations and exhibit frequent algae blooms, warmer water temperatures, and lower dissolved oxygen concentrations. “As water warms, its ability to retain dissolved oxygen is lessened. If warm water conditions persist, the demand for oxygen will eventually surpass the supply and a fish kill will occur” (NDEQ 2013).

### 3.6 Public Health Sector

The public health sector is adversely affected by drought through soil erosion and wildfires, which: degrade air quality; result in toxins in water bodies; increase presence of mosquitos and rodents; and adversely affects public mental health. The Center for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) has assessed previous droughts and identified the following possible public health implications due to drought (CDC 2012):

- “compromised quantity and quality of drinking water;
- increased recreational risks;
- effects on air quality;
- diminished living conditions related to energy, air quality, and sanitation and hygiene;
- compromised food and nutrition; and
- increased incidence of illness and disease”. (CDC 2012)

During a drought, effects on air quality “make chronic respiratory illnesses worse and increase the risk for respiratory infections like bronchitis and pneumonia” (CDC 2012).

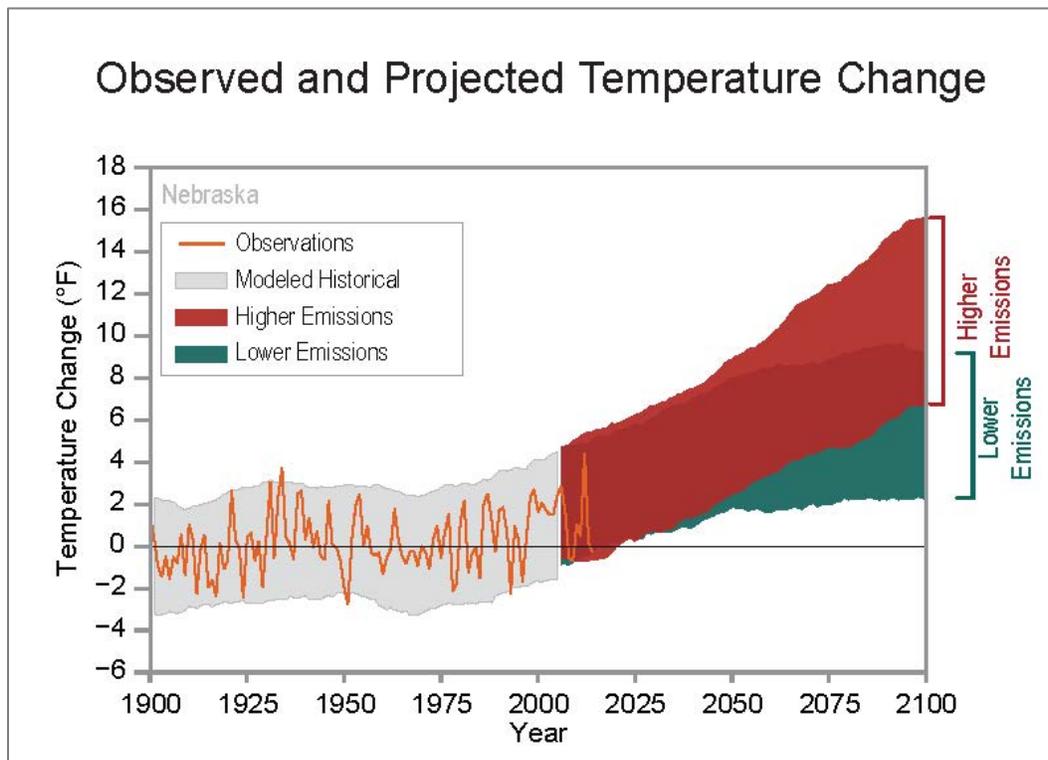
### 3.7 Potential Future Vulnerabilities attributable to Climate Change

Changes in extreme weather and climate events, such as heat waves and droughts, are the primary way that most people experience climate change. Human-induced climate change has already increased the number and strength of some of these extreme events. Over the last 50 years, much of the U.S. has seen increases in prolonged periods of excessively high temperatures, heavy downpours, and in some regions, severe floods and droughts (Melilo, Richmond, and Yohe 2014).

Section 2.10.3 discusses potential increases in groundwater withdrawals that are attributed to climate change.

Nebraska has experienced an overall warming of about 1 degree Fahrenheit (°F) since 1895. The vast majority of this warming has occurred during the winter months. The 10 warmest years on record have occurred since 1997 (Bathke et al. 2014).

**Figure 45: Observed and Projected Temperature Change in Nebraska**



Source: NOAA National Centers for Environmental Information 2017.

Figure 45 shows observed and projected changes (compared to 1901-1960 average) in near surface air temperature in Nebraska. Unprecedented warming is projected during the twenty-first century. Less warming is expected under lower emissions future (the coldest years being about as warm as the warmest years in the historical record; shown in green in the figure) and more warming under a higher emissions future (the hottest years being about 11°F warmer than the hottest year on historical record; shown in red in the figure).

A major concern for Nebraska and other central Great Plains states is the current and continued large projected reduction in snowpack for the central and northern Rocky Mountains. This is due to both a reduction in overall precipitation (rain and snow) and warmer conditions, meaning more rain and less snow, even in winter. Summer flows could be greatly reduced in coming years (Bathke et al. 2014).

The study presented in “Why Do Different Drought Indices Show Distinct Future Drought Risk Outcomes in the U.S. Great Plains?” suggests potential for chronic drought across the Great Plains in the future (Feng et al. 2017). Of particular concern is the potential for climate change to increase the severity, frequency, and duration of future droughts, presenting greater challenges for managing basin water resources and mitigating drought impacts. These potential future drought conditions were considered in developing and evaluating the drought mitigation actions described in Section 5.1. Mitigation actions were evaluated using 2012 (the historic drought of record) conditions in evaluating alternative performance. In addition, a 4-year recurrence of such drought conditions was evaluated– which is more frequent than historical drought occurrences. Finally, as described in Section 5.2, during implementation of this Plan, Coalition members will conduct a table-top exercise that considers more severe droughts, including extended duration droughts (4 to 6 months of 2012 river conditions during the peak of the drought), as well as back-to-back years of severe, extended drought occurrence.

While the Drought Plan assesses the vulnerabilities in the Lower Platte River Basin as a whole, the mitigation measures and response actions presented herein are focused on augmenting surface water supplies in the Lower Platte River primarily for public water supplies, while referencing additional drought management resources available through the University of Nebraska, National Drought Mitigation Center, and other sources. It is believed that in addressing the water supply shortages in the Lower Platte River, ancillary benefits to the remaining sectors, including irrigation, power, environmental, and recreational, would be realized.

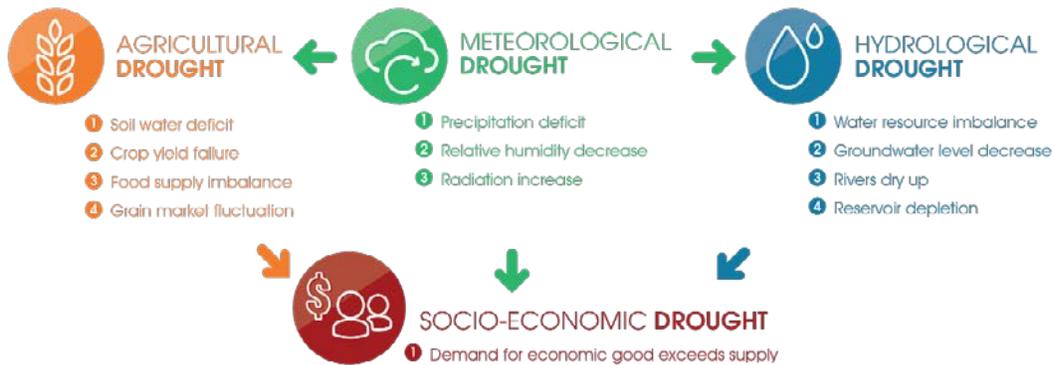
## 4.0 Drought Monitoring

Each of the Consortium members has some form of drought monitoring and triggers for response actions. These individual plans are discussed in detail in Appendix A. A summary of the types of drought monitoring available is discussed in the following sections.

### 4.1 Defining a Drought

There are many definitions for drought, but all definitions include periods of dryness and below average precipitation. The National Drought Mitigation Center (NDMC) lists four types of droughts: meteorological drought, agricultural drought, hydrological drought, and socioeconomic drought. “Meteorological drought is defined usually based on the degree of dryness (in comparison to some “normal” or average amount) and the duration of the dry period.” “Agricultural drought links various characteristics of meteorological (or hydrological) drought to agricultural impacts, focusing on precipitation shortages, differences between actual and potential evapotranspiration, soil water deficits, reduced groundwater or reservoir levels, and so forth.” “Hydrological drought is associated with the effects of periods of low precipitation events (including snowfall) on surface or subsurface water supply (that is, streamflow, reservoir and lake levels, and groundwater levels). The frequency and severity of a hydrological drought is often defined on a watershed or river basin scale.” “Socioeconomic drought occurs when the demand for an economic good exceeds water supplies available to produce the quantity of economic good needed because of a weather-related shortfall in water supply” (for example, a hydropower plant that relies on streamflow whose production may be limited during low streamflow events) (NDMC 2018) (Figure 46).

**Figure 46: Drought Transfer Process and Interactions**



Source: Adapted from National Drought Mitigation Center 2018

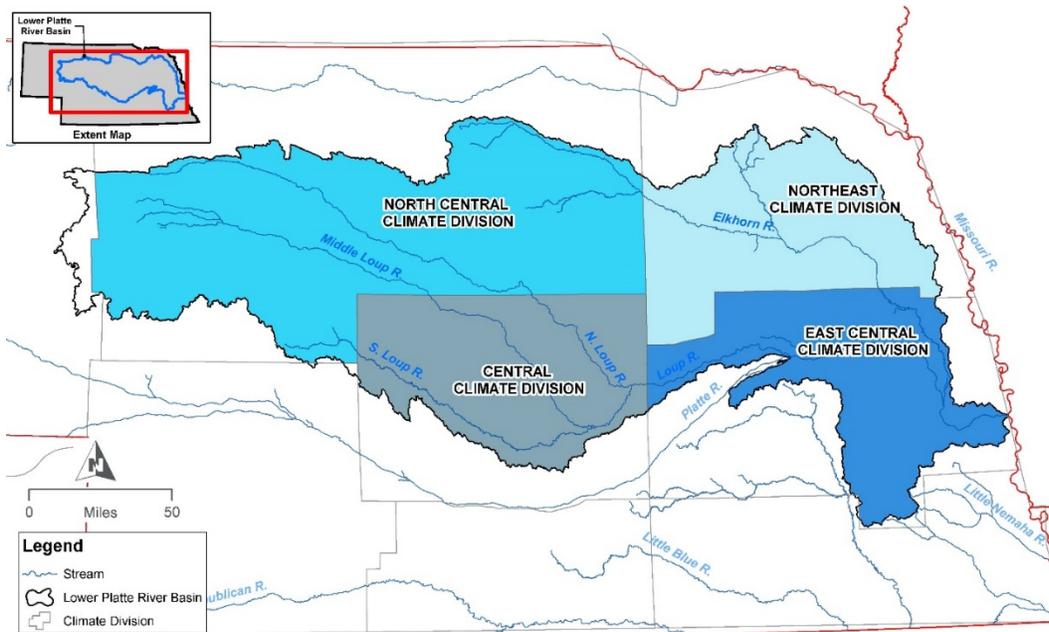
## 4.2 Hydro Climate Indices

Hydro climate indices assess drought severity using inputs such as precipitation, temperature, streamflow, groundwater and reservoir levels, soil moisture, or snowpack. Indices are essential for tracking and anticipating droughts as well as providing historical reference. Indices provide useful triggers to help direct decision-makers toward proactive risk management. Drought severity is best evaluated based on multiple indicators.

Two hydro climate indices were evaluated for appropriateness for drought determination in the Lower Platte River Basin. The first index is the Palmer Drought Severity Index (PDSI). Based on USGS streamflow record data, monthly streamflow on the Platte River from Duncan to Louisville, correlated significantly with the monthly PDSI. (USGS 2008) The second index is the Standardized Precipitation Index (SPI). The World Meteorological Organization and the NDMC endorse the SPI as the standard for determining the existence of meteorological drought (Hayes et al. 2011).

The National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) climate divisions for Nebraska are shown in Figure 47. The Lower Platte River Basin encompasses portions of the North Central, Northeast, Central, and East Central climate divisions. A weighted average of the indices for these four climate divisions should be used for evaluating drought conditions in the Lower Platte River Basin.

**Figure 47: National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration Climate Divisions for Nebraska**



Source: Map layer downloaded from Climate Prediction Center 2018.

#### 4.2.1 Palmer Drought Severity Index

The PDSI is calculated weekly by the NOAA Climate Prediction Center (CPC). Zero or near zero PDSI values indicate normal conditions, a negative PDSI value indicates drought, and a positive PDSI value indicates a wet period. Table 7 lists the PDSI classifications for drought.

**Table 7: Palmer Drought Severity Index Classifications**

Index Value	Description	Index Value	Description
4.0 or above	Extremely wet	-0.99 to -0.5	Incipient dry spell
3.00 to 3.99	Very wet	-1.99 to -1.00	Mild drought
2.00 to 2.99	Moderately wet	-2.99 to -2.00	Moderate drought
1.00 to 1.99	Slightly wet	-3.00 to -3.99	Severe drought
0.5 to 0.99	Incipient wet spell	-4.00 or less	Extreme drought
-0.49 to 0.49	Near normal	---	---

Source: NOAA National Weather Service Climate Prediction Center 2005.

Note: The U.S. Drought Monitor includes one additional category “exceptional drought” for index values less than -5.

### 4.2.2 Standardized Precipitation Index

The SPI is based on precipitation only, and does not consider soil moisture balance like PDSI. Similar to PDSI, zero or near zero SPI values indicate normal conditions, a negative SPI indicates drought, and a positive value for a wet period. Table 8 lists the SPI classification for drought.

**Table 8: SPI Classifications**

Index Value	Description	Index Value	Description
2.0 or greater	Extremely wet	-1.49 to -1.00	Moderate drought
1.50 to 1.99	Severely wet	-1.99 to -1.50	Severe drought
1.00 to 1.49	Moderately wet	-2.0 or less	Extreme drought
-0.99 to 0.99	Near normal	---	---

*Source: National Oceanic Atmospheric Administration National Weather Service, Climate Prediction Center*

The historic PDSI from 1900 to 2017 was compared to the historic 1-month, 3-month, 6-month, and 12-month SPI from the preceding months back through July of the previous year to determine if SPI correlated well with PDSI. These plots, as well as further discussion of how the PDSI and SPI are derived, are found in Appendix B. Ultimately, PDSI was selected as an appropriate index for tracking drought conditions in the Lower Platte River Basin based on its good correlation with historic drought occurrences and increased robustness as it considers additional factors beyond solely precipitation. The SPI should still be monitored and considered in evaluating the potential for drought, similar to the indicators described in Section 4.2.3.

### 4.2.3 Other Drought Indicators

Several other drought indicators should be considered when evaluating the potential for drought conditions to occur in the Lower Platte River. These indicators are more qualitative in nature with respect to flows in the Lower Platte River and may not have triggers associated with them, but they can provide valuable insight into Basin hydrologic conditions. These include:

- Mountain snowpack in the South Platte and North Platte River Basins: During the most severe droughts in the Lower Platte River Basin the Platte River has run dry upstream of Duncan, essentially disconnecting the Upper Platte River Basin. Snowpack can then provide insight into the likelihood of Platte River flow contributions from the Upper Platte River Basin being maintained past Duncan. This is particularly true for the South Platte River Basin snowpack, where flows are largely unregulated by reservoirs, etc., and snowmelt runoff in high snowpack years can sustain flows in the Lower Platte River into July.
- Plains snowpack: Plains snowpack in the Platte River Basin can be used to anticipate soil moisture conditions for the coming growing season, particularly in areas of irrigated agriculture where the initiation of crop irrigation early in the growing season can affect streamflows later in the growing season.
- Reservoir levels: Several large reservoirs on the North Platte River regulate flows for purposes of irrigated agriculture, hydropower generation, and environmental purposes. Monitoring storage levels in these reservoirs throughout the year can inform anticipated releases, and ultimately, potential flow contributions to the Lower Platte River.

- **Static Aquifer Levels:** Fall and spring static aquifer levels provide insight into the cyclical aquifer drawdown and recovery as a result of irrigation during the peak season. Monitoring these levels can assist in anticipating potential conflicts and well interference that may occur due to groundwater irrigation in the coming peak season. In addition, the static levels can inform estimates of drought effects on anticipated baseflow gains.

### 4.3 Historic Occurrences of Drought

The Platte River July streamflow at Louisville was plotted as a percentage above or below the median July flow for the period 1953 to 2017 against the historic PDSI to understand the historic droughts. The PDSI value in these plots is a composite of the value for the four climate divisions encompassing the Lower Platte River Basin: East Central, Northeast, Central and North Central divisions; these plots are located in Appendix B.

The U.S. Drought Risk Atlas (a product of the NDMC) summarizes the occurrence of drought by climate division, hydro climate indices, and severity as a percentage of the period-of-record. The historic occurrence of drought for the four climate divisions that encompass the Lower Platte River Basin are shown in Table 9 through Table 12. It is noted that historical accounts (mid-1890’s drought, for example) as well as analytic approaches such as tree ring analysis and subsurface geology interpretation, indicate the occurrence of even more severe and long-term droughts than that captured in the 1900-2016 period of record included in the U.S. Drought Risk Atlas.

**Table 9: North Central Climate Division (Division 02): Percent of Time Spent in Drought – 1900 to 2016**

PDSI			
Index Value	Percent of Time Spent in Drought	Drought Severity	Recurrence Interval
$-2 < \text{PDSI} \leq -1$	34%	Mild	1 out of 3 years
$-3 < \text{PDSI} \leq -2$	21%	Moderate	1 out of 5 years
$-4 < \text{PDSI} \leq -3$	12%	Severe	1 out of 8 years
$\text{PDSI} \leq -4$	6%	Extreme	1 out of 17 years

Source: U.S. Drought Risk Atlas (frequency statistics obtained 2018)

Notes: PDSI = Palmer Drought Severity Index.

**Table 10: Northeast Climate Division (Division 03): Percent of Time Spent in Drought – 1900 to 2016**

PDSI			
Index Value	Percent of Time Spent in Drought	Severity	Recurrence Interval
$-2 < \text{PDSI} \leq -1$	26%	Mild	1 out of 4 years
$-3 < \text{PDSI} \leq -2$	16%	Moderate	1 out of 6 years

Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

PDSI			
Index Value	Percent of Time Spent in Drought	Severity	Recurrence Interval
$-4 < \text{PDSI} \leq -3$	10%	Severe	1 out of 10 years
$\text{PDSI} \leq -4$	7%	Extreme	1 out of 14 years

Source: U.S. Drought Risk Atlas (frequency statistics obtained 2018)

Notes: PDSI = Palmer Drought Severity Index.

**Table 11: Central Climate Division (Division 05): Percent of Time Spent in Drought – 1900 to 2016**

PDSI			
Index Value	Percent of Time Spent in Drought	Severity	Recurrence Interval
$-2 < \text{PDSI} \leq -1$	31%	Mild	1 out of 3 years
$-3 < \text{PDSI} \leq -2$	18%	Moderate	1 out of 6 years
$-4 < \text{PDSI} \leq -3$	11%	Severe	1 out of 9 years
$\text{PDSI} \leq -4$	8%	Extreme	1 out of 13 years

Source: U.S. Drought Risk Atlas (frequency statistics obtained 2018)

Notes: PDSI = Palmer Drought Severity Index.

**Table 12: East Central Climate Division (Division 06): Percent of Time Spent in Drought – 1900 to 2016**

PDSI			
Index Value	Percent of Time Spent in Drought	Severity	Recurrence Interval
$-2 < \text{PDSI} \leq -1$	28%	Mild	1 out of 4 years
$-3 < \text{PDSI} \leq -2$	17%	Moderate	1 out of 6 years
$-4 < \text{PDSI} \leq -3$	10%	Severe	1 out of 10 years
$\text{PDSI} \leq -4$	6%	Extreme	1 out of 17 years

Source: U.S. Drought Risk Atlas (frequency statistics obtained 2018)

Notes: PDSI = Palmer Drought Severity Index.

In general, the PDSI and SPI compare reasonably well; however, the SPI does appear to predict fewer occurrences of severe and extreme droughts than the PDSI. This is likely because the SPI and PDSI tell different stories. The PDSI considers the water balance and gives a more complete representation of conditions; however, the PDSI is a cumulative function, where the PDSI from previous months can affect the PDSI of a current month making it harder to predict flash droughts. The SPI considers only

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

precipitation anomaly compared to historic normal precipitation. Therefore, if precipitation returns to normal conditions, the SPI may indicate the drought is over whereas the PDSI may not.

For these reasons, both the SPI and PDSI should be considered together when evaluating drought conditions.

Analysis of historic PDSI values from 116 years of data reveal that mild, moderate, severe, and extreme droughts can be expected to occur in the Lower Platte River Basin once every three, six, nine, and fourteen years, respectively.

From 1900 to 2016, the most severe droughts occurred in the 1930's, 1950's, 1980's, early 2000's and 2012-2013. Table 13 through Table 16 list the number of months spent in specific drought periods by category.

**Table 13: North Central Climate Division (Division 02): Number of Months Spent in Specific Drought Periods**

PDSI Index Value	Severity	Number of Months in Drought			
		1933-1941	1953-1958	2002-2004	2012-2014
-2 < PDSI ≤ -1	Mild	101	40	31	12
-3 < PDSI ≤ -2	Moderate	85	28	28	10
-4 < PDSI ≤ -3	Severe	56	24	23	9
PDSI ≤ -4	Extreme	37	19	3	9

Source: U.S. Drought Risk Atlas (frequency statistics obtained 2018)

Notes: PDSI = Palmer Drought Severity Index.

**Table 14: Northeast Climate Division (Division 03): Number of Months Spent in Specific Drought Periods**

PDSI Index Value	Severity	Number of Months in Drought			
		1933-1941	1953-1958	2002-2004	2012-2014
-2 < PDSI ≤ -1	Mild	100	28	11	14
-3 < PDSI ≤ -2	Moderate	93	25	9	12
-4 < PDSI ≤ -3	Severe	62	23	2	10
PDSI ≤ -4	Extreme	44	21	0	9

Source: U.S. Drought Risk Atlas (frequency statistics obtained 2018)

Notes: PDSI = Palmer Drought Severity Index.

**Table 15: Central Climate Division (Division 05): Number of Months Spent in Specific Drought Periods**

PDSI Index Value	Severity	Number of Months in Drought			
		1933-1941	1953-1958	2002-2004	2012-2014
-2 < PDSI ≤ -1	Mild	101	58	29	24
-3 < PDSI ≤ -2	Moderate	83	50	26	19
-4 < PDSI ≤ -3	Severe	75	38	12	14
PDSI ≤ -4	Extreme	68	26	3	8

Source: U.S. Drought Risk Atlas (frequency statistics obtained 2018)  
 Notes: PDSI = Palmer Drought Severity Index.

**Table 16: East Central Climate Division (Division 06): Number of Months Spent in Specific Drought Periods**

PDSI Index Value	Severity	Number of Months in Drought			
		1933-1941	1953-1958	2002-2004	2012-2014
-2 < PDSI ≤ -1	Mild	100	47	34	15
-3 < PDSI ≤ -2	Moderate	92	40	22	10
-4 < PDSI ≤ -3	Severe	77	26	0	9
PDSI ≤ -4	Extreme	55	23	0	8

Source: U.S. Drought Risk Atlas (frequency statistics obtained 2018)  
 Notes: PDSI = Palmer Drought Severity Index.

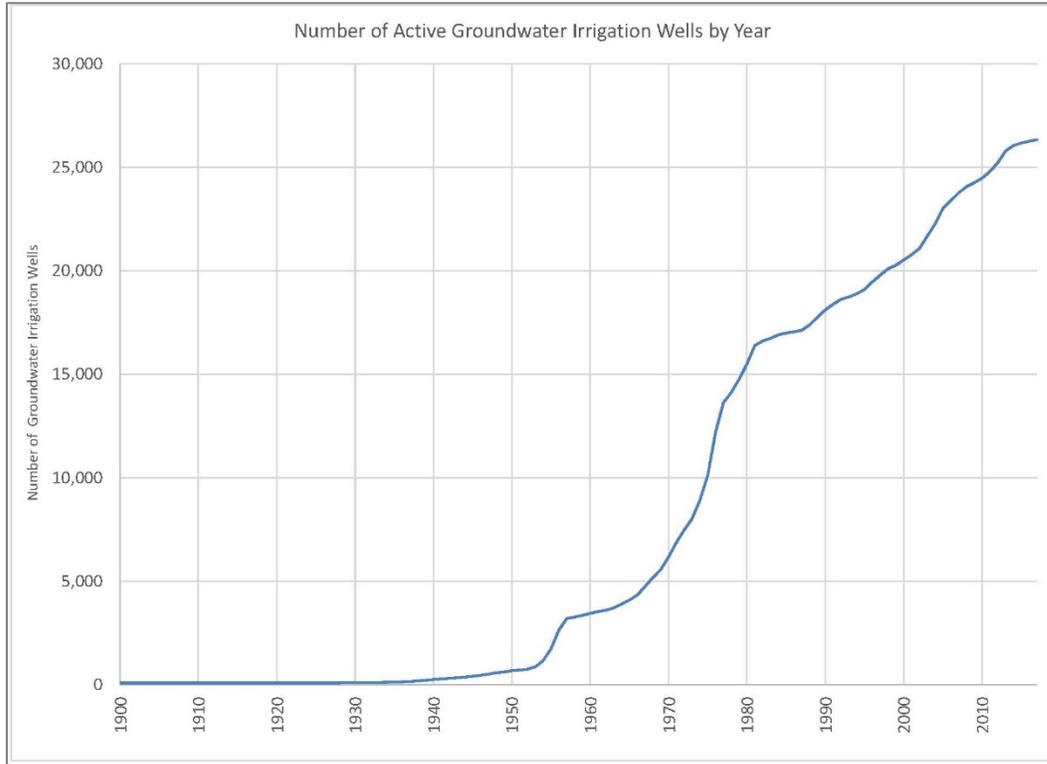
The longest drought post-1900 was the Dust Bowl (1933-1941) that resulted from severe drought and poor farming practices without crop rotation, cover crops, or other erosion control. Deep plowing displaced natural grasses leading to wind erosion and dust storms. Grasshopper infestation and the Great Depression occurred in the same period making it difficult to quantify economic impacts directly attributed to drought. While the drought effects were remembered as agricultural, it also negatively impacted wildlife, plant life, domestic supply, and undoubtedly other sectors. Dust pneumonia claimed the lives of many. The number of farms decreased by 50 percent<sup>10</sup> during the Dust Bowl and millions of people migrated to the west. In response to the drought, Congress passed the Soil Conservation Act of 1935 to combat soil erosion and preserving natural resources, as well as established the Natural Resources Conservation Service (originally named the Soil Conservation Service).

Soil conservation practices such as wind breaks, crop rotation, strip farming, contour plowing, terracing, and other conservation measures were employed. Evaluating historic PDSI values, the drought of the

<sup>10</sup> [https://journalstar.com/news/state-and-regional/nebraska/of-the-deadliest-disasters-in-nebraska-history/collection\\_6ae50d55-7d8a-5B-6f-B-1c3-b0B-54cfe84f0.html#12](https://journalstar.com/news/state-and-regional/nebraska/of-the-deadliest-disasters-in-nebraska-history/collection_6ae50d55-7d8a-5B-6f-B-1c3-b0B-54cfe84f0.html#12)

1950's was “worse” than the Dust Bowl. However, due to improved farming practices and increased reliance on groundwater, the impacts were less severe. Figure 48 shows that the number of irrigation wells dramatically increases post-1950.

**Figure 48: Number of Active Groundwater Irrigation Wells by Year**



Source: Groundwater well Map layer obtained from Nebraska Department of Natural Resources (downloaded 2018)

While groundwater irrigation is an invaluable resource during drought, over-pumping can deplete the aquifer and deplete streamflow. The drought of 2012-2013 is considered the worst single year drought in recent history. As of 2016, the groundwater-level changes in the Lower Platte River Basin have not recovered to 2011 levels (CSD 2017).

The drought of 2012 was considered a “flash drought” in that its onset was unusually quick. Crop damages led to corn export prices 128 percent above the 20-year historic average (AghaKouchak et al. 2013). Crop production decreased with hay production down 28 percent, corn production down 16 percent, and soybean production down 21 percent. Ranchers culled their herds by 25-60 percent as forage production was down 28-65 percent of normal (Central Drought Assessment 2012).

#### 4.4 Drought Indicators for the Lower Platte River Basin

Many indicators and indices exist to help identify drought conditions in the Lower Platte River Basin. These include hydroclimate indices, streamflow levels, groundwater aquifer levels, Rocky Mountain snowpack, and Lake McConaughy reservoir storage levels. Additionally, as previously stated, the focus of this first increment of the Drought Plan is on augmenting surface water supplies in the Lower Platte River near Ashland. It is believed that in addressing the water supply shortages in the Lower Platte River, ancillary benefits to the remaining sectors would exist including: irrigation, power, environmental, and recreational. Table 17 identifies four drought levels recommended for the Drought Plan (mild drought,

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

moderate drought, severe drought, and extreme drought) as well as the associated index ranges that define these levels.

Each NRD has some form of drought monitoring and triggers for response actions. Each NRD maintains its own individual groundwater management plans and the intent of this Drought Plan is not to replace each members' groundwater monitoring and management plans; rather, to provide consistent, basin-scale data and information that can be used by NRDs, while maintaining locally-based management frameworks.. The individual NRD plans are discussed in detail in Appendix A. For this reason, the drought triggers identified for this Drought Plan are triggers associated with surface water supply.

Additionally, as previously stated, the focus of this first increment of the Drought Plan will focus on augmenting surface water supplies in the Lower Platte River near Ashland. It is believed that in addressing the water supply shortages in the Lower Platte River, ancillary benefits to the remaining sectors would exist including irrigation, power, environmental, and recreational.

**Table 17: Drought Triggers**

Category	Level	Palmer Drought Severity Index (PDSI)	Platte River Stream flow at Ashland
<b>Mild Drought</b>	0	-1.0 to -1.99	
<b>Moderate Drought</b>	1	-2.0 to -2.99	3,000-1,500 cfs
<b>Severe Drought</b>	2	-3.0 to -3.99	1,500-500 cfs
<b>Extreme Drought</b>	3	-4.0 and below	Less than 500 cfs

*Notes: PDSI = Palmer Drought Severity Index*

The following lists the levels of drought, remaining consistent with the US Drought Monitor definitions of drought.

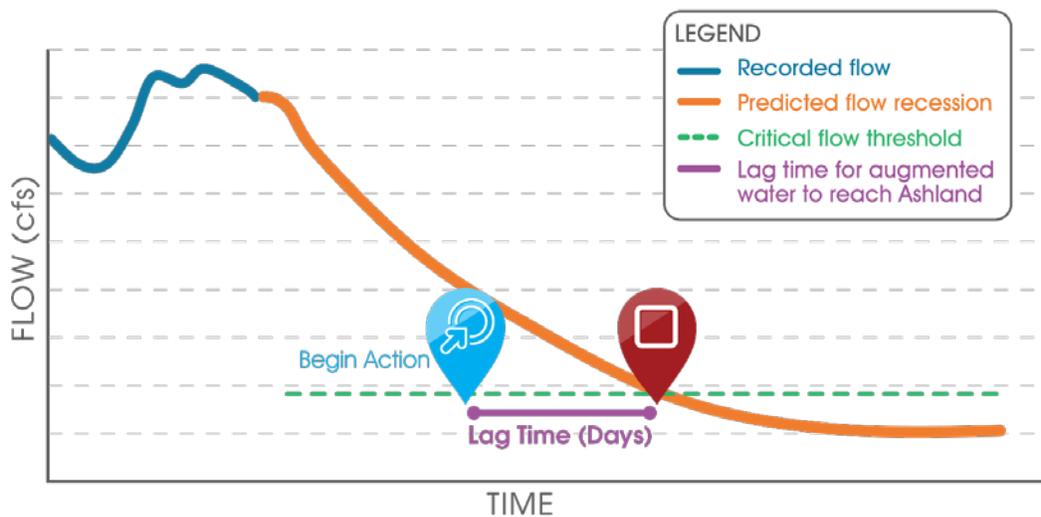
- A Level 0, “Abnormally Dry”<sup>11</sup> indicates an area may be experiencing “short-term dryness slowing planting, growth of crops or pastures” indicating the onset of drought or may be coming out of drought and experiencing lingering effects of drought.
- A Level 1, “Moderate Drought” involves “some damage to crops, pastures; streams, reservoirs, or wells low, some water shortages developing or imminent; and voluntary water-use restrictions requested.”
- A Level 2, “Severe Drought” means that “crop or pasture losses likely; water shortages common; and water restrictions imposed.”
- A Level 3, “Extreme Drought” involves “major crop/pasture losses” and “widespread water shortages or restrictions.”

<sup>11</sup> An “Abnormally Dry” classification by the National Drought Monitor corresponds to a PDSI “mild drought” classification. The “Moderate Drought”, “Severe Drought” and “Extreme Drought” classifications are the same between the National Drought Monitor and PDSI.

#### 4.4.1 Platte River at Ashland Recession Tool

Understanding the behavior of the Platte River at Ashland as flows recede is important to the ability of the Consortium to forecast and properly time the implementation of response actions. Using the Platte River at Ashland Recession Tool allows the user to enter the current observed flow in the Platte River at Ashland and predict the flow decay behavior for the next 30 days, assuming no further inputs to the system (precipitation runoff or upstream storage releases). The resulting recession curve can be used to estimate the days until a critical threshold is reached. The development of the Platte River at Ashland Recession Tool is discussed in detail in Appendix E. Figure 49 is a schematic of the functional utility of the Platte River at Ashland Recession Tool in drought forecasting and response.

**Figure 49: Platte River at Ashland Recession Tool**



#### 4.4.2 U.S. Drought Monitor

The U.S. Drought Monitor is a component of the National Integrated Drought Information System and produced jointly by NOAA, the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA), and NDMC. The U.S. Drought Monitor is a weekly product that provides a general summary of current drought conditions: <http://www.cpc.ncep.noaa.gov/products/Drought/>.

Multiple drought indicators, including various indices, outlooks, field reports, and news accounts are reviewed and synthesized. In addition, numerous experts from agencies and offices across the country are consulted. The result is the consensus assessment presented on the U.S. Drought Monitor map. The U.S. Drought Monitor website can be used as a tool to supplement the drought monitoring by the Consortium. The U.S. Drought Monitor information is usually summarized in the North Central and U.S. Monthly Climate and Drought Summary Outlooks.

#### 4.4.3 North Central U.S. Monthly Climate and Drought Summary Outlook

NOAA and its climate partners host monthly webinars on the website: <https://www.drought.gov/drought/calendar/events/>

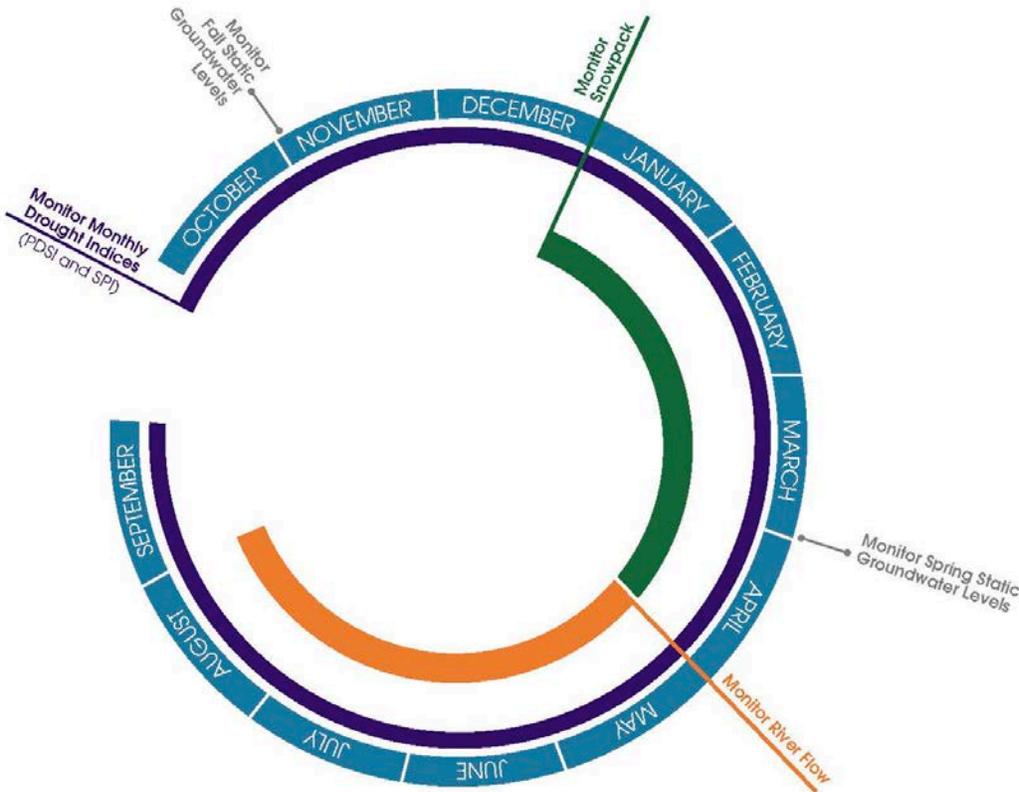
This monthly briefing covers the region from the Rockies to the Great Lakes. Subject matter includes a summary of past and current conditions in terms of many climate variables such as snowpack,

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

temperatures, and precipitation. In addition, potential and ongoing effects from climate phenomena will be considered across sectors (agriculture, water resources, etc.). Finally, outlook information from 2 weeks to the next few months and seasons are discussed.

As part of its drought monitoring, the Consortium should participate in these monthly webinars to gain expert interpretation of the state of drought and drought predictions.

**Figure 50: Drought Monitoring Continuum**



The recommended timeline for drought monitoring is displayed in Figure 50. Hydroclimate indices SPI and PDSI should be monitored year round. Groundwater levels are monitored by NRDs in the spring and fall of each year in accordance with their individual groundwater management plans. Snowpack volumes should be monitored from the beginning of the calendar year through the runoff season. Streamflows should be monitored starting in late spring through the summer when water use for irrigation, cooling, and lawn watering is at its peak.

## 5.0 Drought Management

Drought management includes actions taken in preparation for, and/or in response to drought conditions to reduce potential risks and effects associated with drought. Currently, response actions are taken by members of the Consortium independently to address drought conditions. Combined, these independent activities form a No-Action alternative for the Drought Plan. Included in the No-Action alternative are the following:

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

- LWS and MUD Water Use Restrictions: In response to drought conditions, each utility has the ability to implement water restrictions on its users to preserve available water supplies to maintain service.
- Administrative call: An administrative call on junior surface water appropriators may be made by NeDNR at the request of a senior surface water appropriator who is not receiving their full appropriation.
- NRD Groundwater Regulation: The NRDs have statutory authority to manage groundwater usage through regulation, allocations, etc. In response to declining aquifer levels or increased well interference the NRDs may place limits on aquifer usage.

Considerations and limitations of the No-Action alternative include:

- LWS has an appropriation priority date of January 21, 1964. There are approximately 128,000 irrigated acres with appropriations junior to LWS's appropriation in the Platte, Loup, and Elkhorn River basins subject to an administrative call on behalf of LWS. Restricting irrigation water supply to these lands could have substantial regional economic impacts for a single drought event, likely on par or exceeding the mitigation alternatives' costs described in this section.
- An administrative call placed during a drought may not produce adequate streamflow as many of the appropriators may be experiencing shortages themselves due to the drought conditions.
- Water use restrictions have several potential impacts: 1) Lost production by customers who rely on water delivery for commercial and industrial use; 2) Reduced revenues for the utilities from water deliveries; 3) Restricted growth and lost growth opportunities due to potential for water shortages
- The No-Action alternative is reactive in that the actions occur after the effects of the drought are being realized, and have limited ability to mitigate these effects.

To address the shortcomings of the No-Action alternative, the Consortium investigated mitigation alternatives that could provide proactive approaches to reduce impacts of drought.

### 5.1 Mitigation Alternatives

Drought mitigation measures are actions, programs, and strategies implemented during non-drought periods to address potential risks and effects and reduce the need for response actions; implementation of drought mitigation measures improves long-term resilience.

While the Drought Plan assesses the water supplies, demands, and vulnerabilities in the Lower Platte River Basin as a whole, the focus of this increment of the Drought Plan is on augmenting surface water supplies in the Lower Platte River near Ashland. It is believed that in addressing the water supply shortages in the Lower Platte River, ancillary benefits to the remaining sectors would exist including irrigation, power, environmental, and recreational.

Mitigation actions for each potential type of mitigation project were initially screened and prioritized based on anticipated costs (both capital and O&M) and general feasibility/logistics of the mitigation action. These screened alternatives by project type were then evaluated for their general effectiveness in mitigating drought conditions based on predicted performance during occurrence of 2012 drought conditions and concept level cost estimates developed. Eight mitigation measures (and combinations thereof) were evaluated and include the following:

- Installing an alluvial well-field adjacent to the Missouri River and pumping water to a tributary of the Elkhorn River for availability on demand;
- Purchasing storage in the existing Sherman Reservoir and releasing water on demand;
- A new surface water storage reservoir on Skull Creek near Linwood for releasing water on demand;

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

- Capture of Middle Loup River water in the non-irrigation season and diversion into the Middle Loup Canal system for intentional recharge and baseflow augmentation;
- Installing a well-field to tap into groundwater aquifers with limited connection to streamflow that can be pumped to the river to augment flows;
- Pumping from alluvial sandpits directly to the river to augment flows;
- A dry-year-lease agreement with farmers irrigating lands adjacent to the main channel of the Platte River from the alluvial aquifer; and
- Interconnection of MUD and LWS finished water supplies, providing LWS access to the Missouri River as a source of potable water.

### 5.1.1 Additional Supply – Missouri River

Streamflow in the Missouri River is regulated by a system of upstream reservoirs to serve a variety of federally authorized purposes. One of the federally authorized purposes is to provide flows adequate for maintaining navigation March through November in the reach from Sioux City to its confluence with the Mississippi River. The full service navigation target at the Omaha gage is 31,000 cfs, while the minimum service navigation target is 25,000 cfs. The system of reservoirs and the authorized purposes they service provide a reliable supply to Missouri River streamflows during periods of drought. As an example, the *2014 Lincoln Water Master Plan* showed the Missouri River would be able to support a 75 million gallons per day demand even during significant drought conditions (City of Lincoln 2014).

Installation of a well-field in the alluvial aquifer adjacent to the Missouri River was investigated as a drought mitigation action. The hydrologic connection of the alluvial aquifer to the Missouri River would provide a reliable source of recharge and maintain its capacity, even during the severest drought periods. The analysis considered delivering 50-100 cfs from the well-field to the Platte River basin on demand. One alternative was a well-field adjacent to the Missouri River near Blair, with a force main extending westward approximately 10 miles over the ridge and into the Bell Creek watershed along existing Highway 91. The second alternative considered a well-field adjacent to the Missouri River near Decatur, with a force main extending westward approximately eleven miles over the ridge and into the upper reaches of the Bell Creek watershed along existing Highway 51. Once discharged flows would be conveyed by tributaries to Bell Creek and the Elkhorn River before eventually reaching the Platte River. For the alternative near Decatur, an estimated 22 percent conveyance loss occurs between the point of discharge and the Ashland gage on the Platte River under low-flow conditions.

Potential constraints and considerations include location of well-field, obtaining right-of-way for well-field and transmission main, potential utility conflicts/constraints along transmission main alignment, obtaining necessary environmental clearances, and protection of discharged water from use via conveyance appropriation from NeDNR. Project costs would primarily include the well-field, transmission, and discharge infrastructure costs, ROW for project facilities, and annual operating expenses.

### 5.1.2 Surface Water Storage Alternatives

Two new surface water storage reservoirs and one existing surface water storage reservoir were considered as mitigations measures to increase water supply to the Lower Platte River Basin during drought conditions.

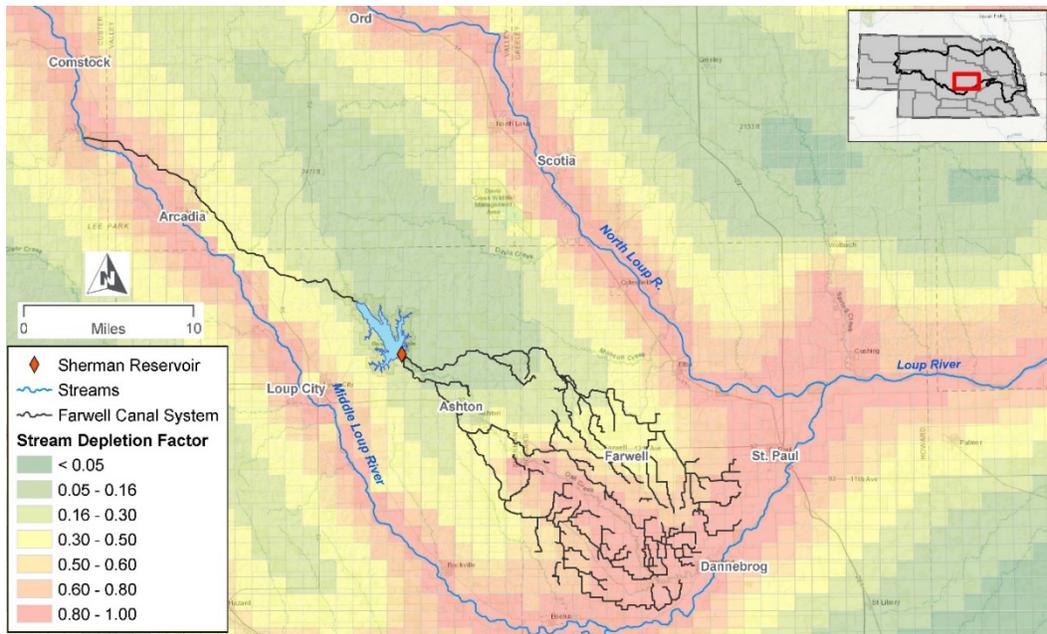
#### 5.1.2.1 Sherman Storage Reallocation

The Sherman Storage Reallocation would reallocate a portion of stored water in Sherman Reservoir to be managed for re-timing and augmenting streamflows. Sherman Reservoir is owned by the Farwell

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

Irrigation District and stores flows diverted from the Middle Loup River for storage and delivery to its producers during the irrigation season. Reallocating storage in Sherman Reservoir could provide benefits to the Lower Platte River using two operational patterns: 1) the stored water could be actively managed to augment flows during droughts through releases from reservoir storage and conveyance through the canal and natural systems to the Platte River; and 2) the stored water could be released during the non-irrigation season and intentionally recharged using the existing Farwell Irrigation District canal system infrastructure, resulting in increased baseflow accretions passively occurring throughout the year. While this effort focused on Sherman Reservoir, a similar approach could be used on the Davis Creek Reservoir (Figure 51).

**Figure 51: Sherman Reservoir and Farwell Canal System**



Reallocating or repurposing the upper 3 to 4 feet of Sherman Reservoir's normal storage pool would provide approximately 8,000 to 10,000 acre-feet of water. Active releases would provide 100 percent benefit to streamflow at the point of discharge, with benefits decreasing downstream as conveyance losses are incurred. Estimated conveyance losses from point of release to the Ashland gage on the Platte River is approximately 65 percent during drought conditions.

Potential constraints and considerations include obtaining a storage agreement with owners of Sherman Dam for storage and release of flows for the benefit of the Lower Platte River, adverse effects on current Farwell Irrigation District producers, potential high groundwater tables resulting from intentional recharge activities, and protection of releases from use via conveyance appropriation from NeDNR. Project costs would primarily include the purchase or lease of storage water agreement with the owner and compensatory elements for use of their irrigation infrastructure in the delivery of flows.

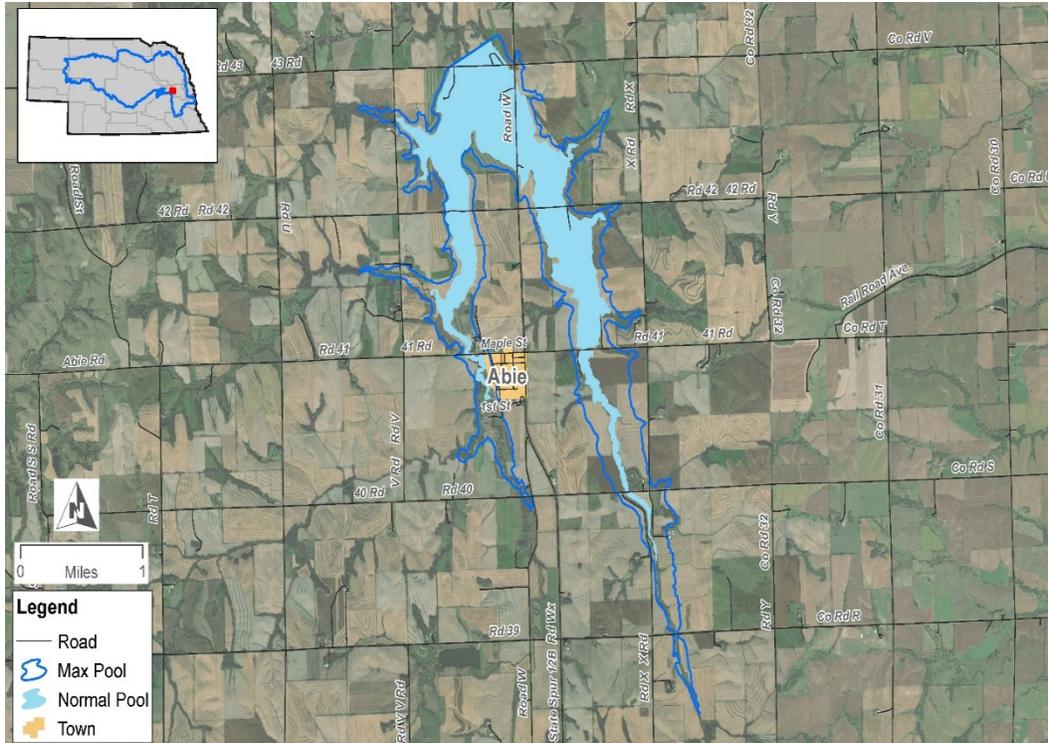
### 5.1.2.2 *Skull Creek Reservoir*

The first new reservoir considered was previously evaluated by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers in 1965 and again by Lower Platte North NRD in 1985. These analyses investigated multiple locations within the watershed. For purposes of this analysis, the new reservoir considered would be located on Skull Creek (a tributary to the Platte River) near Linwood, Nebraska, located in the Lower Platte North

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

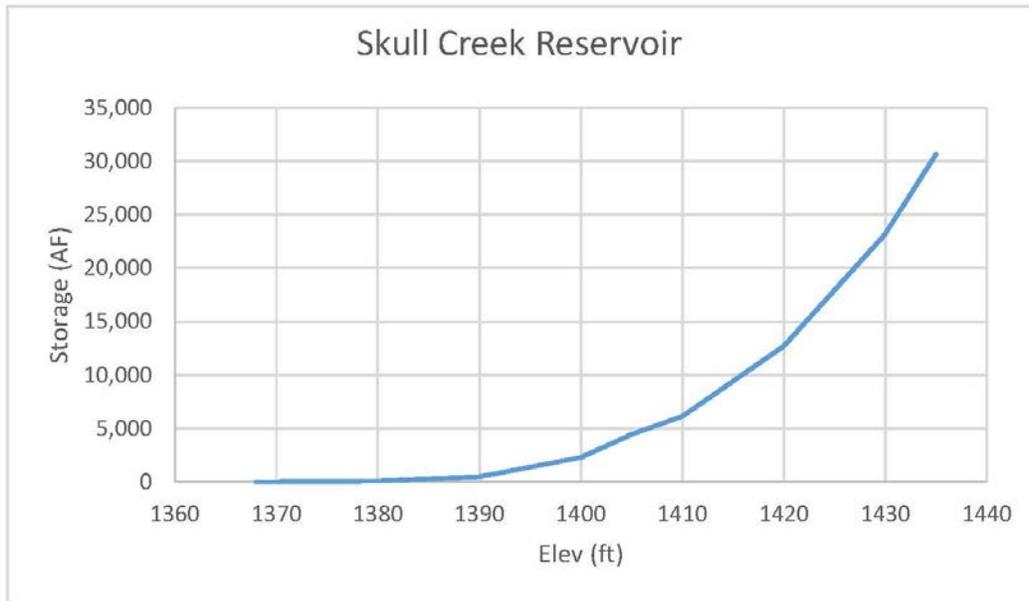
NRD (Figure 52). Other potential sites upstream of this location were previously evaluated; however, upstream locations would reduce the volume for capture and lessen project benefits.

**Figure 52: Skull Creek Reservoir Proposed Location**



The purpose of the Skull Creek Dam Project would be to store and re-time flows, which are primarily available during the nonpeak season, to be available on demand for release to the Platte River just upstream of North Bend. The area draining to this location is approximately 42,000 acres. The Skull Creek Reservoir investigated would have a top of dam at elevation 1435. The maximum normal pool elevation is 1420 corresponding to a surface area of 880 acres and a volume of approximately 12,700 acre-feet (Figure 53).

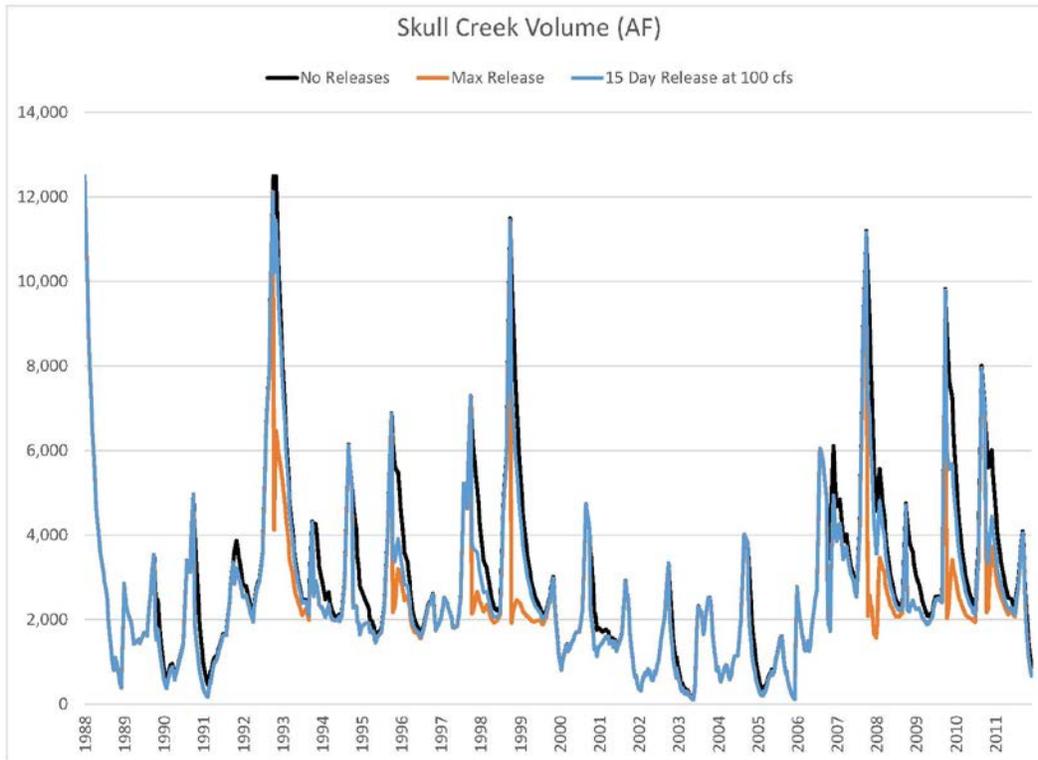
**Figure 53: Skull Creek Reservoir Stage-Storage**



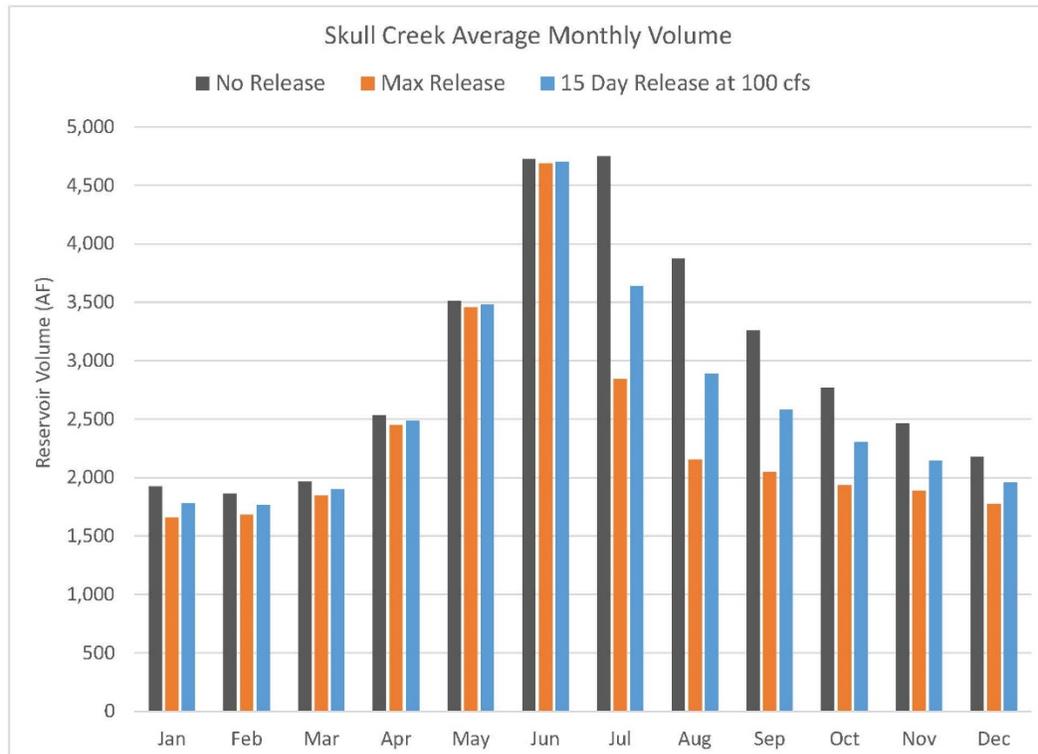
The analysis used a water budget approach and looked at capturing watershed runoff and storing during days when excess flows are available on the Platte River (that is, the instream flow appropriation on the Platte River at both North Bend and Louisville are satisfied). Evaporative and seepage losses were estimated on a daily basis based on reservoir stage and surface area. It then considered a July release for each year to augment Platte River flows. The estimated daily reservoir storage from the routing analysis, both with and without this July release, is shown in Figure 54 and the resultant average monthly volume is shown in Figure 55.

Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

**Figure 54: Skull Creek Reservoir Routing**



**Figure 55: Skull Creek Average Monthly Volume**

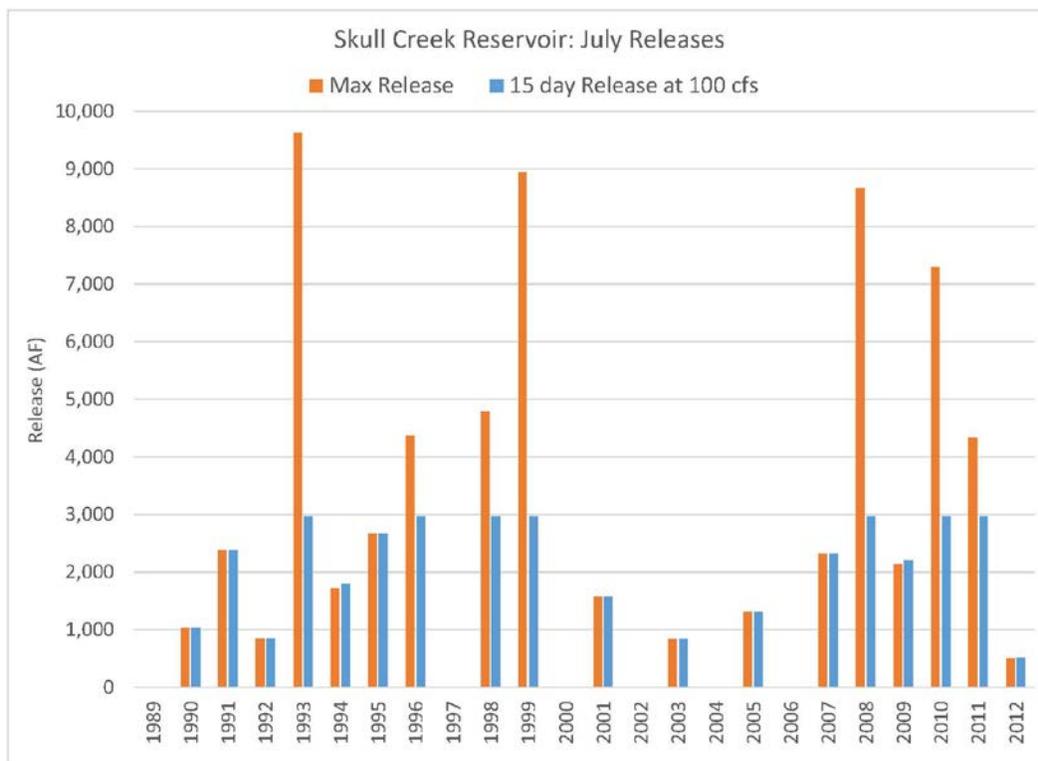


## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

The estimated annual release that would have occurred during the 1988 to 2011 period is shown in Figure 56. A maximum release scenario evacuates all storage above the dead pool (assumed as 10 percent of normal pool) while a 15-day release at 100 cfs was used in this analysis for comparison with other alternatives.

It should be noted that the seepage loss estimates used in the water budget analysis were based on typical permeability values of prevailing soil types present at the site and likely overestimate losses that could be expected once the reservoir is constructed and natural seasoning of the pool area occurs. In addition the runoff values used for inflow were derived from monthly volumes and are not event-based, likely underestimating inflow volumes. The normal pool surface area is approximately two percent of the total drainage area. Reservoirs in eastern Nebraska with pool areas of two percent to four percent of their drainage area are typically sustainable. For these reasons, the routing results produce conservative estimates of expected yield.

**Figure 56: Skull Creek Estimated July Releases**



Potential constraints and considerations for a new reservoir include third-party effects due to increased groundwater elevations in the reservoir vicinity, acquisition of land for the reservoir, relocated homes, impacts to roadways adversely affecting connectivity and emergency services, environmental permitting constraints, and managing the reservoir to fulfill multiple project purposes (if necessary).

Project costs would include engineering costs, site construction, land acquisition, mitigation of impacts, and annual operations and maintenance.

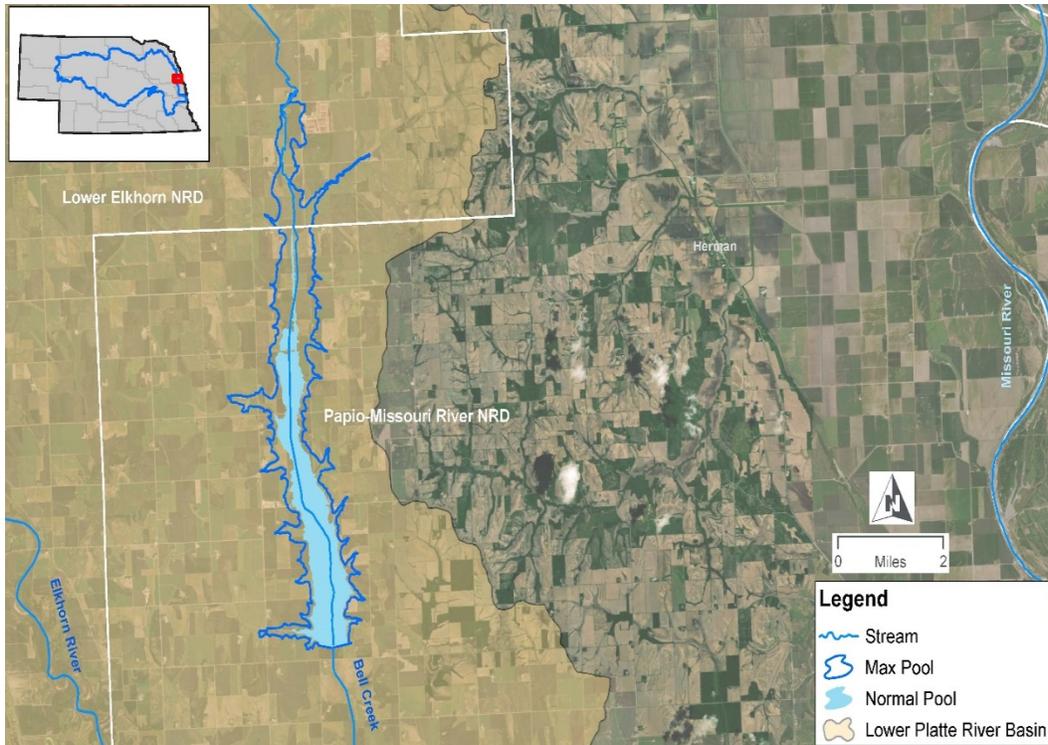
### 5.1.2.3 Bell Creek Reservoir

The second potential new reservoir was identified by the 2016 Lower Elkhorn NRD Reservoir Evaluation Project. The new dam would be located on Bell Creek (a tributary to the Elkhorn River) east of Oakland, Nebraska, located in the Pappio-Missouri River NRD and extending into the Lower Elkhorn NRD. The

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

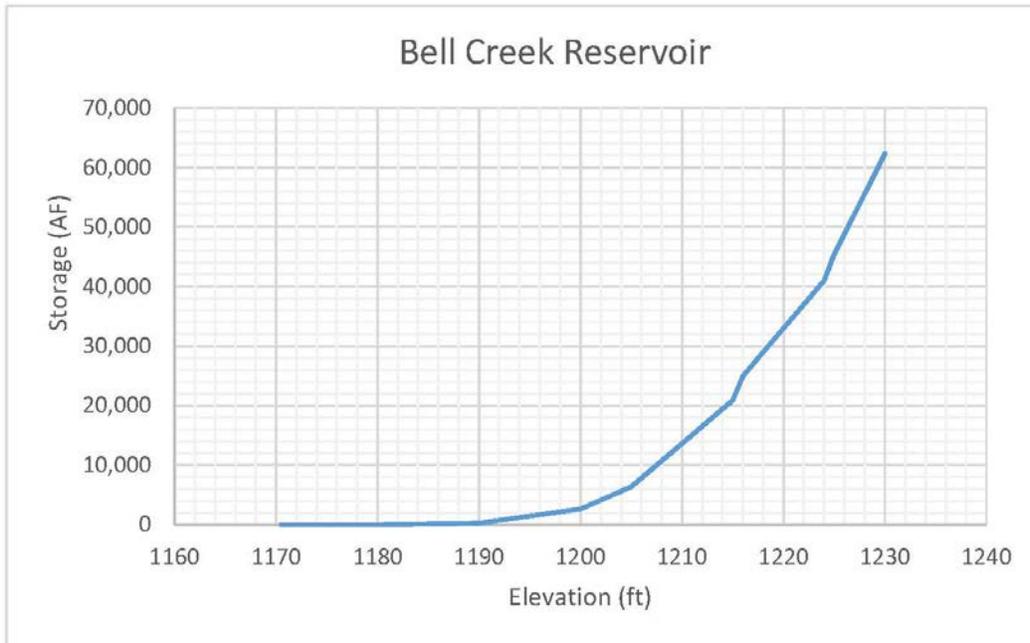
location of the potential reservoir for purposes of the Drought Plan is located further downstream than that of the Lower Elkhorn evaluation in order to maximize project benefits (Figure 57).

**Figure 57: Bell Creek Reservoir Proposed Location**



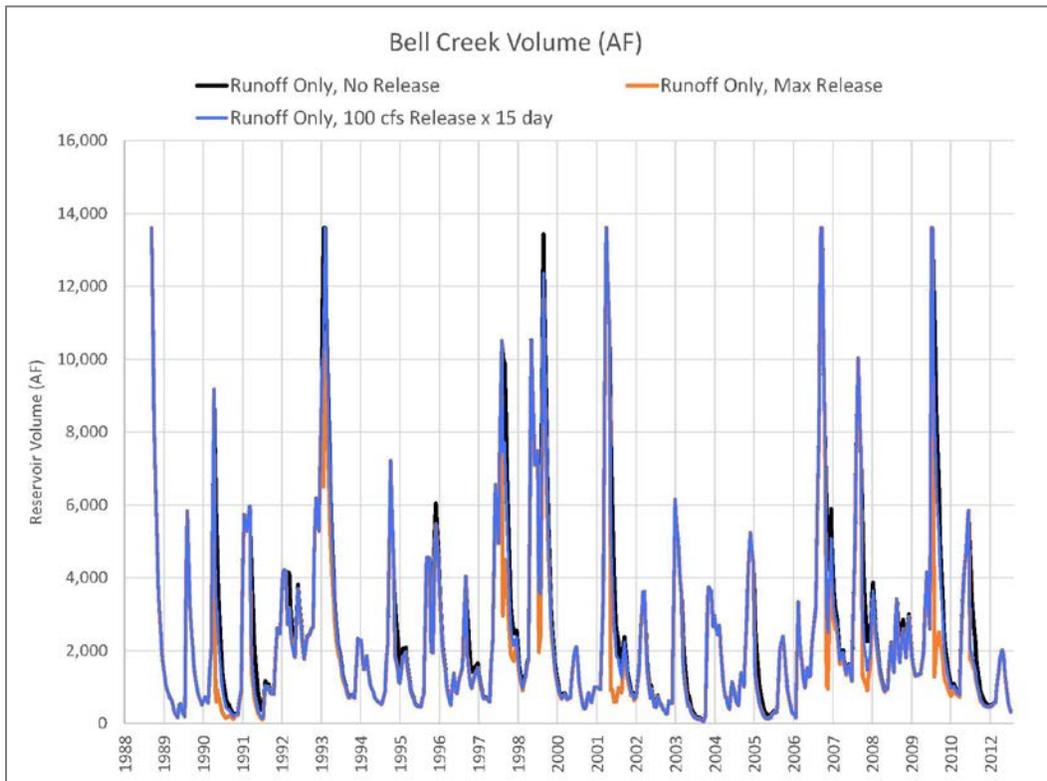
The purpose of the Bell Creek Dam Project would be to store and re-time flows, which are primarily available during the nonpeak season, to be available on demand for release, joining the Elkhorn River just upstream of Waterloo. The area draining to this location is 85,000 acres. The Bell Creek reservoir investigated would have a top of dam at elevation 1230 corresponding to a normal pool at elevation 1210 with a surface area of 1,720 acres and a volume of approximately 13,600 acre-feet (Figure 58).

**Figure 58: Bell Creek Reservoir Stage-Storage**

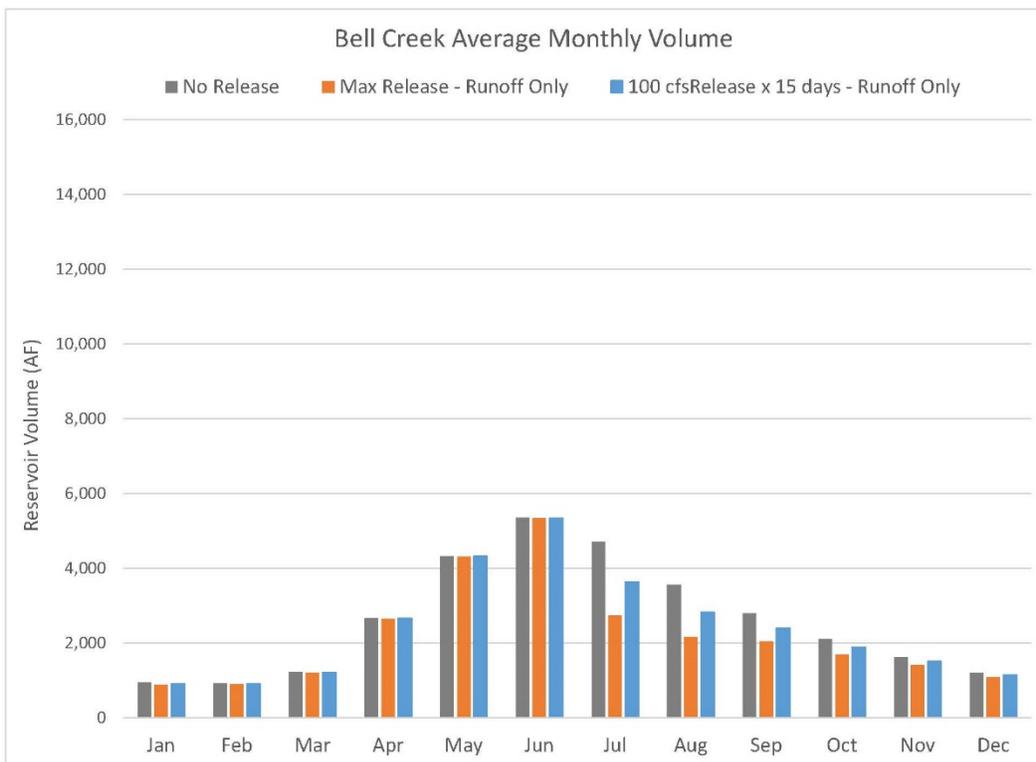


The analysis used a water budget approach and looked at capturing watershed runoff during days when excess flows are available on the Platte River (that is, the instream flow appropriation on the Platte River at Louisville is satisfied). Evaporative and seepage losses were estimated on a daily basis based on reservoir stage and surface area. It then considered a July release for each year to augment Platte River flows. The estimated daily reservoir storage from the routing analysis, both with and without this July release, is shown in Figure 59 and the resultant average monthly volume is shown in Figure 60.

**Figure 59: Bell Creek Reservoir Routing (Runoff as only inflow)**



**Figure 60: Bell Creek Reservoir Average Monthly Storage Volume based on Runoff**

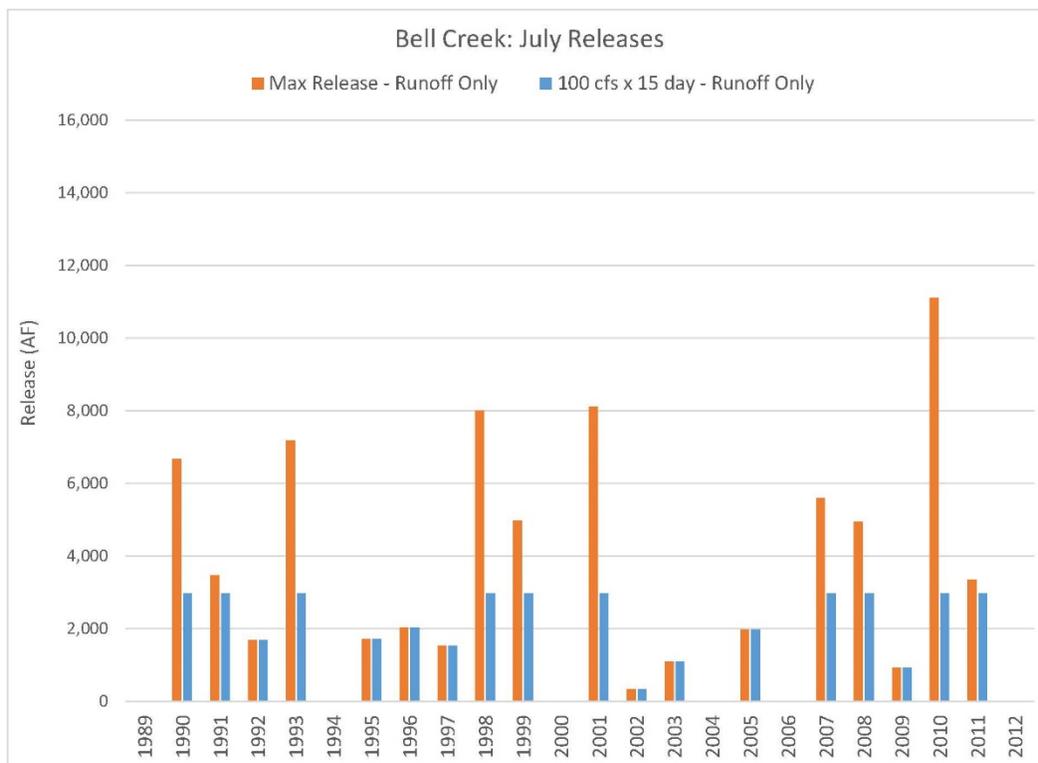


## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

The estimated annual release that would have occurred during the 1988 to 2011 period is shown in Figure 61. A maximum release scenario evacuates all storage above the dead pool (assumes as 10 percent of normal pool) while a 15 day release at 100 cfs was used in this analysis for comparison with other alternatives.

It should be noted that the seepage loss estimates used in the water budget analysis were based on typical permeability values of prevailing soil types present at the site and likely overestimate losses that could be expected once the reservoir is constructed and natural seasoning of the pool area occurs. In addition the runoff values used for inflow were derived from monthly volumes and are not event-based, likely underestimating inflow volumes. The normal pool surface area is approximately 2 percent of total drainage area. Reservoirs in eastern Nebraska with pool areas of 2 percent to 4 percent of their drainage area are typically sustainable. For these reasons, the routing results produce conservative estimates of expected yield.

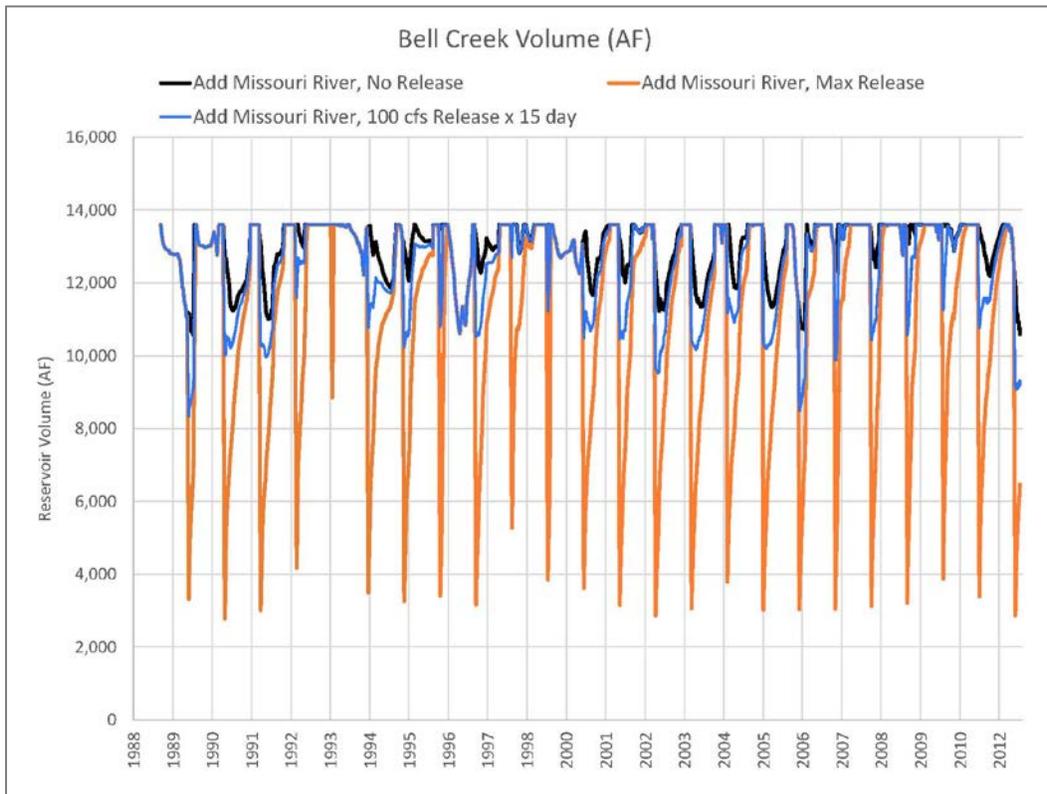
**Figure 61: Bell Creek Estimated July Releases (Runoff as only inflow)**



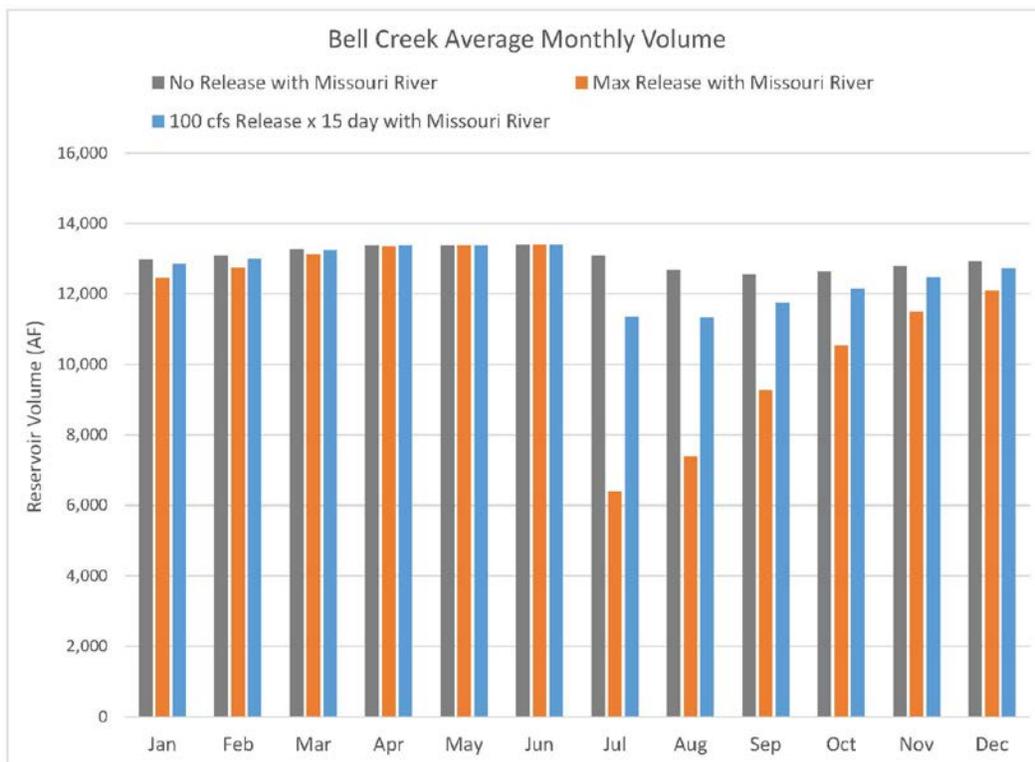
As shown in Figure 59, Figure 60, and Figure 61, capturing runoff and baseflow alone provides a limited volume for release. Therefore, an analysis for a reservoir on Bell Creek was considered in conjunction with the alternative of importing water from the Missouri River. It then considered a July release for each year to augment Platte River flows.

The estimated daily reservoir storage volume for this combined alternative, both with and without a July release, is shown in Figure 63 and the resultant average monthly volume is shown in Figure 63.

**Figure 62: Bell Creek Reservoir Routing (importing Missouri River water)**



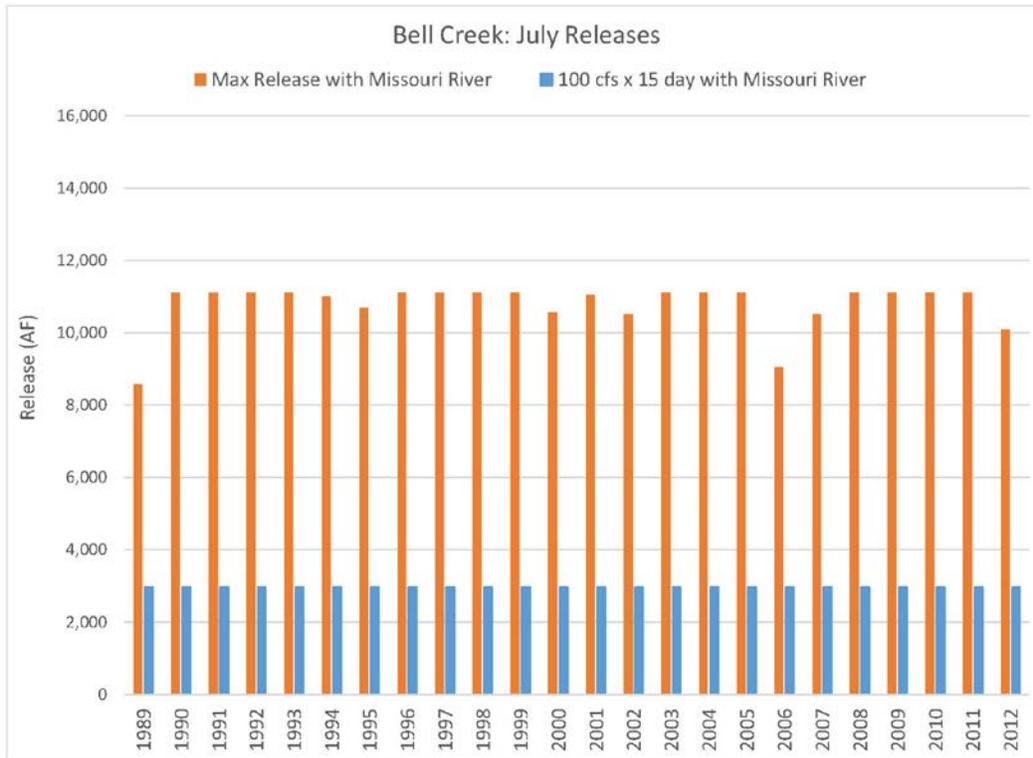
**Figure 63: Bell Creek Average Monthly Volume importing Missouri River water**



## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

The estimated annual release that would have occurred during the 1989 to 2011 period is shown in Figure 64. A maximum release scenario evacuates all storage above the dead pool (assumes as ten percent of normal pool) while a 15-day release at 100 cfs was used in this analysis for comparison with other alternatives

**Figure 64: Bell Creek Estimated July Releases (importing Missouri River water)**



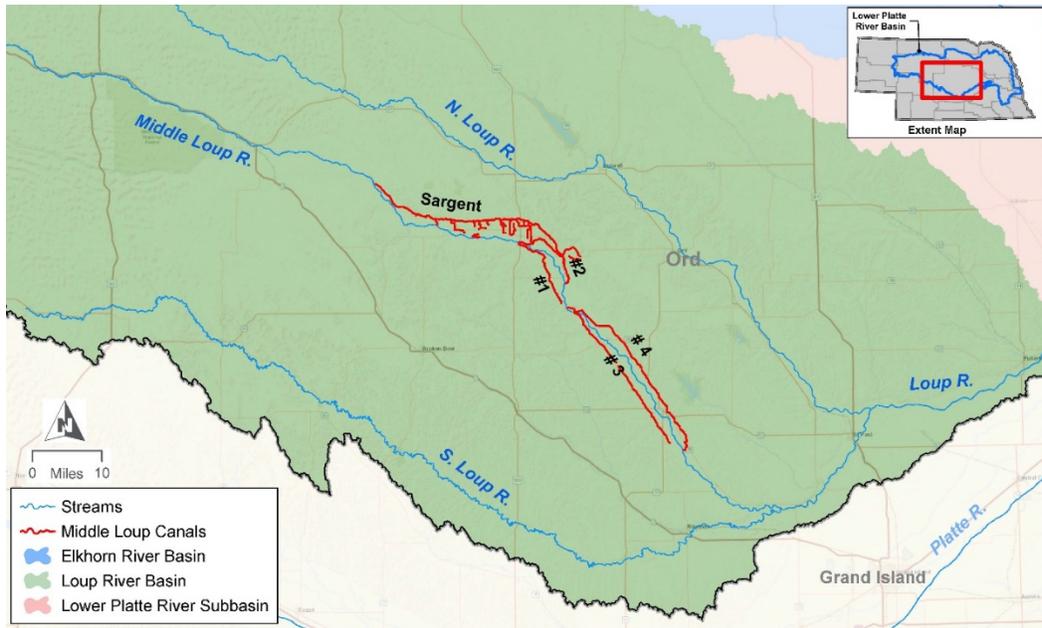
Potential constraints and considerations for a new reservoir include third-party effects due to increased groundwater elevations in the reservoir vicinity, acquisition of land for the reservoir, relocated homes, impacts to roadways adversely affecting connectivity and emergency services, environmental permitting constraints, and managing the reservoir to fulfill multiple project purposes (if necessary).

Project costs would include engineering costs, site construction, land acquisition, mitigating impacts, and annual operations and maintenance.

### 5.1.3 Canal Recharge through Canal Seepage

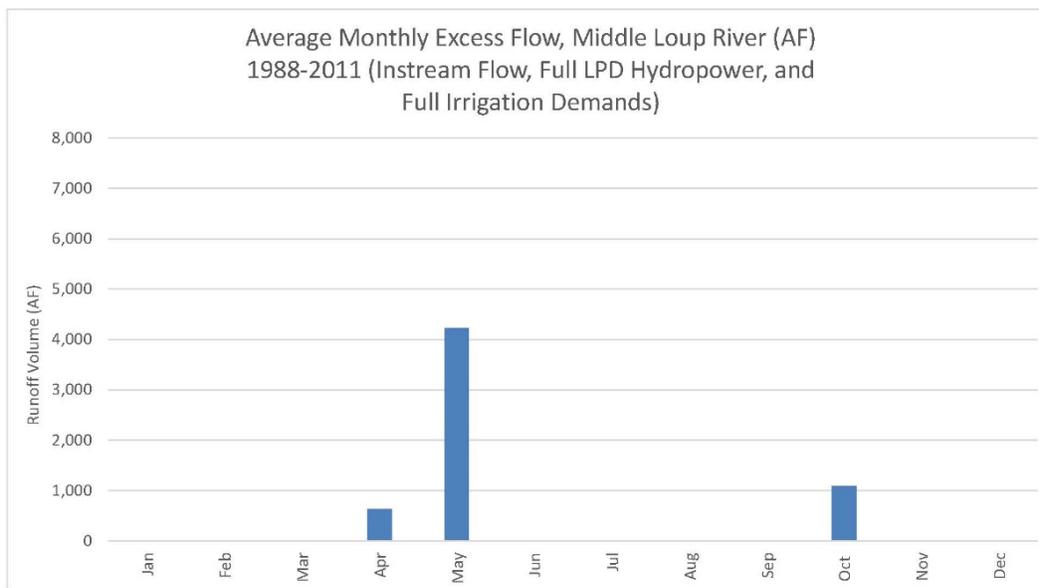
A potential mitigation measure considered the use of existing surface water infrastructure on the canal system in the Middle Loup River basin for intentional recharge of excess flows (Figure 65). Excess flow is defined as the quantity of surface water in excess of the existing state protected flows. An excess flow analysis is useful in determining the location, duration of excess flows, and frequency of excess flows on a monthly time-step when evaluating the volume of water available for capture in support of potential conjunctive management projects.

**Figure 65: Middle Loup Canals**



An excess flow evaluation was conducted for the Loup River system that first evaluated excess flows in the Lower Platte River, then working upstream into the Loup River basin. Two demand scenarios were considered when evaluating available excess flows in the Loup River. The first demand scenario considers the full Loup River Public Power District hydropower appropriation placed on the Loup subbasin. The average monthly flow available for diversion on the Middle Loup River for this demand scenario is shown in Figure 66.

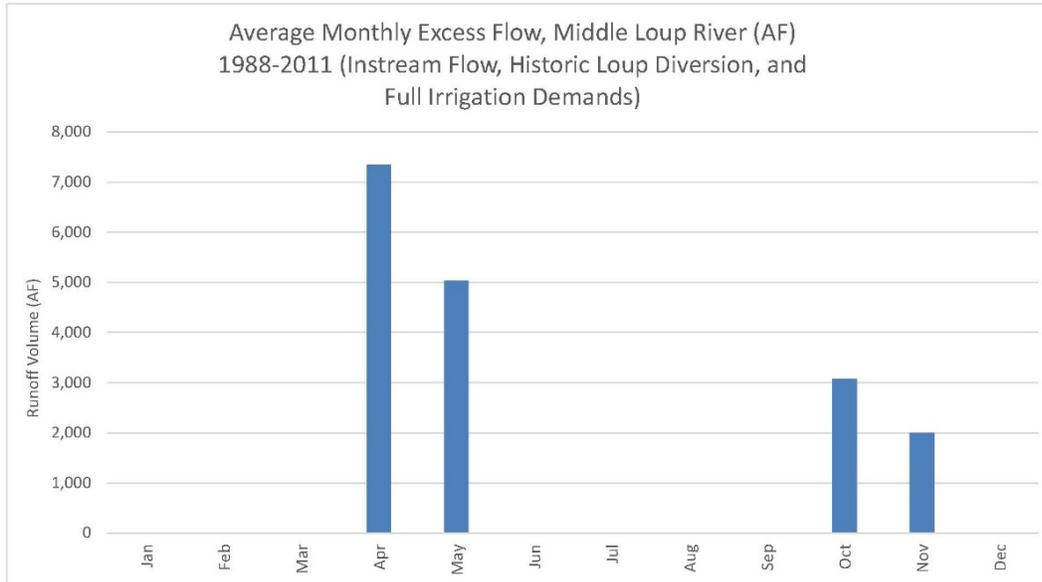
**Figure 66: Average Middle Loup River Excess Flow (based on Loup Power Surface Water Appropriation)**



## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

The second demand scenario considers the historic Loup Power Canal diversion. This demand scenario is considered the historic demand that was actually placed on the basin. The average monthly flow available for diversion on the Middle Loup River for this demand scenario is shown in Figure 67.

**Figure 67: Average Middle Loup River Excess Flow (based on historic Loup Power Canal diversion)**



Canal recharge alternatives that were considered would re-time flows during the non-peak season (times of low demands) to be available in the peak season (times of high demand) by diverting excess flows from the Middle Loup River into existing canals (Sargent Canal and Middle Loup Canals 1, 2, 3, and 4) during the months of April, May, October, and November. Return flows will passively accrete to the Middle Loup River throughout the year and will be available for use.

Figure 68 shows that when considering historic Loup Canal Diversions, approximately 450,000 acre-feet would have been available for capture and diversion between 1988 and 2011 in the months of April, May, October, and November. The seepage would return to the river naturally throughout the calendar year, with only a portion of this water returning during the peak summer months when drought effects are most severe.

**Figure 68: Cumulative Middle Loup Canal Diversions versus Cumulative Returns to Middle Loup River (assuming historic Loup Power Canal diversion)**

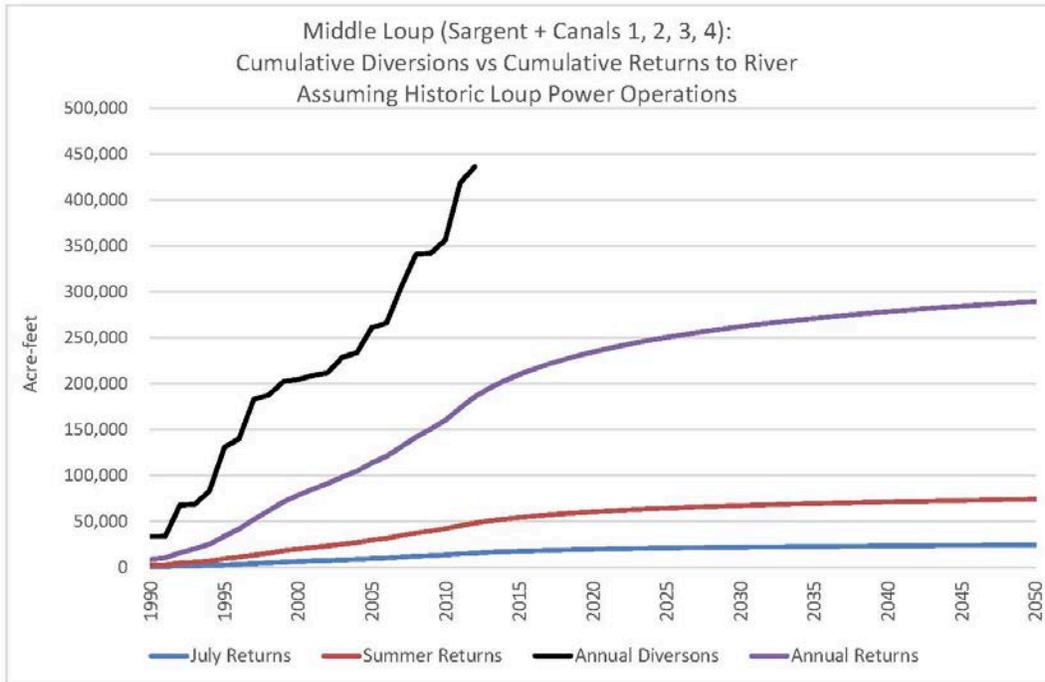
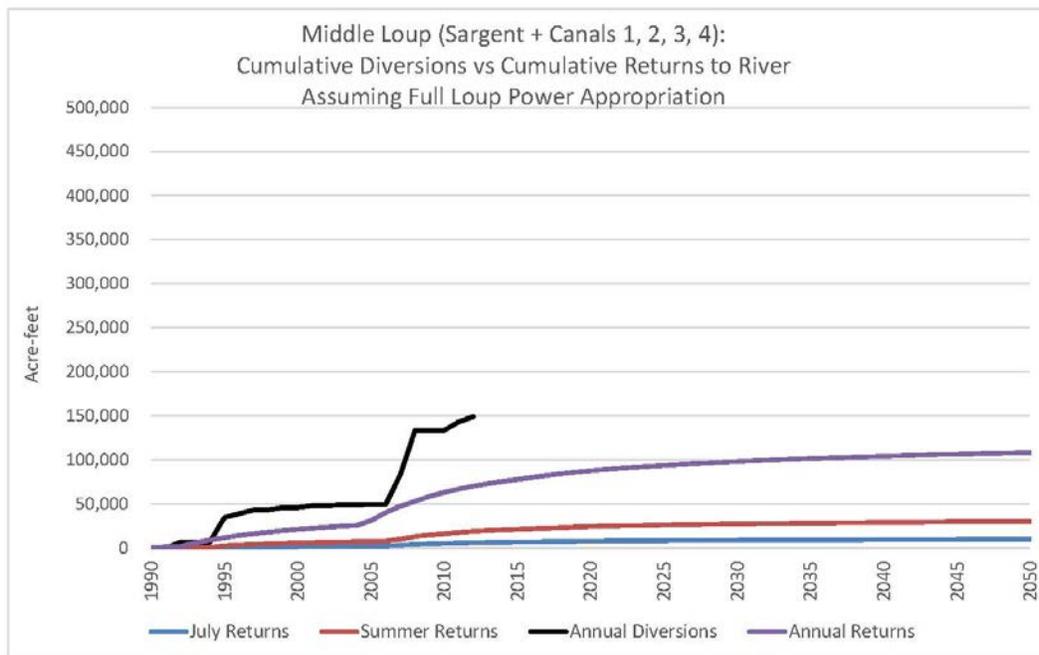


Figure 69 shows that when considering the full Loup River Public Power District hydropower appropriation, a much smaller volume of water is available for capture and diversion (approximately 150,000 acre-feet).

**Figure 69: Cumulative Middle Loup Canal Diversions vs Cumulative Returns to Middle Loup River (assuming Loup Power Surface Water Appropriation)**



## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

In general, 20 percent of the seepage recharge on the Middle Loup system would return in the first year, 40 percent after 5 years, 60 percent after 20 years, and 80 percent after 90 years. After 20 years of operation, the average summer accretion to the river is 12-15 cfs per day (target season) while the annual accretion to the river is estimated to be over 9,000 AF; improving supply to the stream year-round.

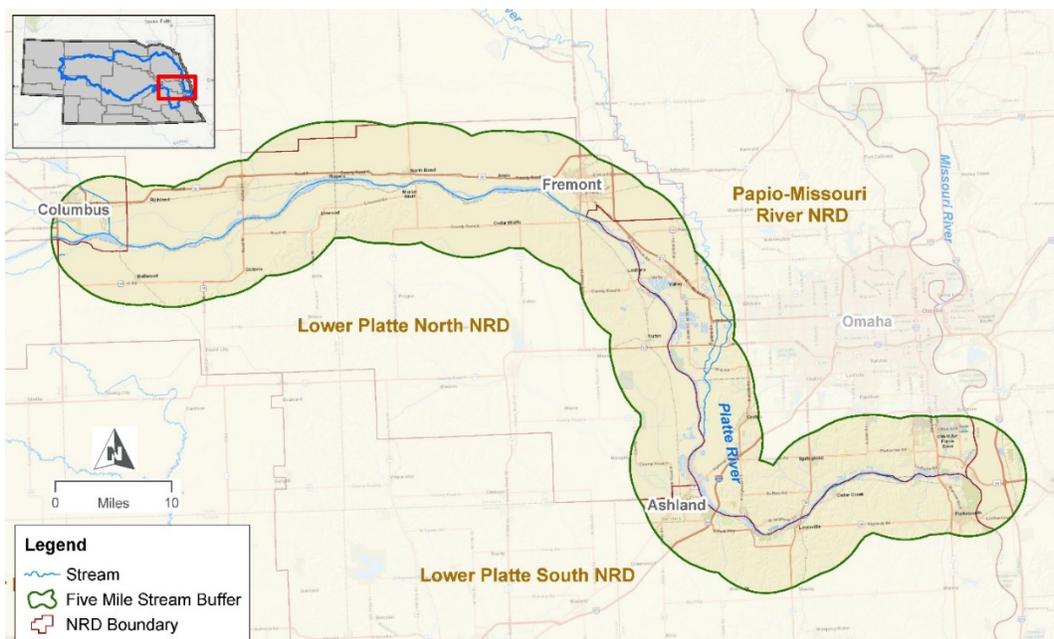
Potential constraints and considerations include third-party effects due to elevated groundwater elevations, coordination with annual canal maintenance activities, and existing operations and agreements amongst existing surface water irrigation districts on the Middle Loup River that may affect the ability to operate the system for intentional recharge in the non-peak season.

Project costs would include the increased operation and maintenance costs of the canal system and compensation through leasing agreements to use the existing canal facilities.

### 5.1.4 Dry-year Lease Option

The dry-year lease option would limit irrigation in areas adjacent to the Platte River during drought conditions. A rapid response area was defined in the Lower Platte River below the Loup River confluence by placing a 5-mile buffer on either side of the main channel of the Platte River (Figure 70). Irrigation wells in the alluvial aquifer of this area are most directly connected to streamflow in the Platte River and therefore have the quickest and largest depletive effects.

**Figure 70: Platte River – Five Mile Buffer – Columbus to Louisville**



Approximately 310,000 irrigated acres are located within this area, served by over 3,000 wells according to the NeDNR well registration database. Average annual pumping during the irrigation season is approximately 167,500 acre-feet. Analytical analysis using current estimates of stream depletion factors for the area estimates an average daily increase in Lower Platte River flows of approximately 25-30 cfs per day during July and August.

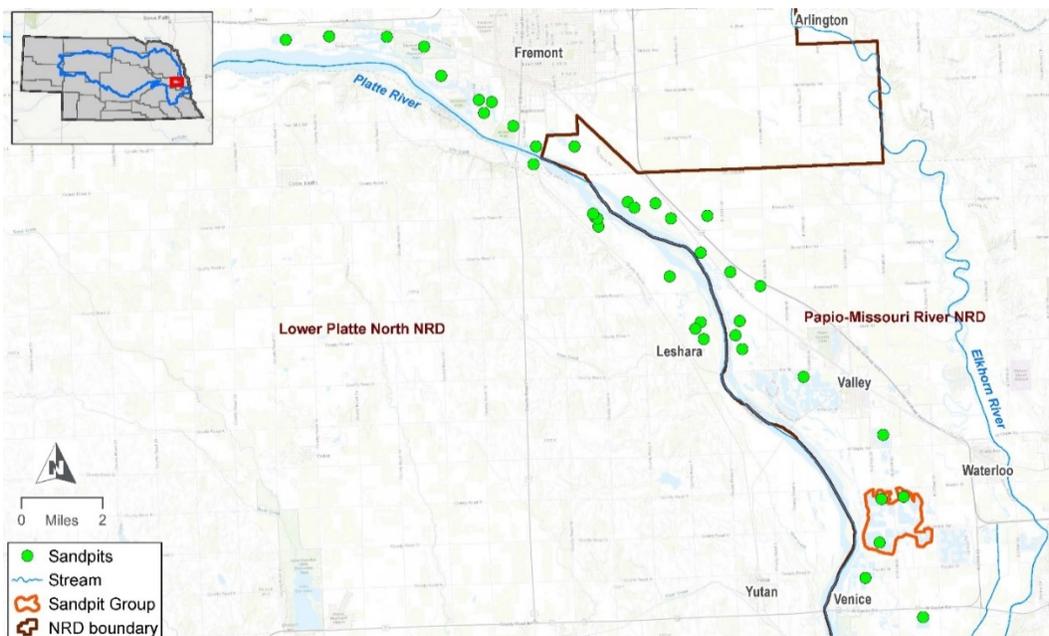
Implementing the dry-year lease option would require agreements with existing producers to forego irrigation in exchange for financial compensation. Typical format and content of these types of agreements vary, but may include a required lead time for notifying producers of intent to exercise the dry-year lease option and a limit on number of times option may be exercised during the agreement term.

Financial terms may include a set annual compensation, or an annual retainer with an escalator clause when option is exercised. The escalator may also vary based on the lead time of notice, as producers may be able to adjust crop type or production inputs accordingly if sufficient lead time is provided.

### 5.1.5 Alluvial Groundwater Pumping

Alluvial groundwater pumping would involve use of wells to augment streamflow during times of shortage, with aquifer levels recovering during the non-peak season through natural recharge from river flows. The wells may pump surface water from sandpits located adjacent to the river, or from the alluvial aquifer near the river – both have similar depletive effects to streamflow in the Platte River (Figure 71). For analyzing this option, pumping of surface water from adjacent sandpits was investigated.

**Figure 71: Platte River Alluvial Sandpits**



A series of four small, interconnected sandpits in western Douglas County adjacent to the Platte River was evaluated to estimate project benefits. The total area of the system of sandpits is approximately 1,150 acres. This option would include financial compensation for the ability to drawdown the sandpit 4-ft in the event of a drought, yielding approximately 4,600 AF of water (equivalent to 100 cfs of augmented flows for a duration of 23 days). It is noted that this option would have an operational constraint to be considered. Because of the proximity and high degree of connection to the river, depletive effects of augmentation pumping would begin to be reflected in Platte River streamflow in a matter of days or weeks. Therefore, use of this option early in the peak season during a drought (June or July, for example), could potentially exacerbate drought conditions and decrease streamflow in the Platte River later in the peak season (August, for example).

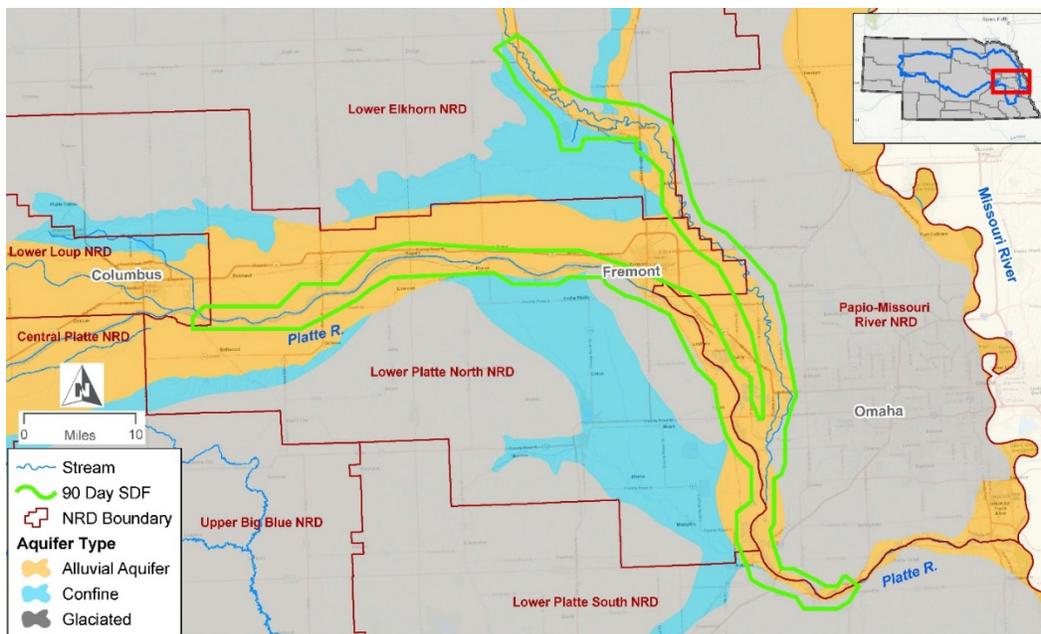
Costs associated with this option would include financial compensation to sandpit owners for the right to use the water from the sandpits as well as capital and O&M costs for the infrastructure to pump and deliver water to the river.

### 5.1.6 Groundwater Well-field Augmentation Project

The purpose of a well-field augmentation project would be to develop a well-field at a location with significant and accessible groundwater supplies, preferably at a considerable distance from the stream (low connectivity). New wells would draw water primarily from the aquifer, so as not to rely on induced recharge from the nearby surface water sources in the short term. This requires balancing the distances of the new wells from the river with the infrastructure costs for delivery (if pipe is used for conveyance) or conveyance losses (if natural channel conveyance is used). Ideally, new wells would be spread out to minimize interference with neighboring wells. The well-field could be used to pump water on demand that could be delivered to augment surface water flows, primarily for short durations during times of low-flows.

While specific sites were not investigated in detail, potential locations for a well-field augmentation project include the alluvial aquifers of the Platte and Elkhorn River systems (located outside the 90-day stream depletion factor (SDF) line); and in the Todd Valley in the Lower Platte River area. Figure 72 depicts the 90-day SDF line, which corresponds to the offset from the stream at which effects of pumping would take 90 days to deplete streamflow. This lag effect should be considered when locating any potential augmentation well sites. Sites should be located outside of this 90-day SDF line to delay depletion of the streamflow until the peak demand summer months have passed.

**Figure 72: 90-Day Stream Depletion Factor Line**



Potential constraints and considerations include third-party effects due to well-field pumping, well interference, discharge capacity of the receiving tributary (should one be used in lieu of direct conveyance to the river), and managing depletive effects of well-field pumping so as not to exacerbate low-flow conditions.

Project costs would include the development of the wells and well-field infrastructure, conveyance infrastructure, right-of-way, and annual operation and maintenance expenses.

### **5.1.7 Interconnection of MUD and LWS Finished Water Supplies**

The interconnection of MUD and LWS finished water supplies would provide LWS access to the Missouri River as a source of potable water. MUD currently has three water treatment plants (WTP) with a total capacity of approximately 320 million gallons per day (MGD). These treatment plants are diversified in their sources with the Missouri river serving the Florence WTP (160 MGD), and Platte River well fields serving both the Platte South (60 MGD) and Platte West (100 MGD) WTPs. The interconnection would include moving water within MUD's system from the Florence WTP to the Platte South WTP area, where the interconnection with LWS would be made. Required infrastructure would include pipelines, pump stations, and appurtenances for conveying water through the interconnection.

Independent of this planning effort, LWS and MUD have engaged in a joint study to review the feasibility of an interconnection between the two water providers. The Purpose of the study was to complete an initial evaluation of the potential interconnection between MUD and LWS by reviewing the following items: finished water chemistry compatibility; water supply and modeling evaluation to determine how much water can be moved from the Florence WTP to the Platte South area; options for transferring water from the MUD system to LWS's system; a conceptual design and cost forecast for the connection facilities, pipelines and pump stations needed for the project; and a financial/governance evaluation. Preliminary results indicated that the water chemistries are initially compatible, and there is adequate capacity within MUD's system to provide water to LWS. The financial governance evaluation is on-going.

This alternative would utilize closed conveyance systems targeted to address potable water for municipal and industrial uses. While Platte River flows would not be directly augmented by this alternative, the interconnection could potentially provide reduced pumping from the Platte River alluvial aquifer – and therefore reduced stream flow depletions - during droughts.

## **5.2 Evaluation of Potential Mitigation Measures**

Drought mitigation measures are actions, programs, and strategies implemented during non-drought periods to address potential risks and effects and to reduce the need for response actions; implementation of drought mitigation measures improves long-term resilience and reliability of the regional water supply.

Eight mitigation measures, and variations or combinations thereof, were evaluated in the Drought Plan that could increase regional water supply reliability. These include the following and are summarized in Table 18 and Table 19:

- Installing an alluvial well-field adjacent to the Missouri River and pumping water to a tributary of the Elkhorn River for availability on demand (two alternatives considered in Table 18 and Table 19: one that discharges directly into Bell Creek and a second that discharges into the proposed Bell Creek Reservoir);
- Purchasing storage in the existing Sherman Reservoir and releasing water on demand (two release volumes considered in Table 18);
- A new surface water storage reservoir on Skull Creek near Linwood for releasing water on demand;
- A new surface water storage reservoir on Bell Creek east of Winslow for releasing water on demand;
- Capture of Middle Loup River water in the non-irrigation season and diversion into the Middle Loup Canal system for intentional recharge and increase baseflow (two demand scenarios evaluated in Table 18 and Table 19: one that considers the historic Loup hydropower operations downstream and a second that considers the full Loup hydropower appropriation downstream);

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

- Installing a well-field to tap into groundwater aquifers with limited connection to streamflow that can be pumped to the river to augment flows;
- Pumping from alluvial sandpits directly to the river to supplement flows; and
- A rapid response area/dry-year-lease agreement with farmers irrigating lands adjacent to the main channel of the Platte River from the alluvial aquifer.
- Interconnection of MUD and LWS finished water supplies, providing LWS access to the Missouri River as a source of potable water

Conceptual design of infrastructure requirements and anticipated operational characteristics were defined for each mitigation measure. In addition, the estimated project yield to the Lower Platte River at the Ashland gage was determined. For projects upstream in the basin, a routing tool was used to estimate the losses that occur during conveyance to the Ashland gage. This routing tool utilizes historic reach loss data during low-flow periods to estimate conveyance losses (see Appendix D). As part of this planning effort, continuous recording monitoring wells paired with stage recorders were installed to foster a better understanding of losses in the Lower Platte River under varying hydrologic conditions.

For comparison of alternative costs and benefits, a 20-year period was evaluated to reflect the relative reliability of water from the mitigation action, i.e. for some mitigation actions water will not be available every year. A 15-day operation period, targeting the typical late-July/early-August critical low-flow period in the Lower Platte River was assumed for project operations. For developing cost/acre-foot estimates included in Table 18, costs were estimated over a 20-year period without using a discount rate or otherwise accounting for the time value of money. Benefits were based on acre-foot of water estimated to be delivered at the Ashland gage during the 15-day target period over the 20-yr period. Assumptions for each mitigation action are described in Appendix C.

During implementation of the Plan, the Consortium intends to further prioritize the identified alternatives for construction and incorporation into the Plan's mitigation and response actions. A table-top drought exercise will be used to evaluate alternatives that considers more severe droughts. These conditions include extended duration droughts (4 to 6 months of 2012 river conditions during the peak of the drought), as well as back-to-back years of severe, extended drought occurrence to fully test mitigation alternatives. This exercise will be used to prioritize mitigation actions for implementation based on criteria such as:

- Reliability of water supply during drought conditions
- Ability to address extended drought durations
- Ability to mitigate drought effects on all three identified sectors impacted by drought
- Costs of the action – both capital costs and operation and maintenance expenses
- Operational constraints of the alternative that may limit effectiveness during droughts
- Feasibility of alternative – accounting for elements such as required permits, infrastructure or ROW agreements, public acceptance, etc.

**Table 18: Evaluation of Potential Mitigation Measures (cost estimate versus volume of water added)**

Alternative	Volume Added at Source			Volume Increase at Ashland		Cost Estimate	Cost per acre-foot added at Ashland
	Cumulative AF/15 days	Ave Daily cfs	Where Added	Cumulative AF/15 days	Ave Daily cfs		
 Import Missouri River Water to Bell Creek (via alluvial well-field ; no reservoir)	59,400	100	Waterloo	46,300	80	\$76,572,840	\$1,654
 Sherman Release (400 cfs at St Paul)	47,520	400	St. Paul	15,720	132	\$9,628,000	\$612
 Sherman Release (250 cfs at St. Paul)	29,700	250	St. Paul	9,800	83	\$6,955,000	\$710
 Skull Creek Res. Rel. (100 cfs at Linwood)	59,400	100	Linwood	46,300	80	\$32,630,000	\$705
 Bell Creek Reservoir (Release 100 cfs at Waterloo)	59,400	100	Waterloo	46,300	80	\$81,520,000	\$1,761
 Pump Missouri River water (via alluvial well-field) into Bell Creek Reservoir	59,400	100	Waterloo	46,300	80	\$129,564,000	\$2,798
 Middle Loup Canal Recharge (Historic Loup Canal Operations)	7,525	13	Arcadia	2,525	4	\$16,360,000	\$6,478
 Middle Loup Canal Recharge (Full Hydropower Right downstream)	2,034	3	Arcadia	634	1	\$5,225,000	\$8,238
 Alluvial sandpit pumping	14,850	100	Leshara	14,850	100	\$5,980,000	\$403
 Augmentation Well-field	59,400	100	TBD	59,400	100	\$81,008,040	\$1,364
 Rapid Response Area/ Dry-year Lease	4,000	33	Columbus to Louisville	4,000	33	\$248,500,800	\$62,125
 Interconnection of MUD and LWS finished water supplies	See notes	See notes	See notes	See notes	See notes	See notes	See notes

*Notes:*

*This list is not intended to be all-inclusive. Potential mitigation measures may be further evaluated in future increments of the Drought Plan*

*AF = acre-feet; cfs = cubic feet per second;*

*20-year period evaluated to reflect relative reliability of each measure;*

*Fifteen-day operating period, targeting late July/early August critical low-flow period;*

*Routing tool used to estimate reach gains/losses;*

*Cost per acre-foot based on water that makes it to Ashland (common point). Reach losses for evaluation assume 66% loss from the Loup River to Ashland, 20% loss from the Elkhorn River to Ashland, and 20% loss from North Bend to Ashland;*

*Interconnection would directly link of MUD and LWS finished water supplies without utilizing the Platte River for conveyance and would directly address impacts of drought on potable water supplies. A more detailed analysis of feasibility and costs associated with this alternative is being conducted as a separate study.*

**Table 19: Evaluation of Potential Mitigation Measures (advantages, disadvantages, and uncertainties)**

Alternative		Advantages	Disadvantages	Uncertainties
	Import Missouri River Water (via alluvial well-field to Bell Creek/no reservoir)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Secondary source of water outside of Platte River basin increases supply reliability.</li> <li>Operational every year &amp; year-round</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Larger construction cost than many alternatives</li> <li>Implementation - 5-10 years</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Future regulation on Missouri River</li> <li>Well field siting</li> </ul>
	Sherman Release (400 cfs at St Paul)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Utilizes existing facilities (no construction cost)</li> <li>Produces large volume of water on-demand</li> <li>Historically Loup River supply adequate to fill reservoir every year.</li> <li>Implementation: 1-2 years</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Likely limitation on frequency of call on storage water</li> <li>Significant conveyance losses from release point to Lower Platte River</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Requires cooperation and agreements with existing facility owners.</li> <li>Negotiations will dictate price.</li> <li>Cost estimates based on similar agreements in state.</li> </ul>
	Sherman Release (250 cfs at St. Paul)			
	Skull Creek Res. Rel. (100 cfs at Linwood)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available every year &amp; year-round</li> <li>Produces large volume of water on demand</li> <li>Potential for multi-purpose facility</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Larger construction cost than many alternatives</li> <li>Land requirements, involving multiple landowners</li> <li>Implementation: 5-10 years</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Runoff volume varies year to year</li> <li>Land use impacts on runoff</li> <li>Implementation (permitting, land purchase, etc.)</li> </ul>
	Bell Creek Reservoir (Release 100 cfs at Waterloo)			
 	Pump Missouri River water (via alluvia well-field) into Bell Creek Reservoir	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Secondary source of water outside of Platte River basin increases supply reliability.</li> <li>Operational every year &amp; year-round.</li> <li>Importing into Bell Creek Reservoir requires a lower capacity system for importing water - saving \$\$</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Larger costs associated with combining alternatives that require both land and infrastructure.</li> <li>Implementation: 5-10 years</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Future regulation on Missouri River</li> <li>Well field siting</li> <li>Implementation (permitting, land purchase, etc.)</li> </ul>
	Middle Loup Canal Recharge (Historic Loup Canal Operations)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The canal recharge and dry-year lease projects are passive mitigation measures whose benefits (passive baseflow returns) accrue throughout the year, adding supply reliability to the overall system.</li> <li>Existing infrastructure – no initial construction costs</li> <li>Implementation: 1-2 years</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Unavailable to release a pulse of water volume “on-demand”.</li> <li>Takes time for the full benefit to be realized in river (lag effect) and some attenuation</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Requires cooperation and agreements with existing facility.</li> <li>Negotiations will dictate price.</li> <li>Cost estimates based on similar agreements in state.</li> <li>Amount of improvement of overall system supply from year around accretions</li> </ul>
	Middle Loup Canal Recharge (Full Hydropower Right downstream)			
	Alluvial sandpit pumping			
	Augmentation Well-field	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Minimal infrastructure costs (pumps from existing sandpits)</li> <li>Utilizes existing sandpits (no construction costs)</li> <li>Implementation: 1-2 years</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Limited operation window as pumping this close to the river may cause depletions to the stream (lag effect) that amplify impacts during extended drought</li> <li>Likely limitation on the number of calls allowed in a 20-year period</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Siting to avoid interference with existing wells.</li> <li>Long-term reliability of aquifer</li> </ul>
	Rapid Response Area/ Dry-year Lease	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available every year &amp; year-round</li> <li>Can be located closer to critical reach to reduce losses compared to alternatives producing similar volumes upstream in the Basin.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Land &amp; infrastructure costs make this one of the more expensive alternatives.</li> <li>Adds to overall depletions</li> <li>Implementation: 5-10 years</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No infrastructure or construction necessary.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Logistics of securing agreements with thousands of producers</li> <li>Likely limitation on the number of calls allowed in a 20-year period</li> <li>Most expensive of all the alternatives by an order of magnitude based on assumptions.</li> <li>Crop insurance likely affected in years when agreement enforced</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Negotiations will dictate price.</li> <li>Cost estimates based on similar agreements in state, and factors such as cost differential between irrigated and dry land rental rates.</li> <li>Uncertain how many producers would participate (benefits assume 100% participation which is unlikely)</li> </ul>
	Interconnection of MUD and LWS finished water supplies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Directly and efficiently addresses drought impacts on potable water supplies</li> <li>Provides access to the drought-resistant Missouri River as a source</li> <li>Implementation: 3-5 years</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Does not directly address low flow conditions on the Platte River during drought; however may reduce pumping demands on municipal wells adjacent to the Platte River during drought conditions</li> <li>Infrastructure costs associated with linking finished water supplies</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Feasibility of linking water supplies (water chemistry, system hydraulics, legal framework, etc.)</li> <li>A more detailed feasibility study is currently being undertaken</li> </ul>

Notes: This list is not intended to be all-inclusive. Potential mitigation measures may be further evaluated in future increments of the Drought Plan

## 5.3 Response Actions

Drought response actions are near-term actions triggered during specific stages of drought to manage the limited supply and decrease the severity of immediate effects. Response actions can be quickly implemented and can provide rapid benefits.

In this first increment of the Drought Plan, potential mitigation measures (Table 18 and Table 19) have been evaluated, but preferred measures have not been determined or constructed; therefore, the primary drought response action available to the Consortium at this time is communication and outreach.

Consistent and coordinated messaging to basin water users (municipal, industrial, domestic, irrigation, etc.), as well as the general public, raises awareness of the current water supply conditions, allows water users to proactively alter their demand and usage based on limited water supplies, and defines expectations of forecasted conditions and potential actions in response to the drought.

### 5.3.1 Coordinated Public Messaging Effort

Consistent and coordinated messaging to basin water users (municipal, industrial, domestic, irrigation, etc.), as well as the general public, raises awareness of the current water supply conditions, allows water users to proactively alter their demand and usage based on limited water supplies, and defines expectations of forecasted conditions and potential actions in response to the drought.

The internet and other digital sources capture a wide audience and it is important that the right information out. The Consortium website should include drought stage, an explanation of the drought stage, links to water efficiency and conservation information, and a link to drought plan.

The Consortium should maintain directions for directing media inquiries. A list of media contact is provided in Table 20. A draft press release follows.

**Table 20: Media Contact Information**

Contact Information	
Washington County Pilot-Tribune & Enterprise Mark Rhoades PO Box 328, Blair, NE 68008 (402) 426-2121 <a href="mailto:editor@enterprisepub.com">editor@enterprisepub.com</a>	Columbus Telegram & Fremont Tribune Vincent Laboy 1254 27 <sup>th</sup> Ave, Columbus, NE 68601 (402)753-9000 <a href="mailto:vincent.laboy@lee.net">vincent.laboy@lee.net</a>
Lincoln Journal Star Dave Bundy 926 P Street, Lincoln, NE 68508 (402) 473-7334 <a href="mailto:dbundy@journalstar.com">dbundy@journalstar.com</a>	Norfolk Daily News Cristina Anderson 525 Norfolk Ave, Norfolk, NE 68701-0977 (402) 371-1020 <a href="mailto:canderson@norfolkdailynews.com">canderson@norfolkdailynews.com</a>
Omaha World Herald Jeff Hartley 1314 Douglas Street, Omaha, NE 68102 (402) 444-1000 <a href="mailto:Jeff.hartley@owh.com">Jeff.hartley@owh.com</a>	Wahoo Newspaper Lisa Brichacek 564 N. Broadway Street, Wahoo, NE 68066 (402) 443-4162 <a href="mailto:Lisa.brichacek@wahoonepaper.com">Lisa.brichacek@wahoonepaper.com</a>

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

### Contact Information

#### *Bilingual Media Contacts*

El Perico  
Clay Seaman  
PO Box 7360, Omaha, NE 68107  
(402) 341-6967  
[clay@el-perico.com](mailto:clay@el-perico.com)

Buenos Dias Nebraska (online)  
Oscar Erives  
120 W. 3<sup>rd</sup> St, Grand Island, NE 68801  
(308) 381-7777  
[oscarerives@yahoo.com](mailto:oscarerives@yahoo.com)

KBBX Radio (97.7 FM)  
J. Timm  
11128 John Galt Blvd, Omaha, NE 68137  
(402) 884-0968  
[jtimm@connoisseurmedia.com](mailto:jtimm@connoisseurmedia.com)

KHUB  
PO Box 669, Fremont, NE 68025  
(402) 721-5012  
[khub@nrgmedia.com](mailto:khub@nrgmedia.com)

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

### Press Release Template:

For Immediate Release

Contact: Name, phone, email

Headline (7-10 words that describe major point of the release)

City, Date

Main Paragraph (quickly answers who, what, where is it taking place, when and why is this important of the story)

Quote (from pre-determined spokesperson. Quote should say action Consortium is taking, tell people what actions they should be taking, etc.)

Key Message 1 (supporting points)

“The Lower Platte River Basin has been experiencing an extended period of drought conditions which results in declining levels . . . . In accordance with Drought Contingency Plan, once the [drought indicator], drought condition declared.

Key Message 2 (supporting points)

- Level 1, “Moderate Drought:” This level of drought involves “some damage to crops, pastures; streams, reservoirs, or wells low, some water shortages developing or imminent; and voluntary water-use restrictions requested,” according to the monitor.
- Level 2, “Severe Drought:” This level means that “crop or pasture losses likely; water shortages common; and water restrictions imposed,” the monitor states.
- Level 3, “Extreme Drought:” This is the second-highest level of drought, with “major crop/pasture losses” and “widespread water shortages or restrictions.”

Key Message 3 (supporting points)

The situation continues to evolving and may change (better or worse) depending on future weather conditions. Update as new information becomes available.

More information (Name, phone, web site, other ways to get information)

In order to maintain consistent public messaging, a scripted message template is included.

**Table 21: Scripted Message Template**

NOTE: Direct all media inquiries to _____ (or his/her designee):		
Phone:		
Email:		
Revised: (date)		
Contact/Target Audience	Sample Question	Consortium Response
General Public	“When will water flow return to normal?”	
	“Is my water use restricted now? When will the restrictions be lifted?”	
	“What are you doing to prevent this from happening again?”	
Government Regulator	“What are the impacts?”	
Elected Official	“What is the impact on the community? The environment? The economy?”	
News Media	“What are the current water supply conditions?”	
	“What is the status of the community demand reduction response?”	
	“What is the status of conservation measures?”	
	“What is the estimated loss?”	
	“What caused the incident?”	
	“What are you going to do to prevent this from happening again?”	

## 5.4 Additional Drought Resources

In addition to the specific monitoring, mitigation, and response actions identified in development of this plan, additional resources and actions of national, state, and local programs exist to aid in preparing for and responding to drought conditions. While not part of this plan’s actions, the programs and actions described in this section are available to the Consortium and its constituents to aid in times of drought.

### 5.4.1 National Drought Mitigation Center

The NDMC website (<https://drought.unl.edu/droughtplanning/PlanningHome.aspx>) provides a wealth of information and actions to take before, during, and after a drought for a variety of impacted water users. In addition, the University of Nebraska Institute of Agricultural and Natural Resources has specific drought information and resources for Nebraska at the following website: (<https://droughtresources.unl.edu/>)

### 5.4.2 Nebraska Soil and Water Conservation Program

The Nebraska Soil and Water Conservation Program, established in 1977, provides state financial assistance to Nebraska landowners for the installation of approved soil and water conservation measures that improve water quality, conserve water, and help control erosion and sedimentation. Among the eligible practices for cost-share assistance are; terraces, terrace outlets (grassed or mechanical), irrigation reuse pits, grade stabilization structures, dams, diversions, grassed waterways, control basins, pasture and range seeding, planned grazing systems, irrigation water management, and windbreaks and windbreak renovations.

The Nebraska Natural Resources Commission determines the list of eligible practices, establishes operating procedures for the fund, and allocates the funds annually among the State’s 23 NRDs. The USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) provides the technical assistance needed in planning and installing the approved conservation measures. Each NRD is responsible for the administration of the program at the local level including accepting applications from landowners, setting priorities, and working with the landowners and contractors to complete the practices.

**Table 22: Nebraska Soil and Water Conservation Program – Drought Relevant Practices**

Practice ID	Practice Name	Purpose
NC-1	Constructing Terrace Systems	To control erosion on cropland, to conserve water and to reduce pollution
NC-3	Constructing Water Impoundment Dams	To impound runoff, conserve water, prevent erosion, prevent pollution, and to enhance groundwater recharge
NC-5	Constructing Irrigation Tailwater Recovery Pits with or without Underground Return Pipe	To impound runoff from irrigated fields for reuse; hence, conserving groundwater
NC-6	Constructing Diversions	To divert water from areas where it is in excess to sites where it can be used or disposed of safely
NC-8	Constructing Water-and-Sediment-Control Basins	To reduce on-site erosion, reduce sediment, reduce sediment content in water, intercept and conduct surface runoff through subsurface conduits to stable outlets, reduce peak rate or volume of flow at downslope locations, reform the land surface, and improve farmability

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

Practice ID	Practice Name	Purpose
NC-9	Constructing Dugouts for Livestock Water (runoff collection only)	To create an impoundment for livestock water use by excavating to collect runoff in grassland.
NC-10	Pasture Planting or Range Seeding (land use conversions)	To establish grass on land being converted from other uses or the renovation of existing pasture or range
NC-11	Critical Area Planting (grass)	To stabilize the soil, reduce damage from sediment and runoff to downstream areas
NC-12	Windbreaks	To establish a stand of trees to conserve soil and moisture and to prevent erosion
NC-13	Constructing Underground Return Pipe from Irrigation Tailwater Recovery Pits	To provide a permanent conveyance facility for water impounded by an approved tailwater recovery pit to the water supply that created the tailwater.
NC-14	Planned Grazing Systems	To reduce erosion and improve water quality by maintaining or improving plant cover for increased forage production, enhanced wildlife habitat, grazing uniformity and water use efficiency
NC-16	Windbreak Renovation	To provide for the restoration of farmstead or field windbreaks that have been rendered substantially ineffective due to the death of trees or other windbreak plantings as a result of weather, disease, or other natural causes
NC-17	Irrigation Water Management	To conserve groundwater and surface water by improving water use efficiency on irrigated lands
NC-19	Repair of Practices	To repair the following practices or practice elements when the damage to the practice is due to natural cause(s) rather than improper or inadequate maintenance; terraces, dams, diversions, grade stabilization structures, and livestock water supply pipelines. Any repair work must return the practice to a condition that meets technical specifications of the NRCS.

### 5.4.3 Education Programs

Many NRDs participate in school outreach programs to help teach children about the importance of conserving natural resources and ways they can contribute to a safe, clean environment. Elementary students attend water and natural resources festivals across the state, while older students benefit from outdoor classroom development, contests for land, range, and soil judging, and other activities.

Many NRDs help teachers develop tools to pass the conservation message on to the next generation. NRDs assist universities and colleges in developing natural resources opportunities. Workshops for farmers and urban landowners provide practical information on a variety of ways to care for natural resources.

#### **5.4.4 Administrative Actions**

##### **5.4.4.1 MUD Shift Operations to utilize Missouri River**

The MUD Platte West well-field is designed to operate at 100 MGD. In 2012, MUD shifted operations to its Florence plant (Missouri River surface water source), reducing pumping at the Platte West well-field in August. The coordination framework provided by the Consortium will help facilitate the desire to implement this type of action in future droughts. When dealing with future drought conditions there are a myriad of factors MUD would need to consider before again shifting water production between its three water treatment plants. These factors include, but are not limited to: plant capacities, water quality, streamflow on both the Platte and Missouri River, customer demand and/or operational efficiencies.

##### **5.4.4.2 MUD and LWS Interconnection**

As noted in the Mitigation Alternatives, MUD and LWS are independently investigating the feasibility of an interconnection between their finished water systems. Conceptually this interconnection would provide LWS treated water from MUD's system originating from the Missouri River. Access to imported water from the Missouri River would provide LWS access to a second water source largely unaffected by drought conditions. The interconnection may also provide water for future growth in demands on the LWS system.

##### **5.4.4.3 Urban Water Use Restrictions**

Many water utilities implement water use restrictions during various stages of drought. MUD and LWS both implement voluntary and mandatory water use restrictions during various stages of drought. These restrictions are described in detail in Appendix A.

##### **5.4.4.4 Urban Water Rate Pricing**

In combination with water use restrictions, many water utilities implement inclining block rates. LWS has an inclining block rate structure in place year round. More recently, LWS implemented a "water shortage rate" policy whereby the rate blocks are further increased to curtail outdoor water use. MUD's inclining block rate structure is utilized during summer months only. LWS and MUD implement water rate pricing as described in Appendix A.

##### **5.4.4.5 Surface Water Right Administration**

Nebraska surface waters are governed by the prior appropriation (first-in-time, first-in-right) doctrine, which allows diversion of water from the surface waters of the state based on the date the water right was obtained. This system protects those who received their water rights first during periods when the overall water supply is insufficient to meet all appropriated water rights. Thus, the entity with the earliest priority date (first-in-time) is entitled to their full appropriation (first-in-right) before a later priority date entity receives any water. An exception to the priority doctrine is preferences. Under Nebraska appropriation law, domestic surface water use is considered to be superior to all other uses, and agriculture is inferior to domestic but superior to industry. If a junior superior user takes water from a senior inferior user, the senior must be paid for the water.

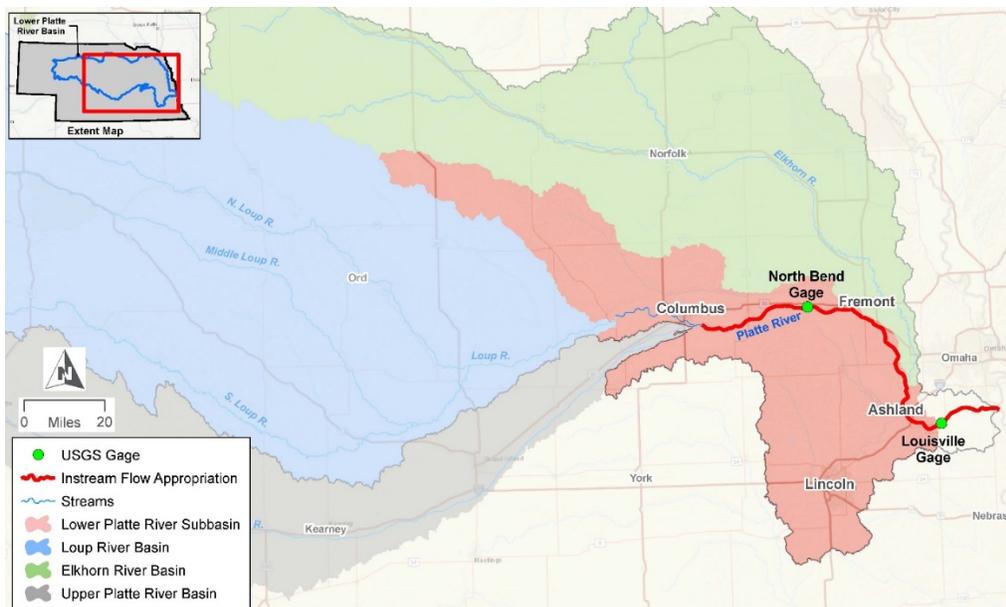
One of the mitigation measures available to the City of Omaha (MUD) and the City of Lincoln (LWS) during periods of drought is to exercise a priority call on the Lower Platte River, affecting hundreds of upstream junior irrigation appropriations, likely during peak irrigation demand periods. This disruption to irrigation supplies would leave many of those junior irrigation users vulnerable to crop loss during a

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

prolonged drought. Regulation or interference with these irrigation demands can be costly should this type of priority call be necessary.

The Nebraska Game and Parks Commission holds instream flow appropriations for the protection of fish and wildlife. The instream flow rights have a priority date of November 30, 1993. The instream flow appropriations are measured at the North Bend gage and the Louisville gage, although the appropriations extend to the confluence with the Missouri River. When instream flow appropriations are not met at the North Bend gage, all junior surface water appropriations above that gage, including those in the Loup River subbasin, are closed to diversion. When instream flow appropriations are not met at both the North Bend and the Louisville gages, all junior surface water appropriations above both gages, including those in both the Loup and Elkhorn River subbasin, are closed to diversion. In circumstances where the instream flow appropriation is being met at the North Bend gage but not at the Louisville gage, all junior appropriations above the Louisville gage, including those in both the Loup and Elkhorn River subbasins, are closed to diversion (NeDNR 2016) (Figure 73).

**Figure 73: Instream flow Trigger Locations**



### 5.4.5 Rural Water Supply

Each rural water agency is required to provide the Nebraska Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS) with a Water Shortage Emergency Response Plan. Each plan must identify stages and criteria of a water shortage, alternate or emergency water sources, a communication plan, and water shortage response actions.

For those domestic users who use self-supplied domestic groundwater wells, *NebGuide* “G1536” makes recommendations for storing an emergency supply of water. Recommendations include the following (Skipton, Dvorak, and Albrecht 2010):

- Replace pressure tanks with larger tanks or using supplemental tanks to provide additional storage.
- Reduce demand during high water use periods by storing water extracted during low use periods
- Deepen existing well or drill new well
- Bottle or haul water from near-by public water supply

## **5.4.6 Agricultural Sector Response Actions**

### **5.4.6.1 Groundwater Controls**

The Nebraska Legislature, under Nebraska Revised Statutes 46-701 to 46-754 of the Nebraska Groundwater Management and Protection Act, grants the NRDs authority to protect the quantity and quality of water, and to resolve conflicts between surface water and groundwater users. The NRD may adopt one or more controls, which may include the following:

- Allocations of the amount of groundwater users may withdraw
- System of rotation for use
- Well spacing requirements
- Well meter requirements
- Reduction of irrigated acres
- Limits on or prevention of expansion of irrigated acres or beneficial use of water
- NRD approval of transfer of groundwater off overlaying land
- NRD approval of transfer of rights to use groundwater that result from NRD-imposed allocations or other NRD restrictions
- Prevention of adverse effects on other groundwater or surface water users

Each NRD maintains a Groundwater Management Plan with water quality area designation criteria and water quantity area designation criteria, which include use well spacing, allocations, and stays on new development depending on which phase is triggered. These plans are summarized in Appendix A.

### **5.4.6.2 National Drought Mitigation Center**

The NDMC provides guidance for ranchers during drought including pasture management, finding feed, reducing feed demand, and lessening risk of heat stress:  
<http://drought.unl.edu/ranchplan/DuringDrought.aspx>.

### **5.4.6.3 University of Nebraska–Lincoln CropWatch**

CropWatch provides guidance for managing crop production during drought conditions, including articles related to corn, sorghum, soybeans, dry beans, forages, silage, and wheat production. It also provides information on farm management during drought, harvest, storage, irrigation practices, soil management, and weed management: <https://cropwatch.unl.edu/crop-management-drought>

## **6.0 Operational and Administrative Framework, and Plan Update Process**

The Consortium will have two scheduled meetings each year to: (1) prepare for the monitoring and evaluation effort for the current year; (2) discuss evolving needs in the region, any triggers, and issues to be addressed; (3) evaluate and prioritize identified mitigation projects to implement as future funding opportunities arise; (4) identify funding needs and sources for the following year's activities, and develop a plan to pursue identified funds; and (5) discuss progress and results of the Drought Plan monitoring and evaluation effort, other items brought forth by the Consortium, and review content from the updated Drought Plan (every 5 years). These two scheduled meetings will be concurrent with the fall and spring monitoring meetings illustrated in Figure 74. The Consortium chairperson is the NeDNR representative

who will be responsible for setting the agenda, public noticing the meetings, and conducting the meetings. The chairperson will house and maintain the files and information of the Consortium.

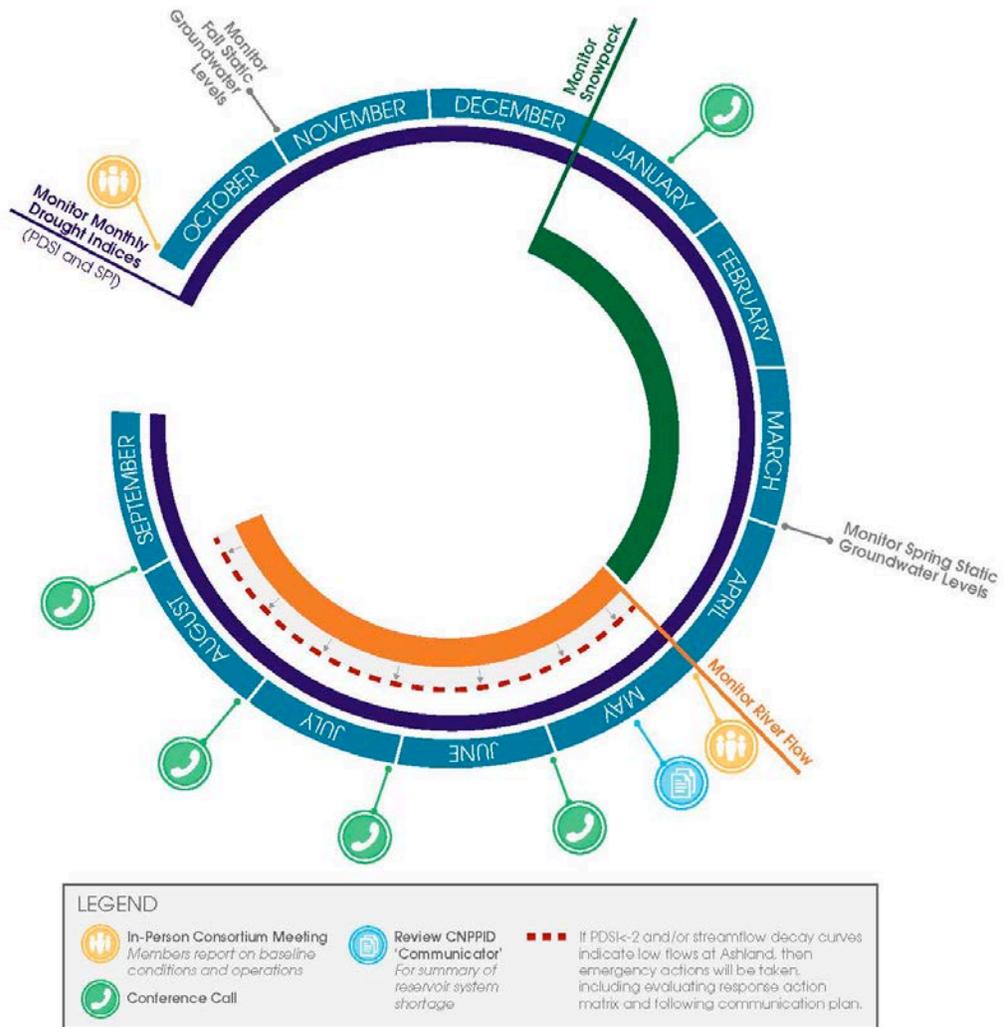
## 6.1 Plan Implementation

On an ongoing basis and at the approximate frequency illustrated in Figure 74, the Consortium shall monitor indicators and indices for trigger levels that may indicate the onset of drought conditions. Table 23 lists the drought monitoring roles and responsibilities assigned to each Consortium member.

**Table 23: Drought Monitoring Roles/Responsibilities**

Drought Indicator	Consortium Member	Contact
<b>Website Hosting/Maintenance</b>	Lower Platte South NRD	General Manager
<b>PDSI/SPI</b>	NeDNR	Water Planning Division Manager
<b>Streamflow &amp; recession tool</b>	NeDNR	Water Planning Division Manager
<b>Snowpack/Reservoir Levels</b>	NeDNR	Water Planning Division Manager
<b>Monthly climate webinars &amp; review US Drought Monitor website</b>	LWS	Superintendent of Water Production
<b>Groundwater Levels</b>	Each entity individually in accordance with their groundwater management plans (NRDs) and aquifer monitoring protocol (LWS/MUD)	Lower Platte North NRD- Water Resources Manager Papio-Missouri River NRD- Ground Water Management Engineer Lower Platte South NRD- Water Resources Specialist MUD-Director, Water Production & Pumping LWS- Superintendent of Water Production NeDNR-Water Planning Division Manager
<b>Notification drought triggers reached</b>	NeDNR will notify Consortium members when drought triggers have been reached;  Consortium will initiate response actions according to drought level.	NeDNR -Water Planning Division Manager

Figure 74: Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan Implementation Actions



## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

Table 24 lists the implementation plan actions over the calendar months.

**Table 24: Drought Monitoring Continuum**

Month	Activities
<b>November - March</b>	Monitoring: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- PDSI/SPI indices</li> <li>- Mountain and plains snowpack</li> <li>- CNPPID operating plan</li> <li>- River flows</li> </ul>
<b>April/May meeting</b>	Meeting to review following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- PDSI/SPI indices</li> <li>- Mountain and plains snowpack</li> <li>- NRD Spring static aquifer levels</li> <li>- Upper Platte River/Loup River reservoir storage</li> <li>- River flows</li> <li>- CNPPID operating plan</li> <li>- Well-field aquifer levels</li> <li>- Conveyance tool projections</li> </ul>
<b>June/July/August/September</b>	Monitoring and potentially meetings, depending on conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- PDSI/SPI indices</li> <li>- River flows</li> <li>- Well-field aquifer levels</li> <li>- Conveyance tool projections</li> <li>- Response actions</li> </ul>
<b>October/November meeting</b>	Post-peak season evaluation meeting. Items for review/discussion: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Past season operations</li> <li>- Well-field aquifer levels</li> <li>- NRD fall static aquifer levels</li> <li>- PDSI/SPI indices</li> <li>- Upper Platte River/Loup River reservoir storage</li> </ul>

## 6.2 Plan Update Process

The Drought Plan and associated planning are meant to be part of an adaptive process that is routinely updated to reflect the needs of the Lower Platte River Basin and its water users. The Consortium will evaluate the need for updating the Drought Plan every five years, or as conditions warrant (such as implementation of a response action project).

- On an annual basis, the Consortium will gather information and make any necessary updates to the Vulnerability Assessment.
- On an annual basis, the Consortium will review any changes in the Vulnerability Assessment, determine the need for new and revised actions, and update the status of existing actions and add new actions (as needed).
- The Consortium may identify planning and technical efforts outside those anticipated that need to be undertaken based on changed conditions or a potential need.

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

- Every five years, the Consortium will assess the need for and prepare an updated Drought Plan (as needed).

### 6.3 Continued Communication and Outreach

In addition to internal plan maintenance and implementation, it is important that the Consortium maintains a relationship with stakeholders and the public and serves as a resource to water users in the Lower Platte River. The following communication and outreach activities have been identified:

- The Consortium will keep the project website updated to keep interested stakeholders informed of meetings, new materials, and other information related to the Drought Plan and its implementation. An email distribution list of interested stakeholders will be maintained and used for distribution of information and notices of website content updates.
- Each individual agency will be responsible for informing its constituents, customers, and the public of any actions initiated and related progress and results.
- Coordination and information sharing with other ongoing efforts will be beneficial to both the Drought Plan and the other drought monitoring and planning efforts (Missouri Basin Plan, NEMA, etc.). At this time there is no set protocol or timing identified for this coordination efforts, rather it is anticipated this coordination will occur on an as needed basis.

## 7.0 Glossary of Terms

Term	Definition
<b>Accretion</b>	Addition of streamflow that results from an offset or mitigation measure or project.
<b>Acre-Foot (AF)</b>	Volume of water required to cover 1 acre of land (43,560 square feet) to a depth of 1 foot, equivalent to 325,851 gallons.
<b>Appropriation</b>	See Surface Water Appropriation
<b>Aquifer</b>	A geological formation or structure of permeable rock or unconsolidated materials that stores and/or transmits water, such as to wells and springs.
<b>Baseflow</b>	The portion of streamflow that is not runoff and results from seepage of water from the ground into a channel slowly over time.
<b>Cubic feet per second (cfs)</b>	The rate of discharge representing a volume of 1 cubic foot passing a given point during one second. It is equivalent to 7.48 gallons per second, or 4,448.8 gallons per minute.

Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

Term	Definition
<b>Drought</b>	<p>There are many definitions for drought, but all definitions include periods of dryness and below average precipitation. The National Drought Mitigation Center (NDMC) lists four types of droughts: meteorological drought, agricultural drought, hydrological drought, and socioeconomic drought as described in Section 4.1.</p> <p>For this Drought Plan, the three drought levels identified remain consistent with NDMC definitions of “moderate”, “severe”, and “extreme” droughts:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A Level 0, “Abnormally Dry” or “Mild Drought” indicates an area may be experiencing “short-term dryness slowing planting, growth of crops or pastures” indicating the onset of drought or may be coming out of drought and experiencing lingering effects of drought.</li> <li>• A Level 1, “Moderate Drought” involves “some damage to crops, pastures; streams, reservoirs, or wells low, some water shortages developing or imminent; and voluntary water-use restrictions requested.”</li> <li>• A Level 2, “Severe Drought” means that “crop or pasture losses likely; water shortages common; and water restrictions imposed.”</li> <li>• A Level 3, “Extreme Drought” involves “major crop/pasture losses” and “widespread water shortages or restrictions.”</li> </ul>
<b>Depletion</b>	See Groundwater Depletion
<b>Evapotranspiration (ET)</b>	The process by which water is transferred from the land to the atmosphere by evaporation from the soil and other surfaces and by transpiration from plants.
<b>Excess Flow</b>	The historic quantity of surface water in the Lower Platte River Basin in excess of the state protected flows in the Platte River.
<b>Fully Appropriated</b>	From Nebraska Revised Statutes 46-713, subsection (3): “A river basin, subbasin, or reach shall be deemed fully appropriated if NeDNR determines based upon its evaluation conducted pursuant to subsection (1) of this section and information presented at the hearing pursuant to subsection (4) of section 46-714 that then current uses of hydrologically connected surface water and groundwater in the river basin, subbasin, or reach cause or will in the reasonably foreseeable future cause (a) the surface water supply to be insufficient to sustain over the long term the beneficial or useful purposes for which existing natural-flow or storage appropriations were granted and the beneficial or useful purposes for which, at the time of approval, any existing instream appropriation was granted, (b) the streamflow to be insufficient to sustain over the long term the beneficial uses from wells constructed in aquifers dependent on recharge from the river or stream involved, or (c) reduction in the flow of a river or stream sufficient to cause noncompliance by Nebraska with an interstate compact or decree, other formal state contract or agreement, or applicable state or federal laws”.
<b>Gallon per capita per day (gpcd)</b>	A term generally used to approximate the average amount of water used per day, per person, in one year.
<b>Groundwater</b>	Water which occurs in or moves, seeps, filters, or percolates through ground under the surface of the land, and shall include groundwater which becomes commingled with waters from surface sources.

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

Term	Definition
<b>Groundwater Depletion</b>	Reduction to streamflow that results from a new use of either groundwater or surface water.
<b>Groundwater Recharge</b>	The addition of water to the zone of saturation. Infiltration of precipitation and its movement to the water table is one form of natural recharge.
<b>Hydraulic Conductivity</b>	A property of vascular plants, soils and rocks, that describes the ease with which a fluid (usually water) can move through pore spaces or fractures. It depends on the intrinsic permeability of the material, the degree of saturation, and on the density and viscosity of the fluid.
<b>Hydrologically Connected</b>	Describes a geographic area designated by the NeDNR where the existing amount of groundwater and surface water each has significant influence on the other and where appropriate regulation exists.
<b>Induced Groundwater Recharge</b>	An indirect method of artificial recharge involving pumping from an aquifer hydrologically connected with surface water such as perennial streams. The heavy pumping lowers the groundwater level and a cone of depression is created. Lowering of water levels induces the surface water to replenish this groundwater. This method is effective where a streambed is connected to aquifer by sandy formation.
<b>Instream flow Demand</b>	Demands for streamflow taking place within the stream and is not withdrawn from a surface water source. These demands are based on current appropriations held by the Nebraska Game and Parks Commission or any local Natural Resources Districts.
<b>Integrated Management Plan (IMP)</b>	A plan cooperatively developed by NeDNR and individual NRDs for a specific area. The objective of an integrated management plan is to manage such river basin, subbasin, or reach to achieve and sustain a balance between water uses and water supplies for the near and long term.
<b>LB 483</b>	On December 12, 2008, the NeDNR reached a preliminary determination that the Lower Platte River Basin was fully appropriated. Subsequent to this determination, NeDNR reached a final determination that the Lower Platte River Basin was not fully appropriated. Following this reversal, on April 6, 2009 the Legislature passed LB 483 which requires that when a basin status change occurs, the affected NRDs must adopt rules and regulations that: 1) allow a limited number of total new groundwater irrigated acres annually; 2) are created with the purpose of maintaining the status of not fully appropriated based on the most recent determination; 3) be for a term of not less than four years; and 4) limit the number of new permits so that total new groundwater irrigated acres do not exceed the number set in the rules and regulations.
<b>LB 962</b>	A bill passed by Nebraska Legislature in 2004 that allows leases of surface water, changes administration of surface water rights, establishes a proactive approach to the integrated management of hydrologically connected groundwater and surface water and creates funds to direct money towards data gathering, research, conservation and implementation of integrated management plans in fully and overappropriated basins.

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

Term	Definition
<b>Lower Platte River Basin</b>	The Lower Platte River Basin is defined as all surface areas that drain into the Lower Platte River, including those areas that drain into the Loup River and the Elkhorn River, and all aquifers that impact surface water flows of the basin.
<b>Lower Platte River Basin Coalition (Coalition)</b>	Formed through an Interlocal Cooperation Act agreement among the NeDNR and the following seven Natural Resources Districts (NRDs) that encompass the Lower Platte River Basin: Upper Loup NRD; Lower Loup NRD; Upper Elkhorn NRD; Lower Elkhorn NRD; Lower Platte North NRD; Lower Platte South NRD; Papio-Missouri River NRD
<b>Lower Platte River Consortium (Consortium)</b>	Beginning in 2016, the Lower Platte South NRD, Papio-Missouri River NRD, Lower Platte North NRD, Metropolitan Utilities District (MUD), Lincoln Water System (LWS), and Nebraska Department of Natural Resources (NeDNR), collectively referred to as the Lower Platte River Consortium (Consortium), embarked on an effort to develop a drought contingency plan for the Lower Platte River Basin in Nebraska.
<b>Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan (Drought Plan)</b>	The purpose of the Drought Plan is to refine the collective understanding of drought vulnerabilities, while developing more robust monitoring and forecasting tools coupled with timely triggers, new mitigation strategies and responsive actions to create a sound operational framework and improve critical water supply needs of the area through drought periods.
<b>Million gallons per day (MGD)</b>	A rate of flow of water equal to 133,680.56 cubic feet per day, or 1.5472 cubic feet per second, or 3.0689 acre-feet per day.
<b>Natural Resources District (NRD)</b>	A political subdivision of the State that governs the natural resources within the subdivision.
<b>Nebraska Department of Natural Resources (NeDNR)</b>	Nebraska Department of Natural Resources; a State Agency.
<b>Ogallala Aquifer</b>	A shallow water table aquifer surrounded by sand, silt, clay and gravel located beneath the Great Plains in the United States. One of the world's largest aquifers, it underlies an area of approximately 174,000 sq mi in portions of eight states (South Dakota, Nebraska, Wyoming, Colorado, Kansas, Oklahoma, New Mexico, and Texas). The aquifer is part of the High Plains Aquifer System, and rests on the Ogallala Group, which is the principal geologic unit underlying 80% of the High Plains.

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

Term	Definition
<b>Overappropriated</b>	From 46-713, subsection (4a): A river basin, subbasin, or reach shall be deemed overappropriated if, on July 16, 2004, the river basin, subbasin, or reach is subject to an interstate cooperative agreement among three or more states and if, prior to such date, NeDNR has declared a moratorium on the issuance of new surface water appropriations in such river basin, subbasin, or reach and has requested each natural resources district with jurisdiction in the affected area in such river basin, subbasin, or reach either (i) to close or to continue in effect a previously adopted closure of all or part of such river basin, subbasin, or reach to the issuance of additional water well – permits in accordance with subdivision (1)(k) of section 46-656.25 as such section existed prior to July 16, 2004, or (ii) to temporarily suspend or to continue in effect a temporary suspension, previously adopted pursuant to section 46-656.28 as such section existed prior to July 16, 2004, on the drilling of new water wells in all or part of such river basin, subbasin, or reach.
<b>Palmer Drought Severity Index (PDSI)</b>	The Palmer Drought Severity Index (PDSI) uses readily available temperature and precipitation data to estimate relative dryness. It is a standardized index that spans -10 (dry) to +10 (wet). It has been reasonably successful at quantifying long-term drought.
<b>Sandhills</b>	A region of mixed-grass prairie on grass-stabilized sand dunes in north-central Nebraska, covering just over one quarter of the state. The dunes were designated a National Natural Landmark in 1984.
<b>Saturated Thickness</b>	The vertical thickness of the hydrogeologically defined aquifer unit in which the pore spaces are filled (saturated) with water.
<b>Streamflow</b>	The discharge that occurs in a natural channel of a surface stream course.
<b>Standardized Precipitation Index (SPI)</b>	A widely used index to characterize meteorological drought on a range of timescales. It quantifies observed precipitation as a standardized departure from a selected probability distribution function that models the raw precipitation data.
<b>Surface Water</b>	Water that occurs or moves on the surface of the planet such as in a stream, river, lake, wetland, or ocean.
<b>Surface Water Appropriation</b>	A permit granted by NeDNR to use surface water for a beneficial use in a specific amount, purpose and location, and is based on first-in-time, first-in-right
<b>Transfer</b>	To allow for the historic consumptive use of water to be changed, in location and/or purpose. Impacts of a transfer may include an increase in depletions to the river or an impact to existing surface water or groundwater uses.
<b>Upper Platte River Basin</b>	The Upper Platte River Basin includes the North Platte River, South Platte River, and Platte River from the confluence to Duncan.

## 8.0 References

### References listed include those used for Appendix A through Appendix E.

- Bathke, Deborah J., Robert J. Oglesby, Clinton M. Rowe, and Donald A. Wilhite. 2014. *Understanding and Assessing Climate Change: Implications for Nebraska*. A Synthesis Report to Support Decision Making and Natural Resource Management in a Changing Climate. University of Nebraska–Lincoln.
- Brown, Thomas C., Romano Foti, and Jorge A. Ramirez. 2013. “Projected Freshwater Withdrawals in the United States under a Changing Climate.” *Water Resources Research*. 49:1259-1276.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). 2012. “*Drought and Health*”. Accessed September 7, 2018. <https://www.cdc.gov/nceh/drought/default.htm>
- Central Nebraska Public Power and Irrigation District (CNPPID). n.d. “Hydropower”. <http://www.cnppid.com/operations/hydropower/>.
- City of Lincoln. 2014a. Drought Manual. Confidential (not available to the public)
- City of Lincoln. 2014b. *Lincoln Water System Facilities Master Plan*. May.
- City of Lincoln. 2018. Correspondence with Steve Owen.
- Commission on Water Resource Management. 2003. *Drought Risk and Vulnerability Assessment and GIS Mapping Project*. Department of Land and Natural Resources. State of Hawaii. September.
- Dietsch, Benjamin J., Julie A. Godberson, and Gregory V. Steele. 2009. *Trends in Streamflow Characteristics of Selected Sites in the Elkhorn River, Salt Creek, and Lower Platte River Basins, Eastern Nebraska, 1928-2004, and Evaluation of Streamflows in Relation to Instream-Flow Criteria, 1953-2004*. U.S. Geological Survey Scientific Investigations Report 2009-5011.
- Ding, Ya, Michael J. Hayes, and Melissa Widhalm. 2010. “Measuring Economic Impacts of Drought: A Review and Discussion”. *Papers in Natural Resources*. 196.
- Ehrman, Dick, Steve Herdzina, Chris Witthuhn, Ryan Rezac, Mike Mascoe, McKenzie Barry, Katie Cameron, and Dan Schulz. 2015. *Lower Platte South Natural Resources District Ground Water Management Plan 2015 Annual Review*.
- Feng, Song; Trnka, Miroslav; Hayes, Michael; and Zheng, Yongjun, "Why Do Different Drought Indices Show Distinct Future Drought Risk Outcomes in the U.S. Great Plains?" (2017). Drought Mitigation Center Faculty Publications. 111.
- Ginting, Daniel, Ronald B. Zelt, and Joshua I. Linard. 2008. *Temporal Differences in the Hydrologic Regime of the Lower Platte River, Nebraska, 1895-2006*. U.S. Geological Survey Scientific Investigations Report 2007-5267.
- Hayes, Michael, Mark Svoboda, Nicole Wall, and Melissa Widhalm. 2011. “The Lincoln Declaration on Drought Indices”. Universal Meteorological Drought Index Recommended. *American Meteorological Society*. April. <https://journals.ametsoc.org/doi/pdf/10.1175/2010BAMS3103.1>.
- Helm Smith, Kelly. 2012. “Expect More Impacts as Nebraska Drought Rolls into Second Year”. National Drought Mitigation Center. UNL.
- Huntzinger, Thomas and Ellis, Michael (USGS) 1993. Central Nebraska Basins NAWQA Study Unit Environmental Settings. Published in: *Water Resources Bulletin*, v.29 , no. 4 (Aug. 1993), p.533-574

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

- Korus JT, LM Howard, AR Young, DP Divine, ME Burbach, JM Jess, DR Hallum. 2013. "The groundwater atlas of Nebraska". *Resource Atlas* no. 4b/2013, 3rd edn. Conservation and Survey Division, University of Nebraska, Lincoln, NE, 64 pp.
- Lincoln Water System (LWS). 2017. "Water and Wastewater Rates." <https://www.lincoln.ne.gov/city/pworks/water/customer/rates.htm>.
- Lower Elkhorn Natural Resources District. 2017. *Drought Management Plan*. January.
- Lower Loup Natural Resources District. 1985. *Groundwater Management Plan*.
- Lower Platte North Natural Resources District. 2018. *Ground Water Management Area Rules and Regulations*. February 9.
- Lower Platte North Natural Resources District. 2015. *Multi-Jurisdictional Hazard Mitigation Plan*.
- Lower Platte South Natural Resources District. 1995. *Ground Water Management Plan*. April.
- Lower Platte South Natural Resources District. 2015. *Drought Emergency Response Plan*. March.
- Lower Platte South Natural Resources District and Nebraska Department of Natural Resources (NeDNR). n.d. *Integrated Management Plan*.
- Lower Platte South Natural Resources District and Nebraska Department of Natural Resources (NeDNR). 2014. *Annual Integrated Management Plan Report*.
- Lower Platte South Natural Resources District. 2017. *Ground Water Rules & Regulations*. January.
- Melillo, Jerry M., Terese (T.C.) Richmond, and Gary W. Yohe, eds. 2014. *Climate Change Impacts in the United States: The Third National Climate Assessment*. U.S. Global Change Research Program. doi:10.7930/J0Z31WJ2.
- Metropolitan Utilities District (MUD). 2015. *Revised Well Field Contingency Plan*. Draft. January.
- National Academy of Sciences. 1999. "The Impacts of Natural Disasters: A Framework for Loss Estimation". Washington, DC: The National Academies Press. <https://doi.org/10.17226/6425>.
- National Department of Environmental Quality (NDEQ). 2013. *2012 Nebraska Water Monitoring Programs Report*. NDEQ.
- National Drought Mitigation Center. 2018. "Types of Drought." *Drought in Depth*. Accessed September 7, 2018. [https://drought.unl.edu/Education/DroughtIn-depth/TypesofDrought.aspx#Agricultural\\_Drought](https://drought.unl.edu/Education/DroughtIn-depth/TypesofDrought.aspx#Agricultural_Drought).
- National Research Council. 2005. *Endangered and Threatened Species of the Platte River*. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press. <https://doi.org/10.17226/10978>.
- Nebraska Department of Natural Resources (NeDNR). 2013. *Hydrogeologic Assessment for Potential Development of Groundwater Modeling Tools in the Lower Platte River and Missouri River Tributary Basins*.
- Nebraska Department of Natural Resources (NeDNR). 2017. *2016 Annual evaluation of Availability of Hydrologically Connected Water Supplies*.
- Nebraska Emergency Management Agency (NEMA). 2014. *State of Nebraska Hazard Mitigation Plan*.
- NOAA Drought Task Force. 2013. *An Interpretation of the Origins of the 2012 Central Great Plains Drought Assessment Report*. March 20.
- NOAA National Centers for Environmental Information. 2017. "State Climate Summaries: Nebraska." <https://statesummaries.ncics.org/NE>.

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

- NOAA National Weather Service Climate Prediction Center. 2005. "Explanation." Palmer Drought Severity Index.  
[http://www.cpc.ncep.noaa.gov/products/analysis\\_monitoring/cdus/palmer\\_drought/wpdanote.shtml](http://www.cpc.ncep.noaa.gov/products/analysis_monitoring/cdus/palmer_drought/wpdanote.shtml).
- Palmer, Wayne C. 1965. *Meteorological Drought*.
- Papio-Missouri River Natural Resources District. 2016. *Multi-Jurisdictional Hazard Mitigation Plan*. February.
- Papio-Missouri River Natural Resources District. 2014. *Voluntary Integrated Management Plan*. August.
- Papio-Missouri River Natural Resources District. 2017. *Groundwater Management Plan*. Volume I.
- Platte River Recovery Implementation Program. 2018. *Water Plan*. Accessed September 7, 2018.  
<https://platteriverprogram.org/about/water-plan>
- Reed, Leslie. 2015. "Study: Easing ethanol mandate could have cut corn prices during drought." *UNL News Release*. University of Nebraska – Lincoln.
- Skipton, Sharon, Dvorak, Bruce, and Albrecht, Julie. 2010. "Drinking Water: Storing an Emergency Supply". NebGuide G1536. University of Nebraska–Lincoln.
- Tadesse, Tsegaye, Donald Wilhite, Michael Hayes, and Steve Goddard. 2005. *Discovering Associations between Climatic and Oceanic Parameters to Monitor Drought in Nebraska Using Data-Mining Techniques*. UNL.
- University of Florida. 2013. "Water availability ranking for 225 urban areas in the United States". Environmental Hydrology Laboratory at the University of Florida.  
<http://richelibretheureux.com/wp-content/uploads/pdf/Water%20availability%20ranking%20for%20225%20urban%20areas%20in%20the%20United%20States.pdf>
- University of Nebraska–Lincoln. 2009. "Nebraska Leads the Nation in Irrigated Acres".  
<https://cropwatch.unl.edu/nebraska-leads-nation-irrigated-acres>.
- USDA NASS 2017. "2017 State Agriculture Overview."  
[https://www.nass.usda.gov/quick\\_stats/ag\\_overview/stateoverview.php?state=NEBRASKA](https://www.nass.usda.gov/quick_stats/ag_overview/stateoverview.php?state=NEBRASKA).
- USGS. 1998. *Computer Programs for Describing the Recession of Ground-Water Discharge and for Estimating Mean Ground-Water Recharge and Discharge from Streamflow Records—Update*. U.S. Geological Survey Water-Resources Investigations Report 98-4148.
- USGS. 2008. "Simulation of Ground-Water Flow and Effects of Ground Water Irrigation on Base Flow in the Elkhorn and Loup River Basins, Nebraska". Scientific Investigations Report 2008–5143. U.S. Department of the Interior, U.S. Geological Survey.  
[https://pubs.usgs.gov/sir/2008/5143/pdf/sir2008\\_5143.pdf](https://pubs.usgs.gov/sir/2008/5143/pdf/sir2008_5143.pdf).
- Wilhelmi, Olga, and Donald Wilhite. 2002. "Assessing Vulnerability to Agricultural Drought: A Nebraska Case Study". Drought Mitigation Center Faculty Publications.
- Wilhite, Donald. 2011. *Quantification of Agricultural Drought for Effective Drought Mitigation and Preparedness: Key Issues and Challenges*. UNL.
- Young, Aaron R., Mark E. Burbach, and Leslie Howard. 2013. *Nebraska Statewide Groundwater-Level Monitoring Report*. Conservation and Survey Division School of Natural Resources. Nebraska Water Survey Paper Number 81. [http://snr.unl.edu/csd-esic/GWMapArchives/GWReports/GW\\_Level\\_Report\\_2013.pdf](http://snr.unl.edu/csd-esic/GWMapArchives/GWReports/GW_Level_Report_2013.pdf).

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

- Young, Aaron R., Mark E. Burbach, Leslie M. Howard, Michele M. Waszgis, R. Matt Joeckel, and Susan Olafsen Lackey. 2016. *Nebraska Statewide Groundwater-Level Monitoring Report*. Conservation and Survey Division School of Natural Resources. Nebraska Water Survey Paper Number 84.
- Zipper, S.C., K. Helm Smith, B. Breyer, J. Qui, A. Kung, and D. Herrmann. 2017. "Socio-environmental drought response in a mixed urban-agricultural setting: synthesizing biophysical and governance responses in the Platte River Watershed, Nebraska." USA. *Ecology and Society* 22(4):39.

## Appendix A: Current Drought Monitoring and Drought Plans

This appendix summarizes the existing drought monitoring efforts, existing drought plans, or other relevant local plans that address water supply management. Each of the drought plans included in Appendix A have been developed by entities with individual authorities and responsibilities, and have been developed to address those responsibilities. Currently there is not a direct correlation between this Plan's drought triggers and those found in each of the existing plans of the individual entities. It is anticipated that as the entities update their existing drought plans, drought triggers and stages from this Plan – either wholly or in part, as appropriate – will be incorporated, as appropriate into the updated individual plans to add consistency basin-wide.

This page intentionally left blank

## A.1 State of Nebraska Current Monitoring and Response Actions

Established in 1991 by Legislative Bill (LB) 274 to replace the Drought Assessment and Response Team (DART), the Nebraska Climate Assessment Response Committee (CARC) serves as a steering committee for the state’s *Drought Mitigation and Response Plan* and other climate-related activities. CARC membership consists of the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA), Nebraska Department of Natural Resources (NeDNR), Nebraska Health and Human Service (NHHS) System – Office of Regulation and Licensure, Nebraska Emergency Management Agency (NEMA), University of Nebraska–Lincoln (UNL) Cooperative Extension Service, UNL Conservation and Survey Division (CSD), and Governor’s Policy Research Office. By statute, NEMA is charged with responding to emergencies, such as drought or floods, at the direction of the Governor.

Nebraska’s *Drought Mitigation and Response Plan* was last updated in June 2000 (revised May 2004). Presently, Nebraska (through NEMA) is in the process of updating its *Hazard Mitigation Plan*, of which the Drought Plan will become a component. Going forward, the *Hazard Mitigation Plan* will replace the 2000 *Drought Mitigation and Response Plan*. The *Hazard Mitigation Plan* is scheduled to be completed and submitted to the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) in the spring of 2019. NEMA will collaborate with the National Drought Mitigation Center (NDMC), CARC, and USDA to update the drought component of the *Hazard Mitigation Plan*. The *Hazard Mitigation Plan* will include a drought assessment, vulnerabilities assessment, triggers and strategic actions, response actions and mitigation measures, research, technical assistance, and workshops.

**Table A-1: 2004 Nebraska Drought Mitigation and Response Plan – Planned Mitigation Activities**

Prioritized Impacts	Prioritized Planned Actions	Assistance Agencies
<b>Due to drought, many public water supply systems experience potable water demand problems.</b>	Emphasize, and evaluate, long and short-term drought contingency plans for all systems. Emphasize indoor and outdoor water conservation measures. Maintain list of “problem systems”, with history or potential for drought-related problems. Develop programs to educate the public on the potential uses of wastewater. Develop partnerships with utility companies and others who can help distribute drought-related information.	NHHS, League of Municipalities, NRDs, Nebraska Rural Water Association, NDEQ, AWWA, CED/UNL
<b>Many rural water districts and small public water systems (under 10,000 population) develop operational (mechanical) problems when operating for extended periods of drought.</b>	Maintain a list of “problem systems” with history or potential for drought-related problems. Continue work with systems to develop a plan of long-term drought mitigation and short-term drought response actions. Maintain communication means and use Nebraska Rural Water Associations (NeRWA) newsletter and training sessions to address drought-related issues. Explore, as needed, emergency funds.	NRWD, NEMA, Nebraska Section of AWWA, Nebraska Department of Economic Development (NDED), USDA Rural Development, League of Municipalities, NHHS, Midwest Assistance Program, NDEQ, UNL Extension, NRDs, Groundwater Foundation, Nebraska Department of Natural Resources, NeRWA, EPA
<b>Due to drought, private wells experience water quality and quantity problems.</b>	Encourage NRDs to evaluate situation. Emphasize indoor and outdoor water conservation measures.	NRDs, CSD/UNL, CED/UNL

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

Prioritized Impacts	Prioritized Planned Actions	Assistance Agencies
<b>Increased irrigation may overdraft available aquifer and affect municipal and rural water supplies during drought.</b>	Promote groundwater-metering efforts and establish an emergency allocation program. Encourage statewide water level measurement program to effectively monitor aquifer levels.	NRDs, Bureau of Reclamation, DOE, CSD/UNL, CED/UNL, USGS.
<b>Drought induced mental anguish of farmers and ranchers resulting in increased suicides, social and family problems.</b>	Use local TV and radio outlets to implement public information program directed at reducing drought-induced mental stress. Implement and/or maintain farm/crisis hotline(s). Develop working partnerships with local ministerial alliances and local health office as to develop social counseling and support programs. Public service announcements for hotline numbers and mediation services.	NHHS, local health offices, local ministerial alliances, CED/UNL, NEDA, Centers for Rural Affairs, national public health services, Mediation Service, Farm Crisis Council
<b>Increased presence of large, industrial, independent water users may overdraft available aquifers during drought.</b>	Maintain a list of large, industrial, independent water users. Enhance communication between large, independent water users and municipal suppliers to implement water conservation measures and drought-preparedness guidelines.	NRDs, NDED, CSD/UNL, Nebraska Department of Natural Resources, League of Municipalities, CED/UNL
<b>Increased health problems for residents of areas experiencing blowing dust problems for drought-affected agricultural lands.</b>	Communicate with state medical allergy and asthma experts to develop recommendations. Establish education programs to increase awareness of dust-related respiratory problems and how soil and land conservation practices can improve air quality. Develop funded initiatives to explore mitigation of health effects.	NHHS, UNMC, CED/UNL, NRDs, NRCS, Nebraska Emergency Management Agency (NEMA), local health offices, environmental health fund.
<b>Drought-induced temperature extremes produce extreme living conditions for both rural and urban residents. Increased electrical usage may create overloads on available electrical grid network.</b>	Develop information program to provide living guidelines and alternatives to enable residents to cope with extreme conditions. Develop working partnerships with local urban and rural power suppliers to cooperate in providing energy and water conservation guidelines to public. Develop an education program. Learn about electrical bill assistance programs. Learn about fan distribution programs.	NHHS, HUD, CED/UNL, Nebraska Energy Office, Salvation Army, League of Women Voters, medical professionals, local utility companies, Nebraska Rural Electric Association, Nebraska Power Association, Nebraska Energy Office, League of Municipalities.
<b>General Impacts</b>	Promote the use of water efficient plumbing fixtures and appliances.	AWWA, League of Municipalities, Builders and Plumbers Associations, EPA.

Source: Nebraska Drought Mitigation and Response Plan, Appendix A

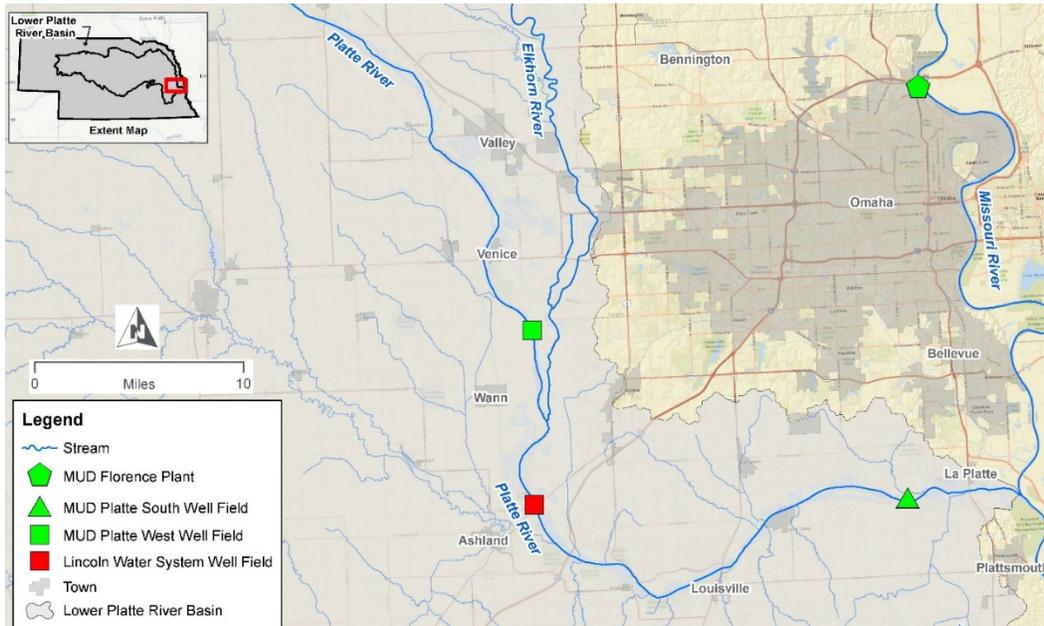
Notes: AWWA = American Water Works Association; CED/UNL = Cooperative Extension Division – University of Nebraska-Lincoln; CSD/UNL = Conservation and Survey Division- University of Nebraska – Lincoln; NDED = Nebraska Department of Economic Development; NDEQ = Nebraska Department of Environmental Quality; DOE = Department of Energy; EPA = Environmental Protection Agency; HUD = Housing and Urban Development; NEDA = Nebraska Department of Agriculture; NEMA = Nebraska Emergency Management Agency; NHHS = Nebraska Health and Human Services; NRCS = Natural Resource Conservation Service; NRDs = Natural Resource Districts; NRWD = Nebraska Rural Water Districts; UNMC = University of Nebraska Medical Center; USGS = United States Geological Survey.

## A.2 Metropolitan Utilities District Current Monitoring and Response Actions

The Metropolitan Utilities District (MUD) has three supply intake locations: 1) Florence Plant in north Omaha, Nebraska, that obtains its water from the Missouri River with a capacity of 160 million gallons per day (MGD); 2) Platte West well-field located south of Venice, Nebraska, that obtains its water from the Platte River with a capacity of 100 MGD; and 3) Platte South well-field located near La Platte, Nebraska, that also obtains water from the Platte River with a capacity of 60 MGD. Total system output for MUD from all three facilities is 320 MGD. MUD has the ability to use all three of their facilities interchangeably to meet their demand.

The induced recharge right for the Platte West well-field is 1,000 cubic feet per second (cfs) and for Platte South is 500 cfs. MUD is currently undergoing an analysis of both its Platte West and Platte South well-field capacities under drought conditions. According to MUD, their system capacity is not expected to be a concern for the foreseeable future. During the 2012 drought, MUD voluntarily reduced operations at Platte West to 30 to 40 MGD and increased operations at the Florence plant.

**Figure A-1: Municipal Well-field Locations**



MUD maintains a water conservation and emergency plan on the MUD website (Table A-2). The water conservation and emergency plan includes voluntary and mandatory conservation measures, which have not been imposed since the early 2000s and have not been imposed since the Platte West well-field was constructed. MUD imposes conservation measures when consecutive days have a demand at or above 300 MGD.

**Table A-2: MUD Water Alert Levels**

Alert Level	Trigger	Action
<b>Level 1: Voluntary Alternate Day Watering</b>	Water consumption reaches 95 percent (about 300 million gallons per day) of available supply or system capacity, or any of the water storage reservoirs cannot be refilled from day to day, or low pressure jeopardizes firefighting or causes numerous customer complaints.	<p>Press release to notify public of alert. Press release will include basic list of water conservation tips.</p> <p>Limit hydrant flushing and main filling, comply with alternate day water restrictions, and shut down decorative fountains at the Florence Plant and the Headquarters Building.</p> <p>All customers asked to voluntarily adhere to alternate day watering. Customers told what to expect if Level 2 Alert issued.</p> <p>All customers asked to voluntarily discontinue hosing down driveways, shut off decorative fountains, discontinue filling swimming pools, and other actions deemed appropriate by MUD City of Omaha and other municipalities served by MUD asked to voluntarily comply with alternate day watering restrictions; curtail sewer flushing, lake filling, firefighting drills, street washing and other non-essential uses of water.</p> <p>Enforcement: None</p>
<b>Level 2: Voluntary No Watering Days</b>	Specified no-watering days will allow MUD to fill water system reservoirs. Trigger: Water consumption reaches 95 percent of available supply or system capacity, or any of the water storage reservoirs cannot be refilled from day to day, or low pressure jeopardizes firefighting or causes numerous customer complaints.	<p>Press release to notify public of alert. Press release will include basic list of water conservation tips.</p> <p>Limit hydrant flushing and main filling, comply with alternate day water restrictions, and shut down decorative fountains at the Florence Plant and the Headquarters Building.</p> <p>All customers asked to voluntarily discontinue all outdoor water use on days determined by MUD.</p> <p>Customers told what to expect if Level 2 Alert issued.</p> <p>All customers asked to voluntarily discontinue hosing down driveways, shut off decorative fountains, discontinue filling swimming pools, and other actions deemed appropriate by MUD City of Omaha and other municipalities served by MUD asked to voluntarily comply with alternate day watering restrictions; curtail sewer flushing, lake filling, firefighting drills, street washing and other non-essential uses of water.</p> <p>Enforcement: None</p>
<b>Level 3: Water Alert</b>	Water consumption meets or exceeds available supply or system capacity, or useable water storage has been reduced 50 percent, or there are widespread pressure problems.	<p>Issue press release to notify public that voluntary requirements of Level 1 or Level 2 alerts have become mandatory.</p> <p>Stop hydrant flushing and main filling, comply with designated restrictions, including shut down of decorative fountains at the Florence Plant and the Headquarters Building.</p> <p>All customers required to adhere to water restrictions.</p> <p>All customers required to discontinue hosing down driveways, shut off decorative fountains, discontinue filling swimming pools, and other actions deemed appropriate by MUD.</p> <p>City of Omaha and other municipalities served by MUD will be required to comply with water restrictions, stop sewer flushing, lake filling, firefighting drills, street washing and other non-essential uses of water.</p> <p>Enforcement: Customers who do not comply with water restrictions will be subject to having their water shut off until mandatory restrictions are lifted. The current turn-on fee will be charged to restore service.</p> <p>Exceptions: Exceptions may be made for new sod less than three weeks old and other circumstances deemed appropriate by MUD</p>

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

Alert Level	Trigger	Action
<b>Level 4: Water Emergency</b>	Water use exceeds production or distribution capacity due to emergency situations.	Issue press release to notify public a Water Emergency is in effect. All non-sanitary, non-essential use must be discontinued. Enforcement: Customers who do not comply with water restrictions will be subject to having their water shut off until mandatory restrictions are lifted. The current turn-on fee will be charged to restore service.
<b>Level 5: Water Emergency (Water Quality)</b>	Water quality for human consumption cannot be assured due to a contamination or suspected contamination.	Issue press release to notify public that water cannot be consumed safely unless it is boiled or cannot be consumed safely at all. This will include water used in food preparation. MUD, in cooperation with DHHS, will take action to make water safe for consumption and conduct tests to assure it is safe. Issue press release to inform customers water is safe for consumption. Enforcement: None

Source: MUD Water Alert Emergency Plan, Rev. 2012

In combination with water use restrictions, MUD implements inclining block rates as described in Table A-3.

**Table A-3: MUD Commodity Charges**

cubic feet	Nov-May (\$ per 100 cubic feet)	Jun-Oct (\$ per 100 cubic feet)
<b>0 to 900</b>	1.2632	1.2632
<b>901 to 3,000</b>	1.2632	1.7685
<b>Over 3,000</b>	1.2632	2.2738

Source: Provided by MUD 2018

### A.3 City of Lincoln Current Monitoring and Response Actions

Lincoln Water System (LWS) updated its *Water Management Plan* in 2013. This plan manages water use to maintain consumption within the system's production, pumping, and delivery capacities. When water use cannot be maintained within the system's capacity, the plan defines procedures and provides guidance for imposing water restrictions. The plan includes phases for management of the City of Lincoln, Nebraska, water supplies through various circumstances, including drought conditions or other catastrophic events that would result in a water shortage.

The extent to which drought restrictions are implemented is primarily based on the flows in the Lower Platte River at Ashland, Nebraska, and water usage. Watering restrictions are implemented through the City of Lincoln's Municipal Code. The various phases of watering restrictions start as voluntary and then increase to mandatory as the severity of the drought increases. Tiered water shortage rates are applied during periods when *Water Management Plan* restrictions are implemented. The water shortage rates were developed on the basis that customers practicing conservation techniques would see little or no increase in their summer water bills. The water shortage rates begin with the voluntary restrictions and are increased if stricter plan phases are enacted.

**Table A-3: City of Lincoln Drought Phases**

Phase	Signal River Flow	Signal Water Use	Possible Action
<b>Moderate Shortage</b>	3,000 – 1,500 cubic feet per second (cfs)	Greater than 75 million gallons per day (MGD)	Voluntary restrict certain water use activities to three (3) designated days per week
<b>Severe Shortage</b>	1,500 – 200 cfs	Greater than 65 MGD	Certain water use activities may be mandatorily restricted to three (3) designated days per week
<b>Critical Shortage</b>	Less than 200 cfs	Greater than 55 MGD	In addition to restricted imposed under severe shortage, also limits outdoor water use; may result in either mandatorily restricting certain water use activities to two (2) or one (1) designated day or no outside water use

Source: City of Lincoln’s Water Management Plan 2013

Reduced water usage equates to reduced sales. Reduced sales equates to reduced revenues to cover costs of water treatment and delivery, and costs of infrastructure repair and replacement.

The City of Lincoln monitors several sources in an attempt to monitor impending drought conditions. Through the winter and spring months, LWS monitors aquifer levels, National Oceanic Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) 90-day precipitation and temperature forecasts, the NOAA Seasonal Drought Outlook, the U.S. Drought Monitor and previous 90-day precipitation and makes a Phase 1, Phase 2, or No Restriction recommendation to the Mayor on May 15 of each year as described in Table A-4.

**Table A-4: City of Lincoln Drought Indicators – Spring (prior to May 15)**

Indicator	No Restriction	Phase 1	Phase 2
<b>Remaining Operational Volume</b>	>80%	60%-80%	40%-60%
<b>NOAA 90-day precipitation forecast (% probability below normal)</b>	Equal chance (above, below, normal)	33%-40% (below normal)	33%-40% (below normal)
<b>NOAA 90-day temperature forecast (% probability above normal)</b>	Equal chance (above, below, normal)	33%-40% (above normal)	33%-40% (above normal)
<b>NOAA Seasonal Drought Outlook</b>	None predicted-improvement	On-going	Intensify
<b>U.S. Drought Monitor Rating</b>	No Rating-moderate	Severe	Extreme
<b>Previous 90 day precipitation (from High Plains Regional Climate Center) (% of normal)</b>	>90%	70%-90%	50%-70%

Source: City of Lincoln’s Water Management Plan, 2013

After May 15, and throughout the summer months, LWS switches to NOAA 30-day outlooks and previous 30-day precipitation totals to designate drought phases as well as adds a Phase 3 category for very extreme drought conditions, as summarized in Table A-5. LWS implements conservation measures based on the designated drought phases. The existing conservation measures focus almost entirely on reducing outdoor water use.

**Table A-5: City of Lincoln Drought Indicators – May 15 through September**

Indicator	No Restriction	Phase 1	Phase 2	Phase 3
Remaining Operational Volume	>80%	60%-80%	40%-60%	<40%
NOAA 30-day precipitation forecast (% probability below normal)	Equal chance (above, below, normal)	33%-40% (below normal)	33%-40% (below normal)	>40% (below normal)
NOAA 30-day temperature forecast (% probability above normal)	Equal chance (above, below, normal)	33%-40% (above normal)	33%-40% (above normal)	>40% (above normal)
NOAA Seasonal Drought Outlook	None predicted-improvement	On-going	Intensify	Intensify
U.S. Drought Monitor Rating	No Rating-moderate	Severe	Extreme	Exceptional
Previous 30 day precipitation (from High Plains Regional Climate Center) (% of normal for Lower Platte River Basin)	>90%	70%-90%	50%-70%	<50%

Source: City of Lincoln’s Water Management Plan 2013

LWS implements accelerated water shortage rates during periods when *Water Management Plan* restrictions are implemented, beginning with Phase 1 and increasing if stricter plan phases are enacted (Tables A-6 and A-7). Water shortage rates were developed on the basis that customers choosing to practice water conservation techniques, primarily targeted at outdoor water use reduction, may see little or no increase in their rates.

If a natural disaster, such as a tornado, fire, blizzard, ice, or flood, or catastrophic failure of LWS facilities occurs, the City of Lincoln will enact restrictions under the Catastrophic Water Shortage Levels, separate from Phase 1 through Phase 3. Such restrictions would be based on the varying circumstances as adjudged necessary and appropriate by the Mayor and the Director of Public Works and Utilities Department.

**Table A-6: Residential Water Shortage Charges for 2016**

	Normal Water Conditions (no rate increase)	Voluntary Restrictions Phase 1	Mandatory Restrictions Phase 2	Mandatory Restrictions Phase 3	Mandatory Restrictions Catastrophic
<b>Demand Goal</b>	0%	Up to 10%	10% - 20%	20% - 30%	30% - 50%
<b>Block 1: 0 – 8 CCF (up to 6,000 gallons)</b>	\$1.344	\$1.344	\$1.559	\$1.855	\$2.873
<b>Block 2: 8 – 23 CCF (6,000 – 17,200 gallons)</b>	\$1.911	\$2.624	\$2.771	\$3.726	\$5.446

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

	Normal Water Conditions (no rate increase)	Voluntary Restrictions Phase 1	Mandatory Restrictions Phase 2	Mandatory Restrictions Phase 3	Mandatory Restrictions Catastrophic
<b>Block 3: Over 23 CCF</b> (over 17,200 gallons)	\$2.961	\$4.587	\$5.635	\$7.249	\$10.393

Source: Lincoln Water System 2017.

**Table A-7: Non-Residential Water Shortage Charges for 2016**

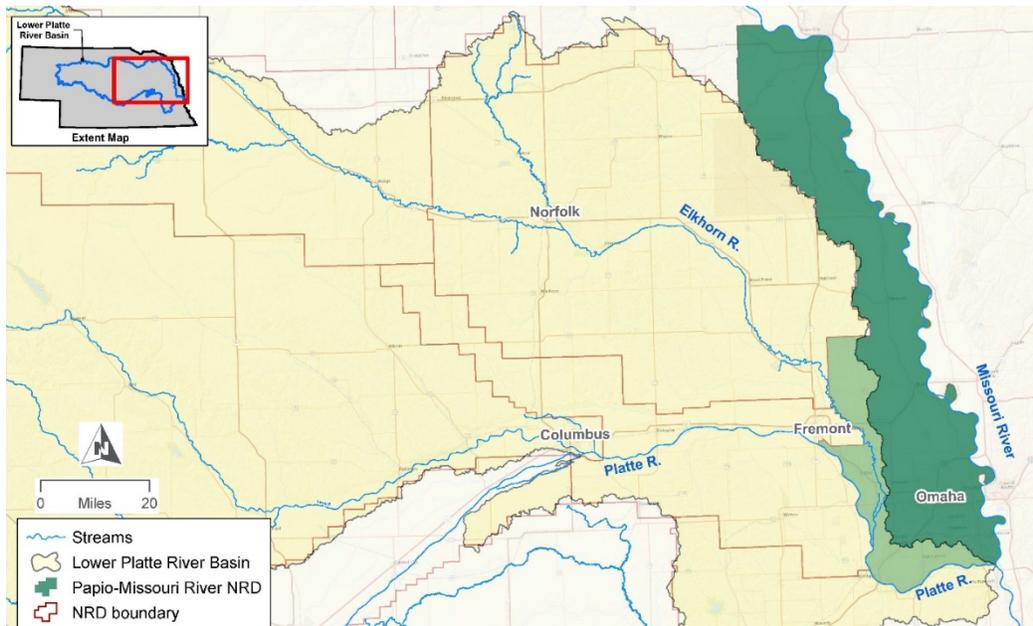
	Normal Water Conditions (no rate increase)	Voluntary Restrictions Phase 1	Mandatory Restrictions Phase 2	Mandatory Restrictions Phase 3	Mandatory Restrictions Catastrophic
<b>Demand Goal</b>	0%	Up to 10%	10% - 20%	20% - 30%	30% - 50%
<b>Block 1: 0 – 80 CCF</b>	\$1.344	\$1.496	\$1.688	\$1.934	\$2.714
<b>Block 2: Over 80 CCF</b>	\$1.911	\$2.128	\$2.400	\$2.750	\$3.858

Source: Lincoln Water System 2017.

### A.4 Papio-Missouri River Natural Resources District Current Monitoring and Response Actions

The Papio-Missouri River Natural Resources District (NRD) has a biannual static groundwater level monitoring program to establish a baseline and to continue monitoring the groundwater levels in the aquifer areas of the Papio-Missouri River NRD. Trigger levels for each alluvial monitoring well are in the process of being developed using the recommendations presented in an analysis conducted by a collaboration of Papio-Missouri River NRD, the other five NRDs, and cooperating agencies including NeDNR, UNL-CSD, and USGS (Papio-Missouri River NRD 2017). In accordance with the report, the current water levels are compared to a running average baseline with a standard deviation value. This method of comparing to running average baselines is consistent with surrounding NRD's in developing a groundwater level triggers as a basis for evaluating and responding to drought conditions. Triggers for confined aquifers will be developed as monitoring data becomes available.

**Figure A-2: Papio-Missouri River Natural Resources District**



The following levels have been established for the unconfined areas of the Papio-Missouri River NRD for drought response action:

- A Level I Groundwater Management Area (GMA) is currently established for the entire NRD. Require well permits for all pumps over 50 gallons per minute (gpm).
- A Level II GMA is established if an average of 10 percent decline in saturated thickness of an unconfined aquifer in 50 percent of the wells occurs for 3 consecutive years. Require water meters on wells that pump over 50 gpm.
- A Level III GMA will be established if an average of 15 percent decline in saturated thickness of an unconfined aquifer in 50 percent of the wells occurs for 3 consecutive years. Annual allocations to be set by the Board of Directors.

Although currently there are no areas with significant groundwater level declines, the 2017 Papio-Missouri River NRD *Groundwater Management Plan* recommends response actions based on Water Quantity Program Level designation as shown in Table A-8.

**Table A-8: Papio-Missouri River Natural Resources District Water Controls Based on Declines**

Water Quantity Control Descriptions	Level I (Entire NRD)	Level II Average 10% decline in saturated thickness of an unconfined aquifer	Level III Average 15% decline in saturated thickness of an unconfined aquifer
Offer water conservation education for rural and urban users	X	X	X
Cost-share water meters and encourage annual water use reporting	X	X	X
Require irrigation acre certification per IMP requirements	X	X	X

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

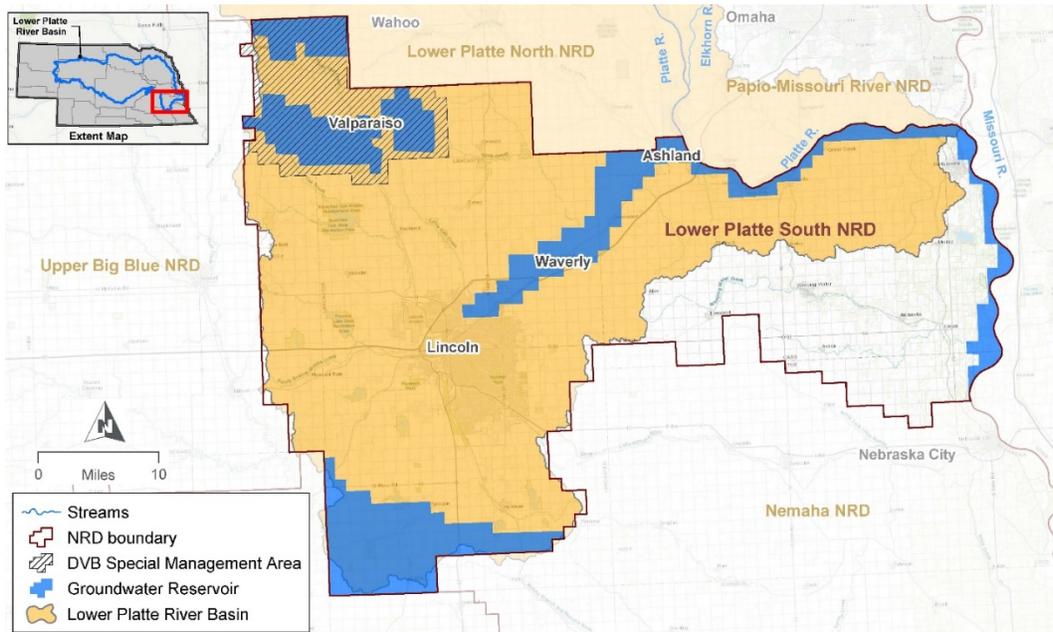
Water Quantity Control Descriptions	Level I (Entire NRD)	Level II Average 10% decline in saturated thickness of an unconfined aquifer	Level III Average 15% decline in saturated thickness of an unconfined aquifer
Limit expansion of irrigated acres per IMP requirements	X	X	X
Require minimum well spacing (600 feet from registered domestic well)	X	X	X
Require high-capacity well evaluations and permits for wells pumping greater than 300 acre-feet per year	X	X	X
Enable water banking transactions through basin-wide plan	X	X	X
Enforce irrigation runoff rules	X	X	X
Encourage water conservation through support of urban and rural cost-share programs	X	X	X
Require well permits for new wells that pump greater than 50 gpm	X	X	X
Require irrigation management certification		X	X
Require water meters and annual water use report		X	X
Evaluate effects of reducing irrigated acres		X	X
Encourage implementation of rural and urban BMPs		X	X
Require acre-inch allocations and eliminate use of end-guns on pivots			X
Require reduction of irrigated acres in selected areas			X
Require implementation of two water efficiency BMPs			X

Source: Papio-Missouri River NRD 2017

## A.5 Lower Platte South Natural Resources District Current Monitoring and Response Actions

The Lower Platte South NRD's *Groundwater Management Plan* specifies three types of areas in which Lower Platte South NRD can pursue various drought management activities. These three types of areas include Groundwater Reservoirs (GWRs), the Remaining Area (RA), and Community Water Supply Protection Areas (CWSPAs).

**Figure A-3: Lower Platte South Natural Resources District Groundwater Reservoirs**



Source: Adapted from Ehrman et. al. 2015

The Lower Platte South NRD has designated five major GWRs, as shown in Figure A-3, within the NRD with the remainder of the district designated as the RA, which generally corresponds to areas that are variable in both groundwater quality and quantity. The Lower Platte South NRD monitors the well levels in each of the GWRs.

- Lower Platte South NRD’s groundwater rules and regulations have the entire NRD designated as a Phase I Quality and Quantity Groundwater Management Area.
- A Phase II Groundwater Quantity Area is triggered when spring static water elevations in 30 percent of monitoring network wells have declined from the established upper elevation of the saturated thickness to an elevation that represents greater than or equal to a percent reduction in saturated thickness and has remained below that elevation for 2 consecutive years.
- A Phase III Groundwater Quantity is triggered when spring static water elevations in 50 percent of the monitoring network wells have declined from the established upper elevation of the saturated thickness to an elevation that represents greater than or equal to a percent reduction in saturated thickness and has remained below that elevation for 2 consecutive years.”(Ehrman et al. 2015).

Table A-9 summarizes targeted reductions in pumping associated with each phase.

**Table A-9: Lower Platte South Natural Resources District Phase II and Phase III pumping reduction triggers based on Groundwater Reservoir based on reduction in saturated thickness**

Groundwater Reservoir	Phase II (water level decline in 30% of the wells)	Phase III (water level decline in 50% of the wells)
Lower Salt Creek	15%	30%
Missouri River	8%	15%
Platte River	8%	15%
Crete-Princeton	8%	15%

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

Groundwater Reservoir	Phase II (water level decline in 30% of the wells)	Phase III (water level decline in 50% of the wells)
Dwight Valparaiso	8%	15%
Remaining Area	8%	15%

Source: Lower Platte South NRD, Groundwater Rules and Regulations 2017

Note: Lower Platte South NRD's groundwater rules and regulations have the entire NRD designated as a Phase I Quality and Quantity Groundwater Management Area.

The Lower Platte South NRD includes CWSPAs around the groundwater supply wells for the 30 public water suppliers within their jurisdiction. CWSPA boundaries correspond with the Wellhead Protection Area boundaries as delineated by the Nebraska Department of Environmental Quality (NDEQ), and are defined as the area that encompasses the 20-year time-of-travel zone around a given well-field. Lower Platte South NRD samples each public water supplier at least annually for water quality.

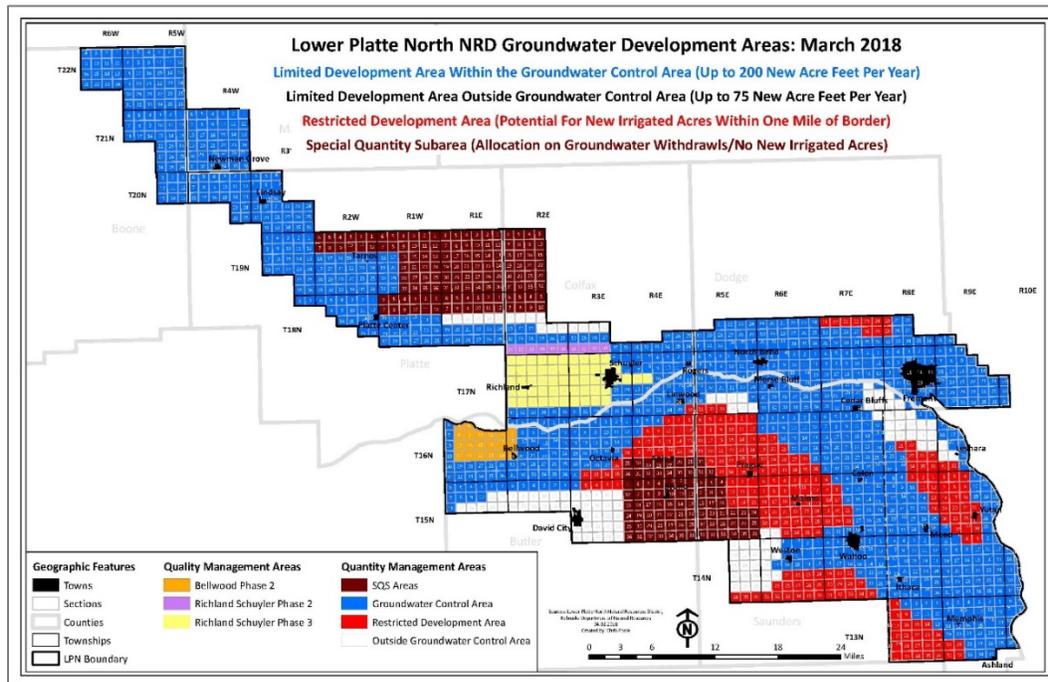
As a response to the drought conditions of 2012 and 2013, the Lower Platte South NRD created the Dwight-Valparaiso-Brainard (DVB) Special Management Area (SMA), shown in Figure A-3, and drafted new rules and regulations for the area including a stay on new irrigated acres, allocations on irrigation, required certification classes for irrigators, establishment of cost-share programs, new well depth requirements as well as formed an advisory group to evaluate progress of the SMA. The groundwater allocations on irrigated acres included 21 acre-inches per 3 years with a maximum of 9 inches applied in any 1 year for pivots or sprinklers and 30 acre-inches per 3 years with a maximum of 12 acre-inches applied in any 1 year for gravity/flood irrigation.

### A.6 Lower Platte North Natural Resources District Current Monitoring and Response Actions

The Lower Platte North NRD may designate a Special Quantity Subarea (SQS) for the protection of groundwater quantity in a portion of the district where additional controls are deemed necessary. Additional controls in these areas may include stays on new irrigation wells, allocations, mandatory education classes for irrigators, well metering for all wells pumping greater than 50 gpm, mandatory acre certification, and static level measurements semi-annually (spring and summer).

There are currently two SQS areas in the Lower Platte North NRD, Butler/Saunders County SQS and Colfax/Platte County SQS; both of which have groundwater allocations based on a 3-year Rolling Allocation (Figure A-4). The Rolling Allocation shall specify the total number of acre-inches of irrigation water per irrigated acre for the rolling term. If the Lower Platte North NRD Board of Directors fails to adopt a Rolling Allocation by December of any given year, the Rolling Allocation for the following 3-year term shall be 27 acre-inches per irrigated acre. The Board may establish timing or rotation restrictions for the SQS.

**Figure A-4: Lower Platte North Natural Resources District Special Quantity Subareas**



Source: Map provided by Lower Platte North NRD (obtained 2018)

Additionally, the Lower Platte North NRD maintains a groundwater management plan (Lower Platte North NRD 2018). This groundwater management plan sets criteria for establishing Level 1, 2, and 3 areas based on groundwater trigger levels.

### Level I Criteria

Level I aquifer management areas are designated for the entire Lower Platte North NRD. As more information becomes available, subareas shall be further refined. Any changes in water use, location of water use, number of gallons pumped, or changes in water source shall be reviewed and approved by the Lower Platte North NRD before those changes can take effect. Due to hydrologic conditions, Lower Platte North NRD monitoring wells are not to be located on municipal well-field property.

### Level II Criteria

#### Confined Aquifer

- Unconfined aquifer management subareas are to be designated within the Lower Platte North NRD’s when conditions indicate a 10 percent drop in the saturated thickness of the aquifer.
- Assessment of percentage drop will be calculated using the spring readings of Lower Platte North NRD monitoring wells over a consecutive 3-year period assessed against the 1987 baseline groundwater levels or a more recent baseline year groundwater level, adopted by the Lower Platte North NRD Board of Directors and revised in the Groundwater Management Rules and Regulations.
- When greater than 50 percent of the area within a subarea has reached, or exceeded the trigger level, then a Level II management area can be established. Assessment of the percentage of a sub-area will be determined by applying an area-weighting method to Lower Platte North NRD groundwater monitoring wells.

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

- After the establishment of a Level II Area, if groundwater levels should recover, two consecutive spring readings below the trigger levels are needed before the Groundwater Quantity Management Area could be placed as a Level I management area.

### **Unconfined Aquifer**

- Confined aquifer management subareas are to be designated within the Lower Platte North NRD when conditions, indicate a 7 percent drop in potentiometric-aquifer thickness.
- Assessment of percentage drop will be calculated using the spring readings of Lower Platte North NRD's monitoring wells over a consecutive 3-year period assessed against the 1987 baseline groundwater levels or a more recent baseline year groundwater level, adopted by the Lower Platte North NRD Board of Directors and revised in the Groundwater Management Rules and Regulations.
- When greater than 50 percent of the area within a subarea has reached, or exceeded the trigger level, then a Level II management area can be established.
- Assessment of the percentage of a sub-area will be determined by applying an area-weighting method to Lower Platte North NRD's groundwater monitoring wells.
- After the establishment of a Level II Area, if groundwater levels should recover, two consecutive spring readings below the trigger levels are needed before the Groundwater Quantity Management Area could be placed as a Level I management area.

### **Level III Criteria**

#### **Unconfined Aquifer**

- Unconfined aquifer management subareas are to be designated within the Lower Platte North NRD when conditions indicate a 15 percent drop or greater in the saturated thickness of the aquifer.
- Assessment of percentage drop will be calculated using the spring readings of Lower Platte North NRD's monitoring wells over a consecutive 3-year period assessed against the 1987 baseline groundwater levels or a more recent baseline year groundwater level, adopted by the Lower Platte North NRD Board of Directors and revised in the Groundwater Management Rules and Regulations.
- When greater than 50 percent of the area within a subarea has reached or exceeded the trigger level, then a Level III management area can be established. Assessment of the percentage of a sub-area will be determined by applying an area-weighting method to Lower Platte North NRD groundwater monitoring wells.
- After the establishment of a Level III Area, if groundwater levels should recover, two consecutive spring readings below the trigger levels are needed before the Groundwater Quantity Management Area could be placed as a Level II or Level I management area.

#### **Confined Aquifer**

- Confined aquifer management subareas are to be designated within the Lower Platte North NRD when conditions, indicate a 10 percent or greater drop in the potentiometric-aquifer thickness.
- Assessment of percentage drop will be calculated using the spring readings of Lower Platte North NRD monitoring wells over a consecutive 3-year period assessed against the 1987 baseline groundwater levels or a more recent baseline year groundwater level, adopted by the Lower Platte North NRD Board of Directors and revised in the Groundwater Management Rules and Regulations.
- When greater than 50 percent of the area within a subarea has reached or exceeded the trigger level, then a Level III management area can be established. Assessment of the percentage of a

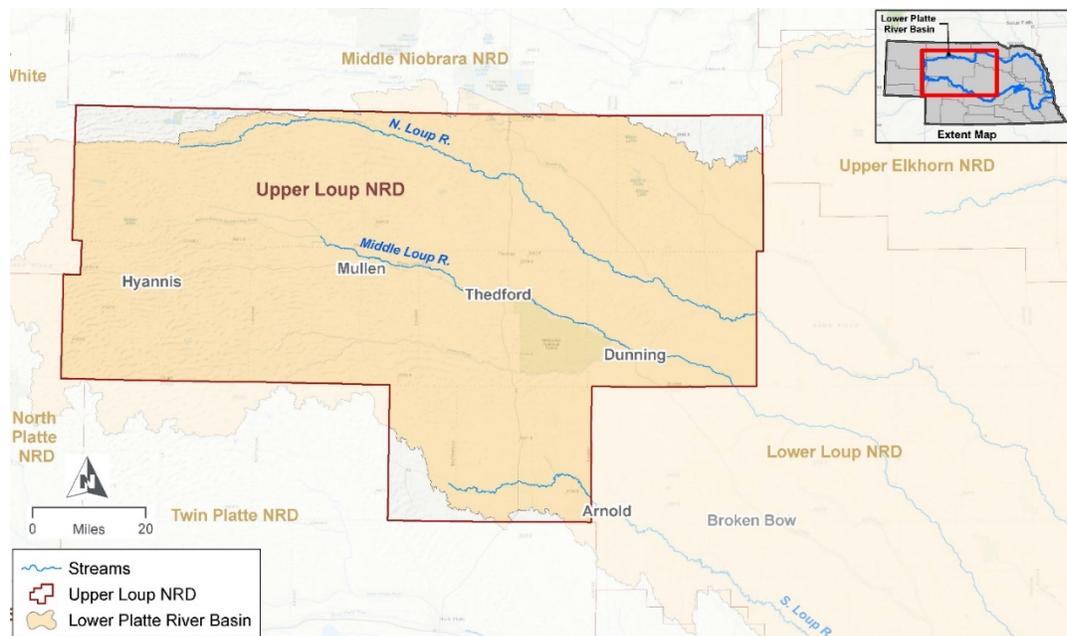
sub-area will be determined by applying an area-weighting method to Lower Platte North NRD groundwater monitoring wells.

- After the establishment of a Level III Area, if groundwater levels should recover, two consecutive spring readings below the trigger levels are needed before the Groundwater Quantity Management Area could be placed as a Level II or Level I management area.

## A.7 Upper Loup Natural Resources District Current Monitoring and Response Actions

The Upper Loup NRD is located in the Sandhills and there is very little irrigation within the Upper Loup NRD. The Upper Loup NRD has an active groundwater quality monitoring program and has the ability to designate an area with impacted water quality as a Phase 1, Phase 2, or Phase 3 area depending on severity.

**Figure A-5: Upper Loup Natural Resources District**



The Upper Loup NRD monitors groundwater quantity through a monitoring well network. Network wells are measured each spring. The Upper Loup NRD has the ability to implement the following measures to protect groundwater quantity; however, no specific triggers have been identified to trigger these actions:

1. Establish a sub-area;
2. Temporary moratorium on new irrigated acres in the established sub-area; and
3. Initiate a study during which, as a minimum, water levels in surrounding wells will be measured to determine the severity, the geographical extent, and the boundaries of the affected area.

The Upper Loup NRD will offer workable solutions and/or voluntary controls, by which any water quantity problems may be addressed. Solutions may include but not limited to the following:

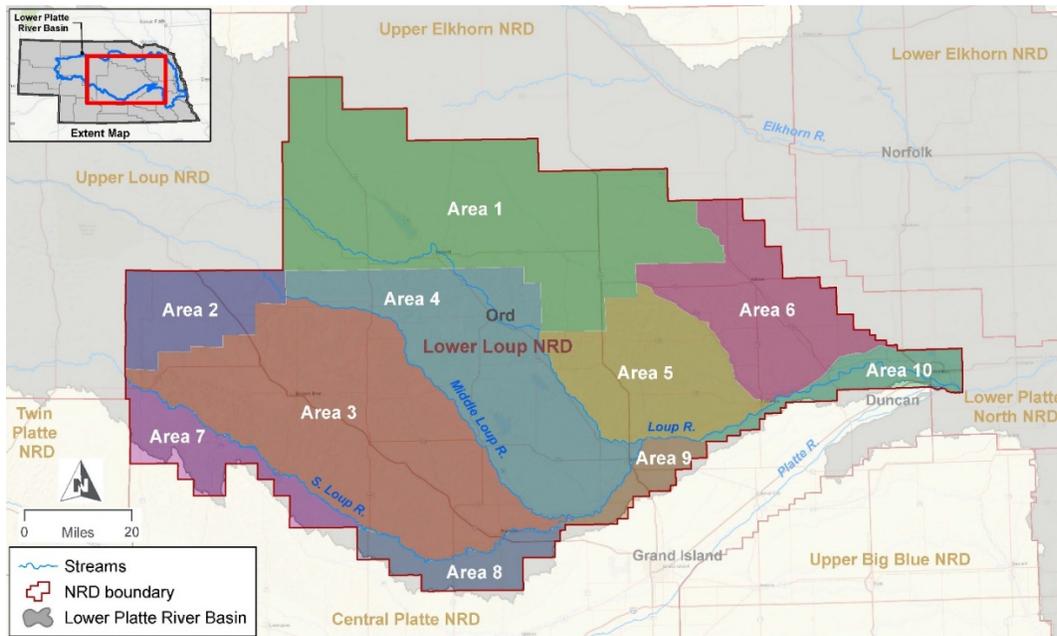
- irrigation scheduling,
- reduction of irrigated acres,
- adopt a system of rotation of use of groundwater,
- allocate groundwater withdraw on an acre-inch basis, and
- any other reasonable regulations to protect the quantity of groundwater in the sub-area.

## A.8 Lower Loup Natural Resources District Current Monitoring and Response Actions

The Lower Loup NRD is divided into 28 Groundwater Quality Management Sub-Areas. Each Sub-Area may be subject to water quality controls in three separate Phases. Each phase is dependent on median nitrate nitrogen levels. Prior to any Sub-Area entering a higher or lower water quality control phase, a public hearing shall be held by the Board of Directors. The entire Lower Loup Natural Resources District Groundwater Management Area is a designated Phase I.

The Lower Loup NRD is divided into 10 Groundwater Quantity Management Sub-Areas (Figure A-6). The criteria for groundwater management is established in the Lower Loup NRD Groundwater Management Plan of 1985.

**Figure A-6: Lower Loup NRD Water Quantity Areas**



Source: Adapted from Lower Loup NRD Groundwater Management Plan 1985

As part of the Lower Loup NRD Groundwater Management Plan (Lower Loup NRD 1985):

1. The Lower Loup NRD adopted the Spring 1982 static water levels as the base line top of the groundwater reservoir;
2. Adopted 10 subdivisions as areas in which management plans will be implemented under declining conditions;
3. Continue monitoring within the Lower Loup NRD. In the event any well or group of wells has maintained a 10-foot decline below the Spring 1982 base line for 3 consecutive years, it shall be designated as a critical well or wells;
4. In all areas with a designated critical well, the Lower Loup NRD will expand the static well monitoring program to provide needed data for management area designation;
5. The Lower Loup NRD will simultaneously, with #3 notify water users within a 36 square mile area projecting 3 miles in all directions of the critical well or wells of the conditions. The Lower Loup NRD shall then assess the land use, water usage, number of active irrigation wells, and any other pertinent factors to make recommendations on voluntary water conservation practices;

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

6. In any groundwater reservoir that has a saturated thickness of less than 100 feet, the trigger to begin the process in #3 shall be 10 percent of the saturated thickness;
7. In the case of #3 or #5, if declines continue at the rate to equal 30 percent of the initial decline in the critical well and in other wells within the 36 square mile area over a 3-year period, the Lower Loup NRD shall establish a groundwater management area. Said management area shall extend not less than an area projecting 9 miles in all directions from any critical well or wells. In no case will management area boundaries cross into adjacent subdivisions or NRDs. Boundaries greater than 9 miles in radius can be adopted at the Lower Loup NRD's discretion;
8. In the case where declines appear to cross NRD boundaries, the affected NRDs shall be notified of the conditions and the Lower Loup NRD's actions;
9. Once a groundwater management area has been established, through due process, the Lower Loup NRD may require a combination of any of the following options:
  - a. Well spacing
  - b. Require water meters and report usage
  - c. Develop an allocation system for groundwater withdrawal
  - d. Adopt a system of rotation among groundwater users
  - e. Initiate complaints for improper runoff
  - f. With concurrence from the Nebraska Department of Natural Resources, establish groundwater control areas with the possibility of invoking well drilling moratoriums
10. Management area designations for subdivisions 7, 8, 9, and that part of 10 south of the Loup River will be established through coordination with the Central Platte NRD. The Lower Loup NRD reserves the right to exercise independent judgment if it determines that the management options proposed are too lenient or severe;
11. At any time it becomes apparent to the Lower Loup NRD that a management area designation will not bring declines into conformance with the goals of their Groundwater Management Plan, the Lower Loup NRD will take appropriate actions to create a control area in accordance with the appropriate statutes.

## A.9 Lower Elkhorn Natural Resources District Current Monitoring and Response Actions

The Lower Elkhorn NRD manages groundwater through its 2015 Groundwater Management Plan. Additionally, Lower Elkhorn NRD published its Drought Management Plan in 2017.

The Lower Elkhorn NRD Drought Management Plan includes Drought Monitoring using the Palmer Drought Severity Index (PDSI) and Standardized Precipitation Index (SPI) in addition to monitoring streamflows at specific locations and groundwater levels through its monitoring program.

Streamflow locations are USGS gages for Elkhorn River at West Point, Elkhorn River at Norfolk, Logan Creek near Uehling, and North Fork Elkhorn River near Pierce, Nebraska. Historical data from each stream as collected and measurements were separated by month in order to establish drought indicators. Percentiles were calculated by month to account for the rivers' natural fluctuation throughout the year and period of record.

Lower Elkhorn NRD monitors groundwater quantity by measuring the depth of the groundwater in approximately 240 privately owned irrigation wells each spring in addition to transducers deployed in the Lower Elkhorn NRD monitoring well network. Historical groundwater level data from Lower Elkhorn NRD's transducers was collected and separated by month. Monthly percentiles were calculated in order to account for the typical fluctuation in groundwater levels throughout the calendar year.

Table A-10 shows the drought categories and criteria used by the Lower Elkhorn NRD.

**Table A-10: Lower Elkhorn Natural Resources District Drought Monitoring Tool**

Drought Level	PDSI	SPI 1, 3, 6, 12	Streamflow (West Point, Norfolk, Uehling, and Pierce)	Groundwater
<b>Drought Watch</b>	-2.00 to -2.99	<-1.0 and >-1.5 for all timescales	Streamflows between the 25th and 10th percentile	Groundwater level between the 25th and 10th percentile
<b>Drought Warning</b>	-3.00 to -3.99	<-1.5 and >-2.0 for all timescales	Streamflows between the 10th and 5th percentile	Groundwater level between the 10th and 5th percentile
<b>Drought Emergency</b>	-4.00 and below	<-2.0 for all timescales	Streamflows below the 5th percentile	Groundwater level below the 5th percentile

Source: Lower Elkhorn NRD 2017

PDSI = Palmer Drought Severity Index; SPI = Standardized Precipitation Index.

The current Groundwater Management Plans existing triggers do not provide protection of in-season groundwater level declines.

Lower Elkhorn NRD’s Groundwater Management Plan provides guidance for managing both groundwater quantity and quality as described in the following sections.

### Groundwater Quantity Management

Triggers for groundwater quantity protection consist of several phases, called action levels, which respond to worsening conditions with increasingly rigorous corrective measures. Each action level has its own triggering mechanism, so that changing conditions will trigger new action levels.

Flexibility has been built into the triggers and action levels because of the complex hydrogeology of the district. The current triggers and actions are used for the entire district, which may be too protective in some areas and may under-protect other areas. As our knowledge of the district's hydrogeology increases, the triggering mechanisms and actions will be 'fine-tuned' to improve the effectiveness of our groundwater quantity protection efforts. The Lower Elkhorn NRD will develop unique triggers and actions for different regions of the district as more local hydrogeologic information becomes available.

Action Level 1: The Lower Elkhorn NRD will initiate the following actions when, in 2 years of any 3-year period, the spring groundwater level of any well in the routine groundwater quantity monitoring program drops 15 or more feet below predevelopment estimates for groundwater levels in that area. When this trigger is actuated, the Lower Elkhorn NRD will take the following actions:

1. Intensify educational efforts in the area including, but not limited to, information concerning:
  - a. Groundwater conservation practices;
  - b. Potential regulatory actions of the 2nd and 3rd Action Levels (see below);
  - c. The status of the groundwater supply in the area.
2. Formation of a local citizen's advisory committee.
3. Increase the number of wells monitored in the area to determine the extent of the problem, to serve as a basis for triggering Action Level 2, and to obtain the hydrogeologic information necessary to delineate a management area. The intensified monitoring program described below applies to the entire district. The actual monitoring program for each problem area may vary according to the local hydrogeologic characteristics of the area.

The district will determine a rudimentary area to be monitored. The shape and size of the area may change as more information is gathered. A minimum area of 9 square miles will be monitored.

- a. The minimum number of monitoring sites will be 50 percent of the number of registered irrigation wells in the area that are suitable for use as groundwater level observation wells (taking into account criteria such as quality of well construction and screened intervals). The district will also consider using registered industrial, livestock, monitoring, observation, public water supply, and domestic wells that would be suitable as monitoring sites.

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

- b. The intensified monitoring will begin no later than the spring after the trigger was actuated for Action Level 1.
  - c. If, after 5 years of the intensified monitoring, the trigger for Action Level 2 has not been actuated, the district may return to the routine groundwater level monitoring program for the area.
4. Determine the necessary control measures, rules, and regulations for Action Levels 2 and 3.

Action Level 2: An area will be placed into Action Level 2 when the spring groundwater levels in 80 percent of the wells monitored in the intensified monitoring program conducted in Action Level 1 drop 15 or more feet below predevelopment estimates for groundwater levels in those wells for 3 years out of any 4-year period of time. The area affected by this drop must be a minimum of 9 square miles in size.

- a. The Lower Elkhorn NRD will actively seek public opinion while developing the rules and regulations for the area.
- b. The district will require volume metering of wells used for any or all of the following categories of groundwater use: domestic, agricultural, manufacturing, commercial, or industrial.
- c. The district will also require owners of these wells to submit an annual report to the district.

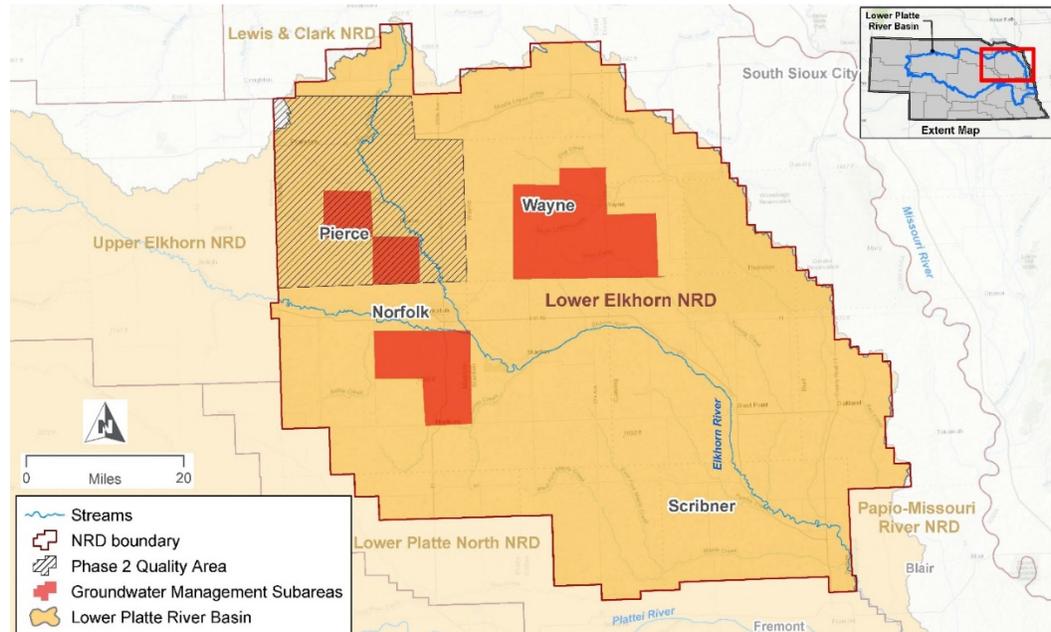
Additionally, the district will choose at least one of the following authorized controls:

- a. Allocate groundwater withdrawal on an acre-inch basis, specifying the total number of acre-inches of irrigation water per irrigated acre per year or an average number of acre-inches of irrigation water per irrigated acre over any reasonable period of time not to exceed 5 years.
- b. Adopt a system of rotation of use of groundwater by utilizing a recurring series of use and nonuse of irrigation wells on an hourly, daily, weekly, or monthly basis or of irrigated acres on an annual basis.
- c. Adopt well spacing requirements
- d. Require the reduction of irrigated acres, where the nonuse of irrigated acres will be a uniform percentage reduction of each landowner's irrigated acres.
- e. Require the use of flow meters on wells.
- f. Require best management practices including irrigation scheduling.
- g. Require groundwater users to submit annual reports to the district. The district will also continue the educational efforts and the groundwater level monitoring of Action Level 1.

Action Level 3: An area will be placed into Action Level 3 when the spring groundwater levels in 80 percent of the wells monitored in Action Level 2 drop 20 or more feet below predevelopment estimates for groundwater levels in those wells for 3 years out of any 4-year period of time. The area affected must be a minimum of 9 square miles in size. In addition to any of the controls of Action Level 2, the district may require any of the following controls for an Action Level 3 area:

- a. Require the use of tensiometers, soil moisture blocks, or other irrigation scheduling devices.
- b. Require annual reports with water level measurements and quantifying the total withdrawal from wells.
- c. Close the area to the issuance of any additional new well permits for a period of one year. The district will also continue the educational efforts and the groundwater level monitoring of the first two Action Levels.
- d. The Lower Elkhorn NRD has three (3) Quantity Subareas with allocations: 1) Eastern Madison County Quantity Subarea; 2) Wayne County Quantity Subarea; and 3) Pierce County.

**Figure A-7: Lower Elkhorn Natural Resources District Groundwater Management Areas**



Source: Adapted from Lower Elkhorn NRD Groundwater Management Plan (LENRD 2015)

## Groundwater Quality Management

The Lower Elkhorn NRD maintaining a network of 81 irrigation wells for the district-wide groundwater quality monitoring that are on a 5-year sampling cycle. Specialized monitoring is also performed to evaluate local conditions on a concentrated basis.

The Lower Elkhorn NRD groundwater quality portion of the management area will be divided into subareas to more effectively manage areas where different conditions exist (such as areas with high or low groundwater contamination concentrations, different soil types, or different land uses). Borders for these subareas will be determined primarily, but not exclusively, by groundwater contamination concentration. These subareas will be referred to as phases. An area may move from one phase to another (either up or down) according to groundwater concentration and/or any of the listed additional criteria that are deemed appropriate by the Board. Borders for the subareas will follow either natural or political boundaries. NRDs are required to address all nonpoint source contaminants in their groundwater management plans. Because of the diversity of potential nonpoint source contaminants that the management area could address, the controls listed in this section are somewhat generic. This is so that contaminants other than nitrate-nitrogen may be addressed if necessary.

For those contaminants that have an established Maximum Contaminant Level, the following criteria and controls will be used to delineate and treat subareas (the subareas will be called 'phases'):

Phase 1 Area: Areas that are not designated as either Phase 2 or Phase 3.

- a. Persons installing new wells must obtain a permit from the NRD in accordance with § 46-659.
- b. The district will encourage operators to attend educational programs sponsored by the district concerning the contaminant (such as fertilizer and irrigation water management), to perform deep soil testing for the contaminant(s), to test irrigation water for the contaminant(s) and to submit an annual report (similar to the report required in phases 2 and 3) to the district.

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

Phase 2 Area: Areas that have from 50 percent to 90 percent of the Maximum Contaminant Level for a contaminant. An area will be placed into a Phase 2 area when at least 20 percent of the registered wells in an area are at or above the trigger level and the contamination is the result of nonpoint source groundwater contamination. Phase 2 areas must be a minimum of 9 square miles in size.

- a. Persons installing new wells must obtain a permit from the NRD in accordance with § 46-659.
- b. All operators applying fertilizer or (other possible sources of contaminants that the management area is addressing) must attend educational programs sponsored by the district.
- c. Soil must be tested for residual quantities of the contaminant(s) (such as nitrate-nitrogen).
- d. Irrigation water must be tested for the contaminant(s) (such as nitrate-nitrogen).
- e. All operators applying fertilizer or (other possible sources of contaminants that the management area is addressing) must periodically submit reports to the district that will include soil test results, irrigation water test results, and other information required by the Board of Directors.
- f. Contaminants other than nitrate-nitrogen may require controls that are different from those listed above for Phase 2 areas.

If these controls will not be effective in preventing or remediating groundwater contaminant(s) other than nitrate-nitrogen, the Board of Directors may choose to not use some or all of the controls listed above.

Phase 3 Area: Areas with greater than 90 percent of the Maximum Contaminant Level for a contaminant. An area will be placed into a Phase 3 area after being in a Phase 2 area for a minimum of 5 years, and when 50 percent of the registered wells in the area are at or above the trigger level. Phase 3 areas must be a minimum of 9 square miles in size.

- a. Persons installing new wells must obtain a permit from the NRD in accordance with § 46-659.
- b. All operators applying fertilizer or (other possible sources of contaminants that the management area is addressing) must attend educational programs sponsored by the district.
- c. Soil must be tested for residual quantities of the contaminant(s) (such as nitrate-nitrogen).
- d. Irrigation water must be tested for the contaminant(s) (such as nitrate nitrogen).
- e. All operators applying fertilizer or (other possible sources of contaminants that the management area is addressing) must submit a report to the district that includes soil test results, irrigation water test results, and other information required by the Board of Directors annually.
- f. All irrigation wells must have the volume output certified by the district.
- g. All irrigators must employ some form of irrigation scheduling
- h. Contaminants other than nitrate-nitrogen may require controls that are different from those listed above for Phase 3 areas.

If these controls will not be effective in preventing or remediating groundwater contaminant(s) other than nitrate-nitrogen, the Board of Directors may choose to not use some or all of the controls listed above.

Additional criteria: The district Board of Directors, at its discretion, may designate an area as, or include an area in, either Phase 2 or Phase 3, when the triggers are not met, under the following conditions:

- 1) Areas with similar soil and land use conditions as an existing Phase 2 or Phase 3 area.
- 2) Areas that may be vulnerable to groundwater contamination.
- 3) Areas that have vadose zone contamination that indicates a potential for groundwater contamination.
- 4) Areas that are within Public Water Supply Wellhead Protection Areas.
- 5) Other areas deemed necessary by the Board of Directors consistent with the Groundwater Reservoir Life Goal and the Nebraska Groundwater Management and Protection Act.

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

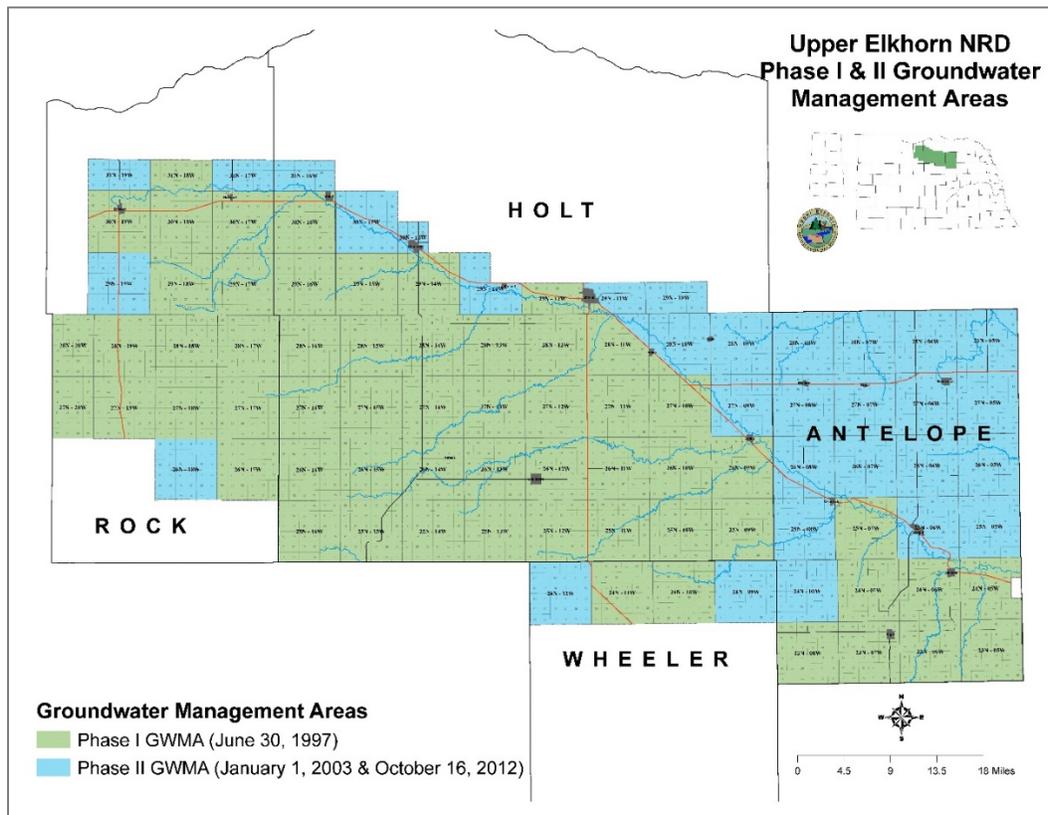
Additional Controls: Any of the following controls may be required by the Board of Directors in a Phase 1, Phase 2, or Phase 3 area if deemed necessary to fulfill the Groundwater Reservoir Life Goal:

- a. All operators applying fertilizer or (other possible sources of contaminants that the management area is addressing) must attend educational programs sponsored by the district.
- b. Soil must be tested for residual quantities of the contaminant(s) (such as nitrate-nitrogen).
- c. Irrigation water must be tested for the contaminant(s) (such as nitrate nitrogen).
- d. Using realistic yield goals
- e. Irrigation water scheduling.
- f. Meter irrigation water application volume.
- g. Ban fall and/or winter fertilizer application.
- h. Require the use of nitrification inhibitors.
- i. Allowing nutrient credit for legume crops.
- j. Performing chemical and/or physical analysis of contaminant sources being land applied (such as manure, compost, sewage sludge, and other waste products).
- k. Allowing nutrient credit for manure, compost, sewage sludge, and other waste products.
- l. Performing nutrient analysis of manure, compost, sewage sludge, and other waste products. Confined animal production facilities must prepare and implement a plan for the disposal of animal wastes that determines the amount of manure that will be land applied, the area of land required for that amount of manure (complying with UNL recommendations), and the location(s) of that area of land.

### **A.10 Upper Elkhorn Natural Resources District Current Monitoring and Response Actions**

The Upper Elkhorn NRD measures the static water level in approximately 380 wells annually to keep track of water quantity across the NRD. The Upper Elkhorn NRD also has an extensive water quality monitoring network throughout the NRD. The Upper Elkhorn NRD samples approximately 600 irrigation wells annually for nitrate-nitrogen, and 58 dedicated monitoring wells for nitrate-nitrogen and selected pesticides.

**Figure A-8: Upper Elkhorn Natural Resources Phase II Management Areas**



Source: Upper Elkhorn NRD Phase II Area Map (downloaded 2018)

## Groundwater Quality

The Upper Elkhorn NRD manages groundwater quality through the three phases that are based on nitrate-nitrogen levels. The entire Upper Elkhorn NRD was designated a Phase I Groundwater Quality Management Area.

## Groundwater Quantity

The Upper Elkhorn NRD has developed sub-districts throughout the Upper Elkhorn NRD management area to manage groundwater. As part of such management, Upper Elkhorn NRD has determined a baseline static water level within each of the sub-districts, which will be the lowest static water level reading prior to 2014.

### Triggering Mechanisms:

- 1) When spring static water levels within a sub-district are determined to be between 24 inches and 12 inches above the lowest spring reading, the following shall occur:
  - a) The Upper Elkhorn NRD will conduct an informational and educational campaign for landowners that own and operate irrigation distribution systems that are supplied by individual or commingled high capacity wells yielding more than 50 gpm. Landowners will be informed within that sub-district that this level has been reached and upon subsequent spring static water level readings, additional regulations may be warranted the following year.
  - b) Historical certified irrigated acres that were not being irrigated by groundwater prior to this trigger will not be allowed to be developed for irrigation as long as these criteria are met.

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

- 2) When spring static water levels in a sub-district are determined to be within 12 inches above the lowest spring static reading, the following shall occur:
  - a) Flowmeters will be required on 10 percent of the landowner's irrigation distribution systems within that sub-district that are supplied by individual or commingled high capacity wells yielding more than 50 gpm.
  - b) Installation of flowmeters must be installed to manufacturer's specifications. A legal description must be submitted to Upper Elkhorn NRD and flowmeters must be installed by December 31 of the current year of meeting the above static water level.
  - c) If the groundwater irrigation distribution system owner owns less than 10 groundwater irrigation distribution systems, they will be required to install one flowmeter if the above criteria is met.
  - d) If the groundwater irrigation distribution system owner already has 10 percent of their groundwater irrigation distribution systems equipped with flowmeters within this sub-district, this requirement will be satisfied.
  - e) Flowmeter readings will need to be submitted to Upper Elkhorn NRD by December 31 each year on forms developed by Upper Elkhorn NRD and may be spot-checked for compliance.
  - f) Any groundwater irrigation distribution system that is currently equipped or is to be equipped with a flowmeter must certify their irrigated acres if they have not already been certified.
  - g) Historical groundwater certified irrigated acres that were not being irrigated prior to this trigger will not be allowed to be developed for irrigation as long as the above criteria is met.
- 3) When spring static water levels in a sub-district remain and are determined to be within 12 inches above the lowest spring static reading in subsequent or non-subsequent years, the following shall occur:
  - a) Flowmeters will be required on an additional 10 percent of the landowner's irrigation distribution systems within that sub-district that are supplied by individual or commingled high capacity wells yielding more than 50 gpm.
  - b) Installation of flowmeters must be installed to manufacturer's specifications. A legal description must be submitted to Upper Elkhorn NRD and flowmeters must be installed by December 31 of the current year of meeting the above static water level.
  - c) If the groundwater irrigation distribution system owner owns less than 10 groundwater irrigation distribution systems, they will be required to install an additional flowmeter within this sub-district.
  - d) Flowmeter readings will need to be submitted to Upper Elkhorn NRD by December 31 each year on forms developed by Upper Elkhorn NRD and may be spot-checked for compliance.
  - e) Historical groundwater certified irrigated acres that were not being irrigated prior to this trigger will not be allowed to be developed for irrigation as long as the above criteria is met.
- 4) When spring static water levels in a sub-district are determined to be 12 inches above the lowest reading, the flowmeter installation requirement will discontinue until the spring static water levels are determined to be within 12 inches above the lowest static water level reading.
- 5) When spring static water levels in a sub-district are determined to be within 12 inches below the lowest spring static water level reading, the following shall occur:
  - a) Flowmeters will be required on 60 percent of the landowner's irrigation distribution systems within that sub-district that are supplied by individual or commingled high capacity wells yielding more than 50 gpm.
  - b) Installation of flowmeters must be installed to manufacturer's specifications. A legal description must be submitted to Upper Elkhorn NRD and flowmeters must be installed by December 31 of the current year of meeting the above static water level.
  - c) Flowmeter readings will need to be submitted to Upper Elkhorn NRD by December 31 each year on forms developed by Upper Elkhorn NRD and maybe spot-checked for compliance.
  - d) Historical groundwater certified irrigated acres that were not being irrigated prior to this trigger will not be allowed to be developed for irrigation as long as the above criteria is met.

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

- 6) When spring static water levels in a sub-district remain and are determined to be within 12 inches below the lowest spring static reading in subsequent or non-subsequent years, the following shall occur:
  - a) Flowmeters will be required on 100 percent of the landowner's irrigation distribution systems within that sub-district that are supplied by individual or commingled high capacity wells yielding more than 50 gpm. No allocation will be implemented at this time.
  - b) Installation of flowmeters must be installed to manufacturer's specifications. A legal description must be submitted to Upper Elkhorn NRD and flowmeters must be installed by December 31 of the current year of meeting the above static water level.
- 7) When the spring static water levels in a sub-district are determined to be below 12 inches of the lowest spring static water level reading, then an allocation system will be implemented within that sub-district and the following shall occur:
  - a) Flowmeters will be required on 100 percent of the landowner's irrigation distribution systems within that sub-district that are supplied by individual or commingled high capacity wells yielding more than 50 gpm.
  - b) Installation of flowmeters must be installed to manufacturer's specifications. A legal description must be submitted to Upper Elkhorn NRD and flowmeters must be installed by December 31 of the current year of meeting the above static water level.
  - c) Variances may be granted upon a demonstration of good cause.
  - d) Allocations will be allotted the following year of the spring reading reaching this static water level. Each groundwater certified irrigation distribution system will be allocated for a period of 5 years and receive 75 acre inches.
  - e) Flowmeter readings will need to be submitted to Upper Elkhorn NRD by December 31 each year on forms developed by Upper Elkhorn NRD and may be spot-checked for compliance.
  - f) Historical groundwater certified irrigated acres that were not being irrigated prior to this trigger will not be allowed to be developed for irrigation as long as the above criteria is met.
- 8) When spring static water levels in a sub-district are determined to be below 12 inches of the lowest spring static water level in one spring static water level measuring cycle, the following shall occur:
  - a) Flowmeters will be required on 100 percent of the landowner's irrigation distribution systems within that sub-district that are supplied by individual or commingled high capacity wells yielding more than 50 gpm and an allocation will be enforced on all groundwater irrigation distribution systems within the sub-district.
  - b) Allocations will be allotted the following year of the spring reading reaching this static water level.
  - c) Allocations will be maintained for a minimum of 5 years. Any time within this period the Upper Elkhorn NRD board of directors reserves the right to adjust the allocation amount based on static water levels, trend lines, and weather conditions.
  - d) Flowmeter readings will need to be submitted to Upper Elkhorn NRD by December 31 each year on forms developed by Upper Elkhorn NRD and may be spot-checked for compliance.
  - e) Historical groundwater certified irrigated acres that were not being irrigated prior to this trigger will not be allowed to be developed for irrigation as long as the above criteria is met.
- 9) Upon static water levels reaching Subpart 8 above:
  - a) Expansion of groundwater irrigated acres will not be allowed.
  - b) Each groundwater certified irrigation distribution system will be allocated for a period of 5 years and receive 75 acre inches.
  - c) New helper wells will not be allowed once a sub-district has been determined to be triggered.
  - d) Transfers of historical or active groundwater irrigated acres will not be allowed.
  - e) Inactive certified historical acres that are not currently irrigated upon a sub-district being triggered will not receive an allocation.
  - f) Historical certified irrigated acres that began irrigating within the five years prior to being triggered will only receive 15 acre inches multiplied by the number of years documented by

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

- Farm Service Agency or County Assessor records. (For example, if documentation demonstrates land was irrigated 3 out of the previous 5 years, such land would receive only 45 acre inches for the 5-year allocation starting the year it was triggered.)
- g) Situations where groundwater historical irrigated acres are utilized to complete circle or add to a certified irrigation distribution system will be calculated as such. I. (For example, if 5 acres were added to a 127-acre pivot and 3 years' worth of documentation are available, 5 acres x 45 inches = 225 acre inches. 127 acres have 75 acre inches, or 9,525 acre inches. So, add (225 acre in + 9,525 acre in) /132 acres = 73.86 acre inches for the 5-year allocation.)
  - h) Balance of allocations will be based on an annual allocation of 15 acre inches.
  - i) Once levels rise two feet above the lowest level, the Upper Elkhorn NRD Board will decide as to whether a sub-district can sustain more consumptive use and determine if groundwater historical acres that are not being currently irrigated will be allowed to be irrigated.
  - j) Allocation Carry-Over:
    - i) Any unused allocation at the end of the 5-year period would only be allowed to carry 5 acre inches into the next allocation. (Starting with a new 75 acre inch allocation + 5 acre inches of carry over = 80 acre inches for next 5-year time period.)
    - ii) Landowners would have to notify on a form provided by Upper Elkhorn NRD the amount and location where a portion of an allocation is to be moved. This notification would have to occur by January 15 of each year.
    - iii) Moving of allocation as stated above would only be allowed when:
      - (1) Properties are within the same ownership;
      - (2) Within sub-districts developed by Upper Elkhorn NRD; and
      - (3) Are to a lower stream depletion factor within the same hydrologic unit code (HUC) within the same sub-district. Allocation would be allowed to move within 2 miles of adjacent HUC meeting above criteria.
  - k) Penalties:
    - i) At the end of the 5-year allocation, any amount of groundwater used over the 75 acre inch allocation will be rounded to the next consecutive inch, multiplied by 5, and subtracted from the next new subsequent allocation.
    - ii) If the district removes the sub-district from an allocation, those groundwater irrigation distribution systems that was to be penalized by a reduction will remain with an allocation for another year. This 1-year allocation will be based on the annual 15 acre inch allocation minus the penalty. (For example, if a landowner used 1.2 acre inches more than the 75 acre inch allocation, 1.2 acre inches rounded to 2 acre inches times 5 equals 10 acre inches. 15 acre inches (annual) minus 10 acre inches (penalty) = 5 acre inches for year 6.)
    - iii) Acres that are being irrigated that have not been certified by the groundwater irrigation distribution owner with Upper Elkhorn NRD will have their allocation reduced on their certified groundwater irrigated acres for that groundwater distribution irrigation system. Certified irrigated acres will be reduced by a multiplier of 10. (For example, landowner has 127 acres and irrigated 3 acres more that was not certified as irrigated. Landowner would be penalized 3 (acres) x 10 (multiplier) = 30 acres of reduction on that impacted irrigation distribution system for a minimum of 1 year. If this violation occurs during an allocation period, penalty will carry on for completion of existing allocation period and on to next full allocation. If allocation for that subbasin is removed then the penalty will be enforced for 1 year.

## Appendix B: Evaluation of Hydroclimate Indices

This page intentionally left blank

## B.1 Palmer Drought Severity Index

The Palmer Drought Severity Index (PDSI) is calculated weekly by the National Oceanic Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) Climate Prediction Center (CPC). The PDSI reflects recent precipitation and the soil moisture balance. PDSI does not consider human impacts on the water balance, such as irrigation. Zero or near zero PDSI values indicate normal conditions, a negative PDSI value indicates drought and a positive value for a wet period.

**Table B-1: PDSI Classifications**

Index Value	Description	Index Value	Description
4.0 or above	Extremely wet	-0.99 to -0.5	Incipient dry spell
3.00 to 3.99	Very wet	-1.99 to -1.00	Mild drought
2.00 to 2.99	Moderately wet	-2.99 to -2.00	Moderate drought
1.00 to 1.99	Slightly wet	-3.00 to -3.99	Severe drought
0.5 to 0.99	Incipient wet spell	-4.00 or less	Extreme drought
-0.49 to 0.49	Near normal	---	---

Source: NOAA National Weather Service Climate Prediction Center 2005.

Note: The U.S. Drought Monitor includes one additional category “exceptional drought” for index values <-5

Mathematically, the PDSI is calculated as follows:

$$PDSI_i = \sum_{m=0}^i \frac{0.897^m}{3} Z_{i-m} \quad \text{Equation (B-1)}$$

where  $i$  and  $i-1$  indicate current and previous months at some arbitrary time, respectively, and  $PDSI_0 = 0$ . The  $Z_i$  in Equation (B-1), called the monthly Z-index, is defined as

$$Z_i = (Kd)_i \quad \text{Equation (B-2)}$$

where K is a coefficient and

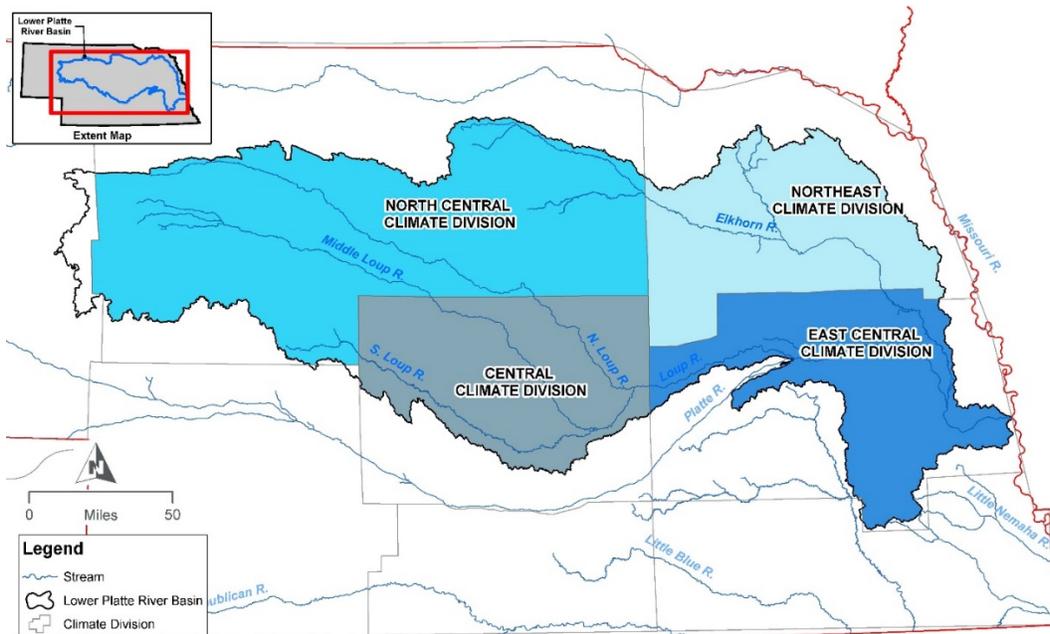
$$d = P - (\alpha_i PE + \beta_i PR + \gamma_i PRO - \delta_i PL) \quad \text{Equation (B-3)}$$

where  $\alpha_i = \overline{ET}_i / \overline{PE}_i$ ,  $\beta_i = \overline{R}_i / \overline{PR}_i$ ,  $\gamma_i = \overline{RO}_i / \overline{PRO}_i$ ,  $\delta_i = \overline{L}_i / \overline{PL}_i$

In Equation (B-3), P is actual monthly precipitation. The terms in the parenthesis on the right-hand-side of Equation (B-3) combine to yield monthly ‘climatologically appropriate rainfall’. In particular, PE is potential evapotranspiration, PR is potential water recharge to soil, and PRO potential runoff. Wayne C. Palmer used a two-layer soil model consisting of a surface layer, ‘plow layer’, and underlying layer, ‘root zone’, and defined PL as the sum of soil water of the two layers available for evapotranspiration. He called this term ‘potential loss of soil water to evapotranspiration’ (Palmer 1965).

Equation (B-1) is a cumulative formula, the PDSI from previous months affects the current month. As the number of months increase, the effect of previous months gradually decrease. However, because previous months affect the PDSI of a current month, there could be a lag in the PDSI identifying rapidly emerging droughts. Based on USGS streamflow record data, monthly streamflow on the Platte River from Duncan to Louisville, Nebraska, correlated significantly with the monthly PDSI (USGS 2008). The NOAA climate divisions for Nebraska are shown in Figure B-1.

**Figure B-1: NOAA Climate Divisions for Nebraska**



Source: Map layer downloaded from Climate Prediction Center 2018.

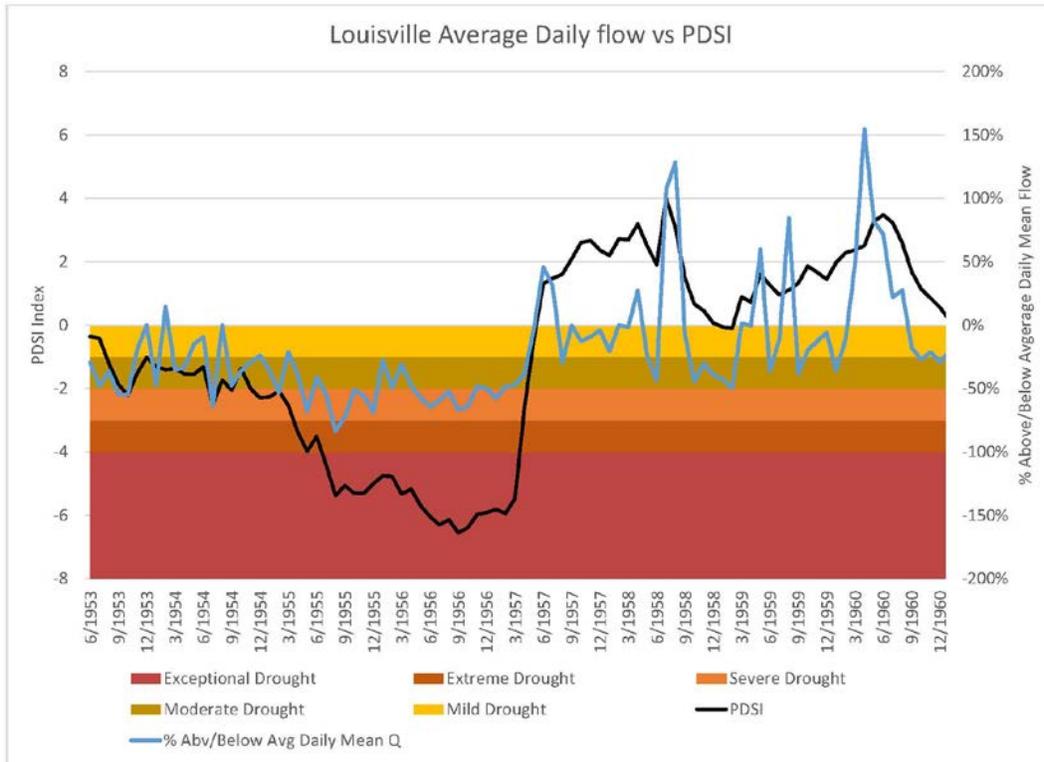
Figures B-1 through B-8 plot the Platte River July streamflow at Louisville as a percentage above or below the median July flow for the period 1953 to 2017 (Table B-2) against the historic PDSI to understand the historic droughts. The PDSI value in these plots is a composite of the value for the four climate divisions encompassing the Lower Platte River Basin: East Central, Northeast, Central, and North Central divisions).

**Table B-2: Platte River at Louisville – 50 percent flow exceedance values by month**

Month	50% Exceedance Flow (cfs)	Month	50% Exceedance Flow (cfs)
January	4,309	July	4,994
February	6,922	August	3,149
March	9,287	September	3,523
April	8,292	October	4,490
May	8,033	November	5,062
June	9,287	December	4,629

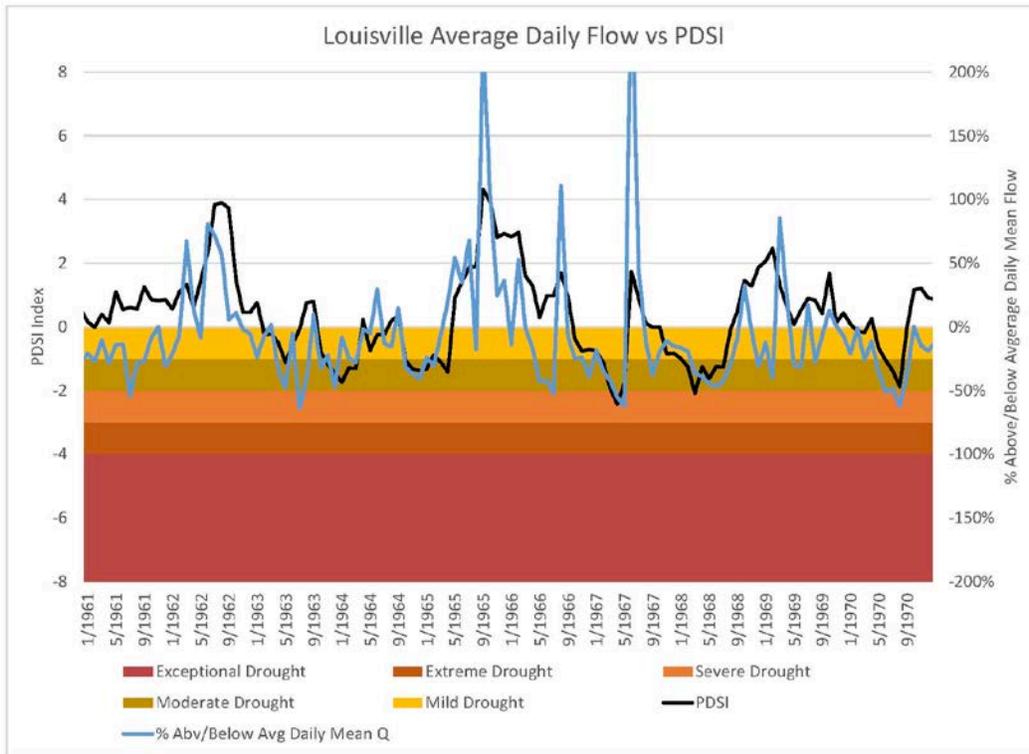
Note: Based on USGS gage #06805500 Platte River at Louisville, Nebr. (6/1953 to 12/2017 mean daily flow)

**Figure B-2: Composite PDSI versus Above/Below Average Flow at Louisville – 1953 to 1960**



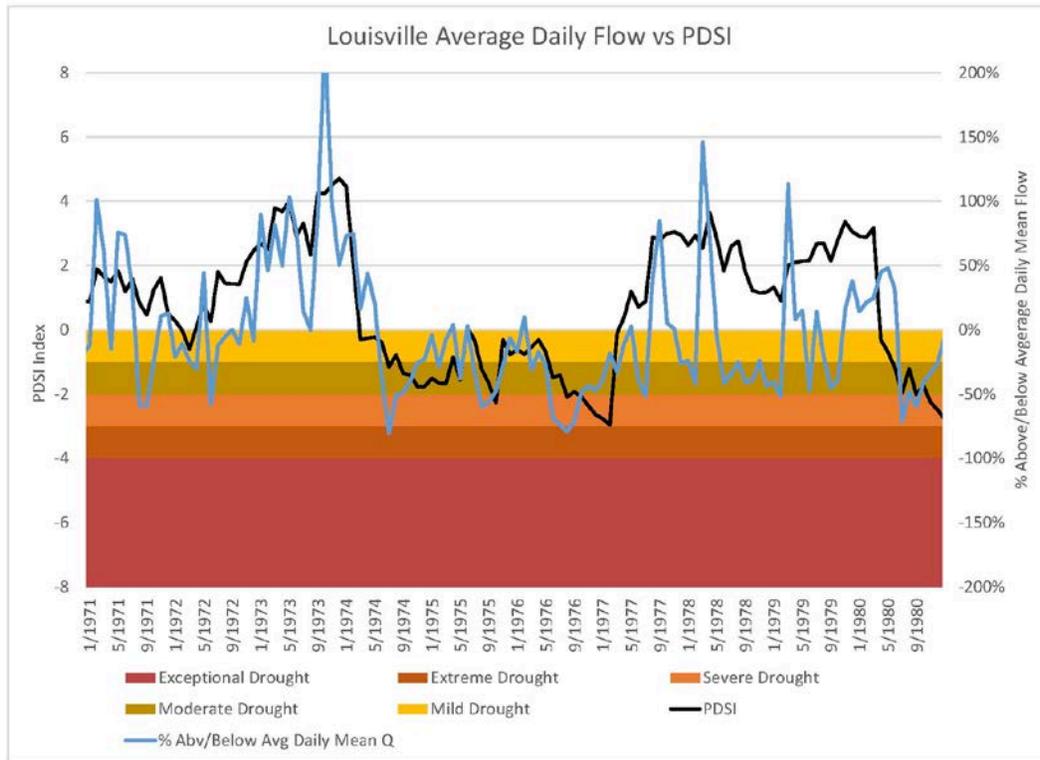
Source: Supporting Data downloaded from National Climatic Data Center (obtained 2018)

**Figure B-3: Composite PDSI versus Above/Below Average Flow at Louisville – 1961 to 1970**



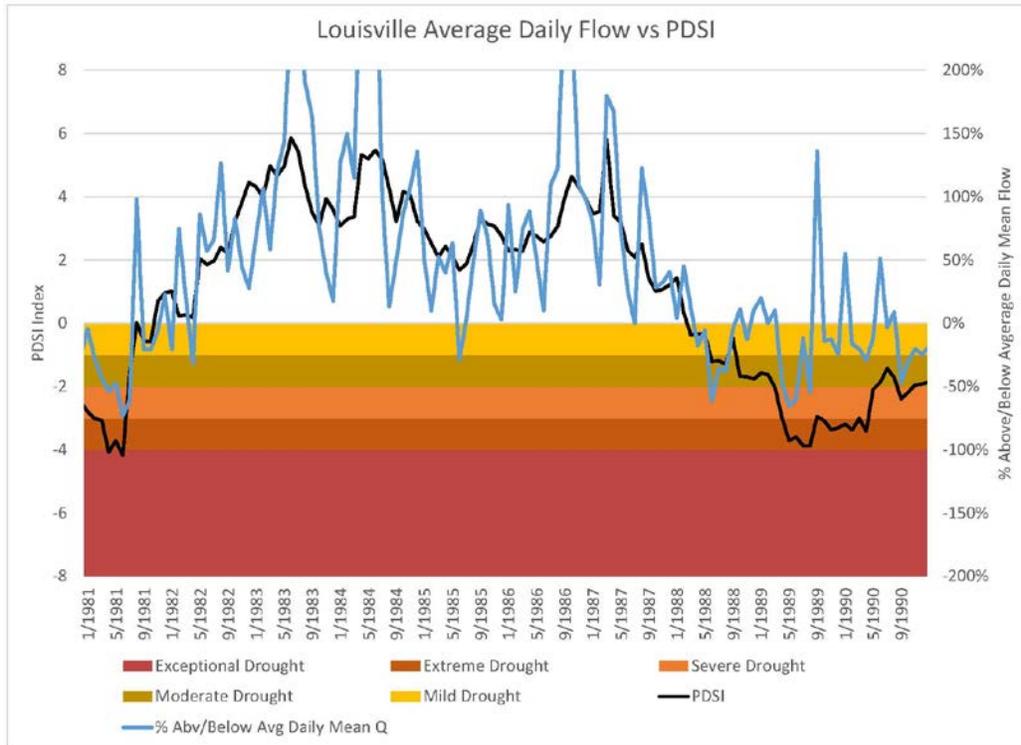
Source: Supporting Data downloaded from National Climatic Data Center (obtained 2018)

**Figure B-4: Composite PDSI versus Above/Below Average Flow at Louisville – 1971 to 1980**



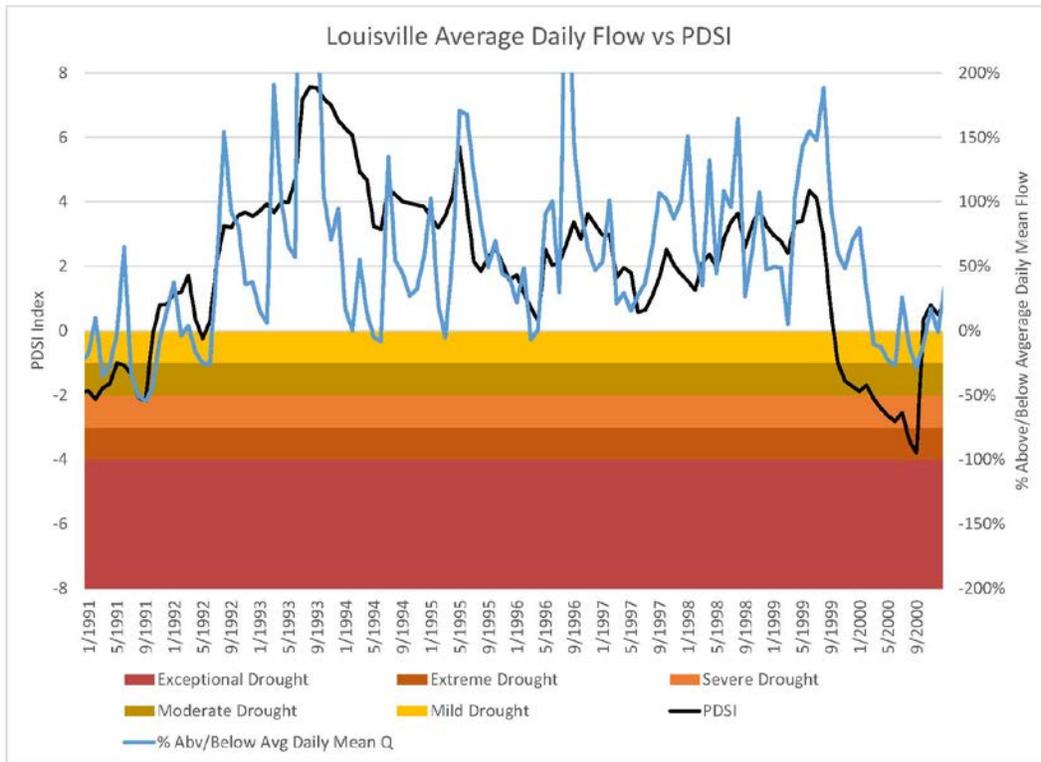
Source: Supporting Data downloaded from National Climatic Data Center (obtained 2018)

**Figure B-5: Composite PDSI versus Above/Below Average Flow at Louisville – 1981 to 1990**



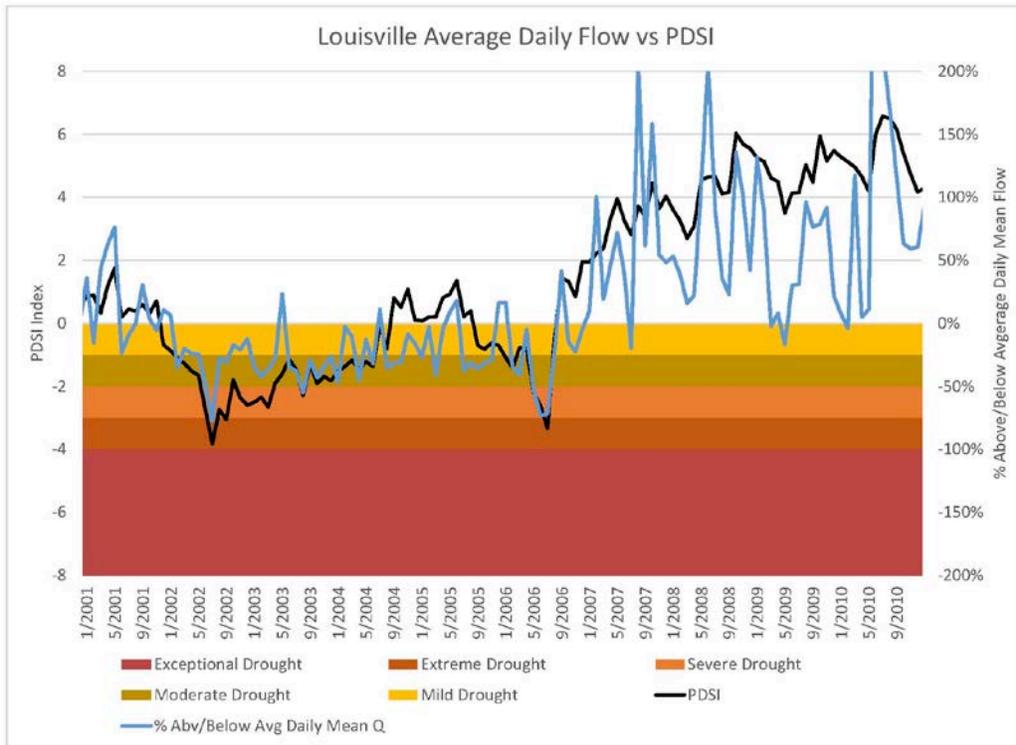
Source: Supporting Data downloaded from National Climatic Data Center (obtained 2018)

**Figure B-6: Composite PDSI versus Above/Below Average Flow at Louisville – 1991 to 2000**



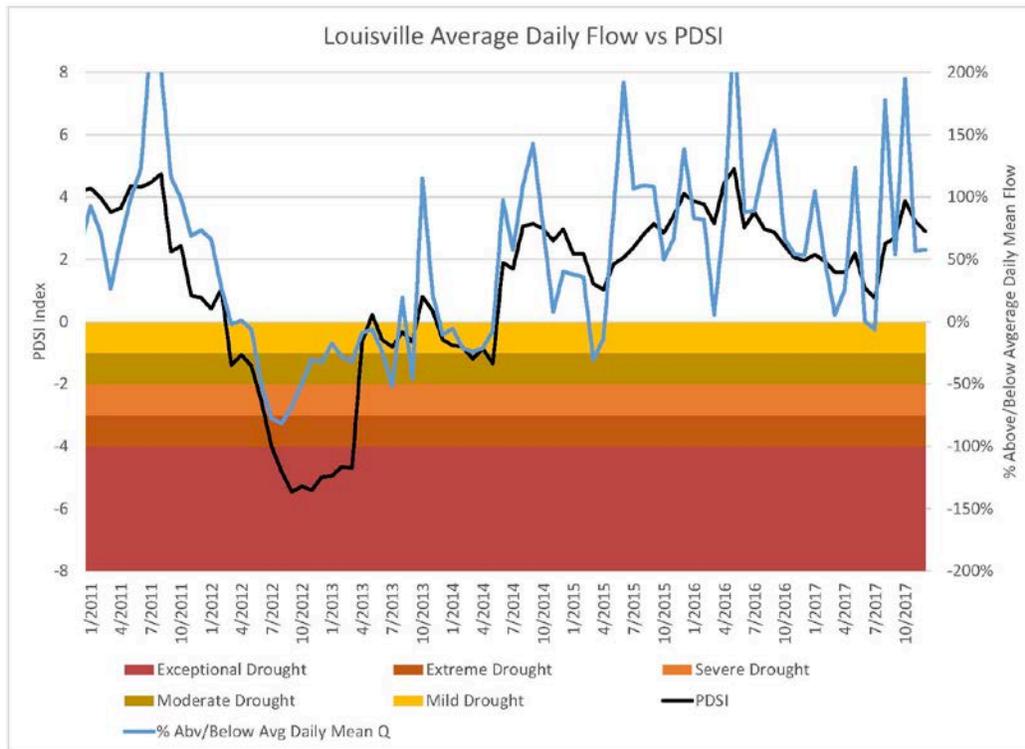
Source: Supporting Data downloaded from National Climatic Data Center (obtained 2018)

**Figure B-7: Composite PDSI versus Above/Below Average Flow at Louisville – 2001 to 2010**



Source: Supporting Data downloaded from National Climatic Data Center (obtained 2018)

**Figure B-8: Composite PDSI versus Above/Below Average Flow at Louisville – 2011 to 2017**



Source: Supporting Data downloaded from National Climatic Data Center (obtained 2018)

## B.2 Standardized Precipitation Index

The Standardized Precipitation Index (SPI) is the internationally preferred index for meteorological drought (Hayes et al. 2011). Similar to PDSI, Zero or near zero SPI values indicate normal conditions, a negative SPI indicates drought and a positive value for a wet period. Table B-3 lists the SPI classification for drought.

**Table B-3: SPI Classifications**

Index Value	Description	Index Value	Description
2.0 or greater	Extremely wet	-1.49 to -1.00	Moderate drought
1.50 to 1.99	Severely wet	-1.99 to -1.50	Severe drought
1.00 to 1.49	Moderately wet	-2.0 or less	Extreme drought
-0.99 to 0.99	Near normal	---	---

Source: NOAA National Weather Service Climate Prediction Center 2005.

The SPI is based on precipitation only, and does not consider soil moisture balance like PDSI. The SPI uses historical precipitation records for any location to develop a probability of precipitation that can be computed at any number of timescales, from 1 month to 48 months or longer.

With precipitation as the only input, SPI is deficient when accounting for the temperature component, which is important to the overall water balance and water use of a region. This drawback can make it more difficult to compare events of similar SPI values but different temperature scenarios.

Mathematically, the SPI is calculated as follows:

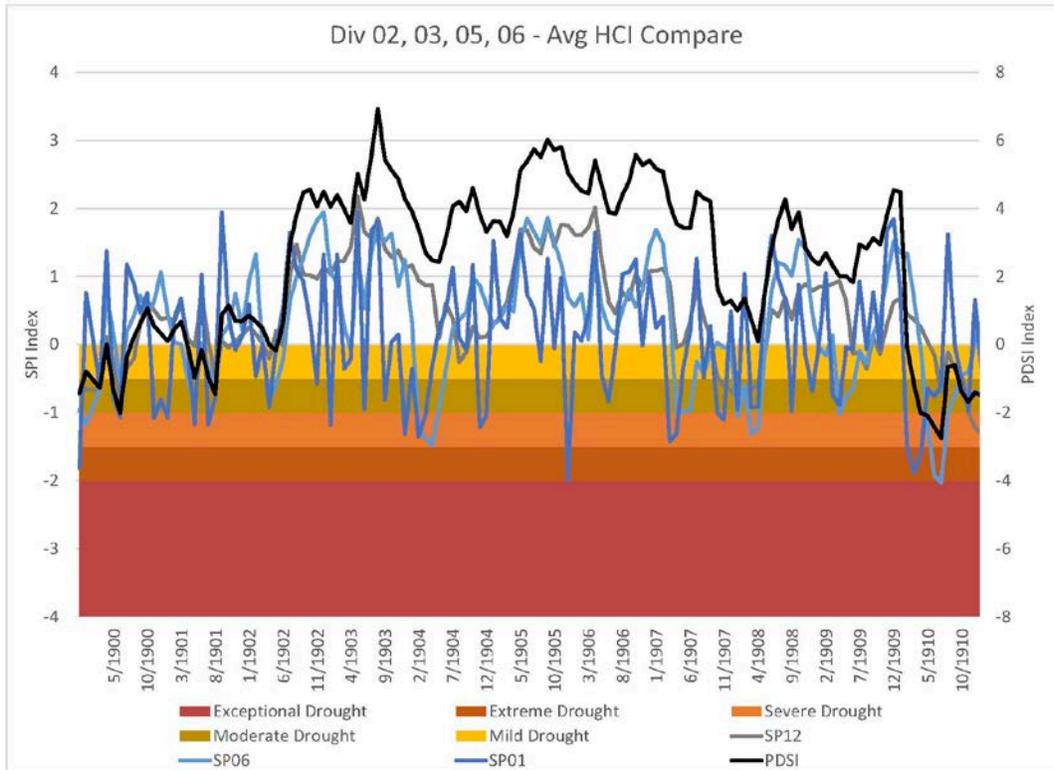
Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

$$SPI = (P - P^*)/\sigma_p \tag{Equation B-4}$$

where P = precipitation, P\* = mean precipitation, and  $\sigma_p$  = standard deviation of precipitation.

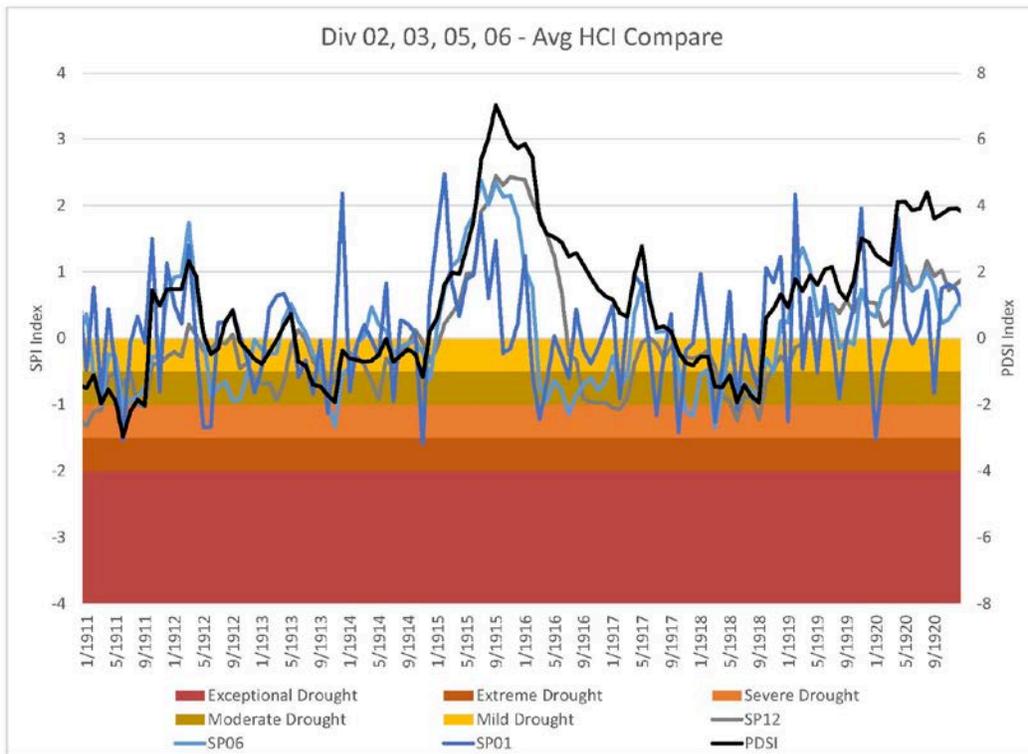
To compare historic SPI to historic PDSI, the composite of each (North Central, Northeast, Central, and East Central climate divisions) were plotted in Figures B-9 through B-20 for the period-of-record 1900 – 2017.

**Figure B-9: Composite SPI Index versus Composite PDSI Index – 1900 to 1910**



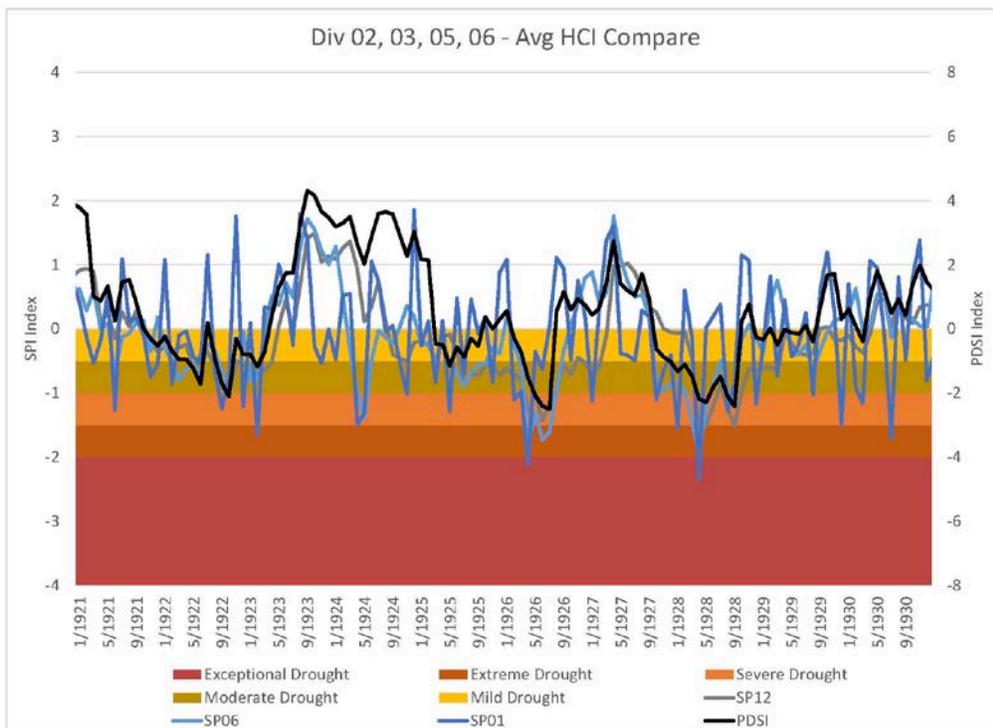
Source: Supporting Data downloaded from National Climatic Data Center (obtained 2018)

**Figure B-10: Composite SPI Index versus Composite PDSI Index – 1911-1920**



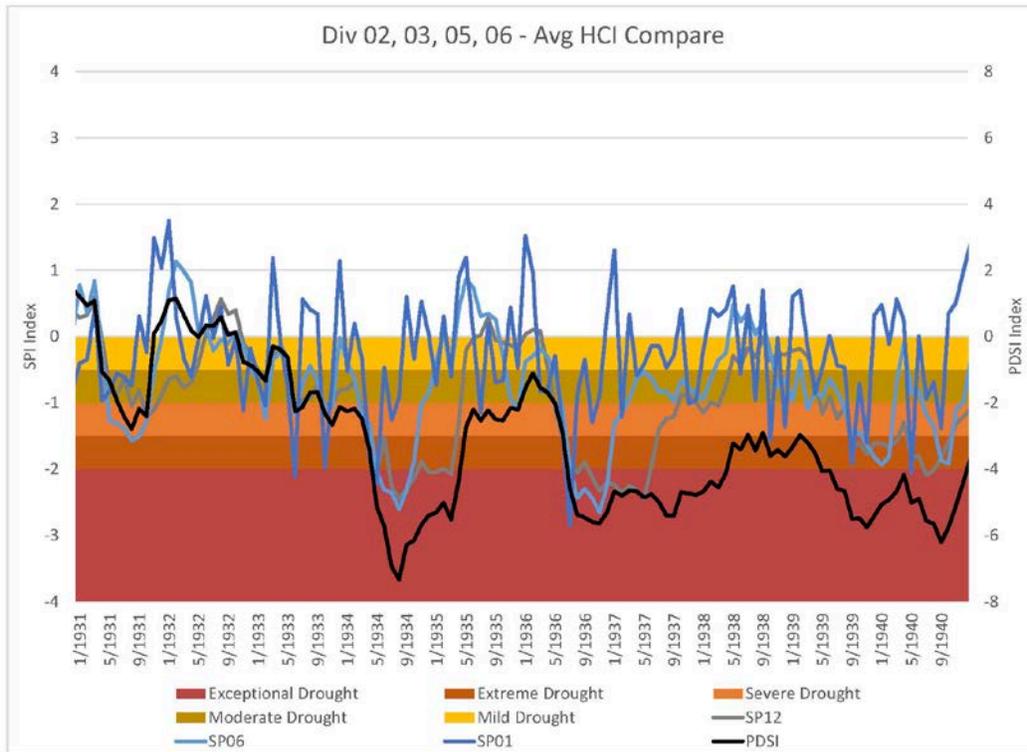
Source: Supporting Data downloaded from National Climatic Data Center (obtained 2018)

**Figure B-11: Composite SPI Index versus Composite PDSI Index – 1921 to 1930**



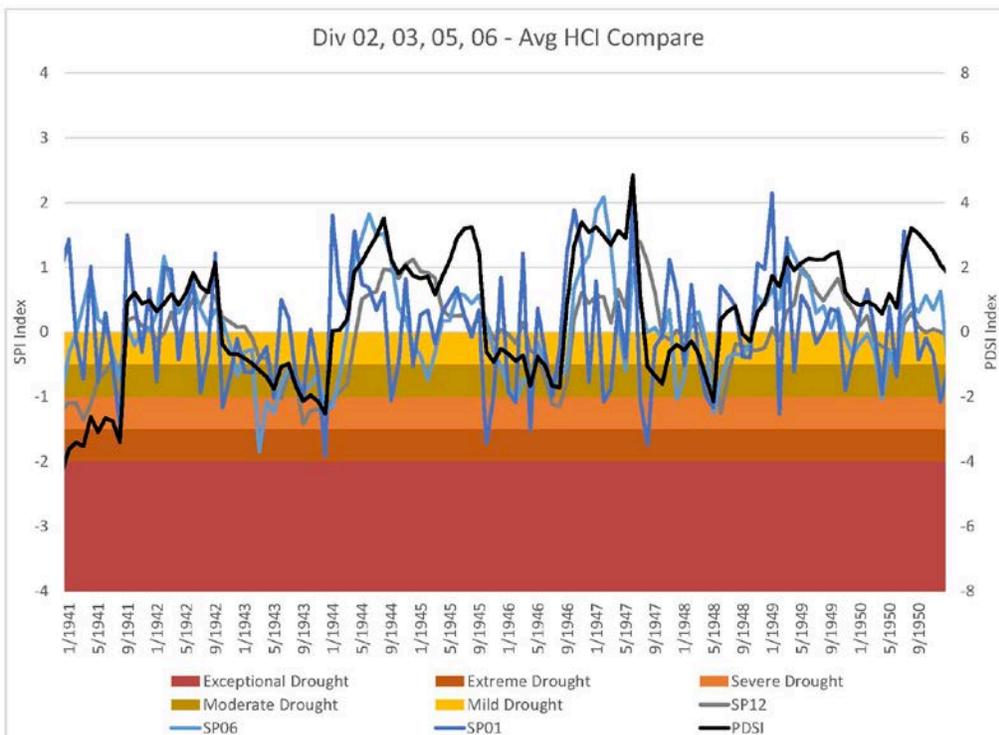
Source: Supporting Data downloaded from National Climatic Data Center (obtained 2018)

**Figure B-12: Composite SPI Index versus Composite PDSI Index – 1931 to 1940**



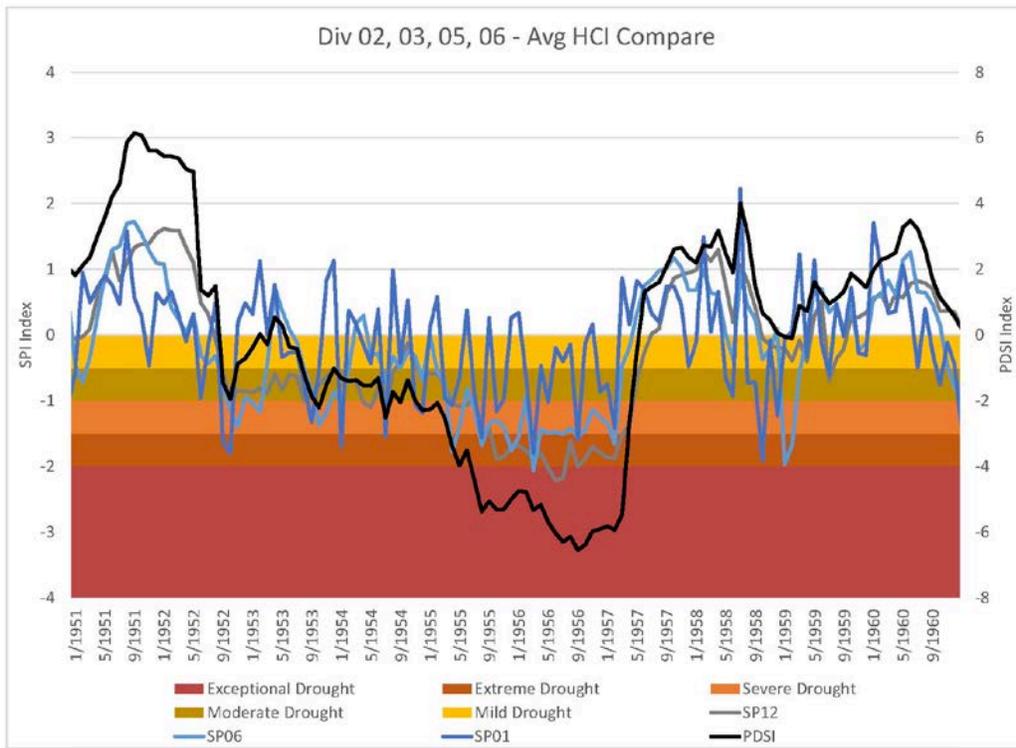
Source: Supporting Data downloaded from National Climatic Data Center (obtained 2018)

**Figure B-13: Composite SPI Index versus Composite PDSI Index – 1941 to 1950**



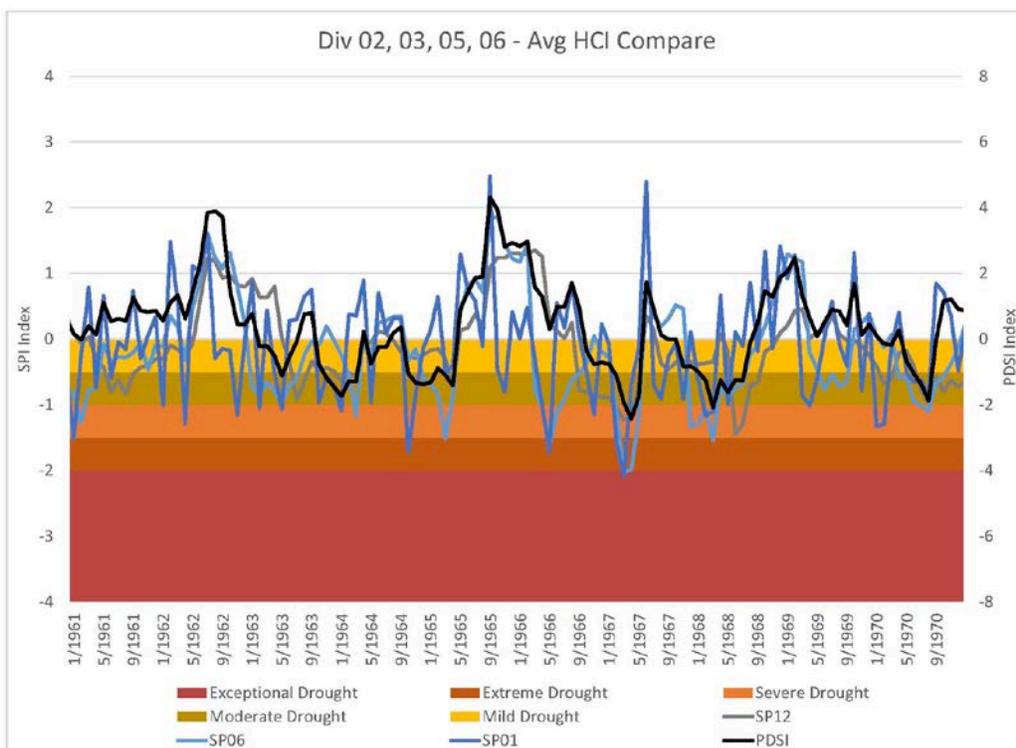
Source: Supporting Data downloaded from National Climatic Data Center (obtained 2018)

**Figure B-14: Composite SPI Index versus Composite PDSI Index – 1951 to 1960**



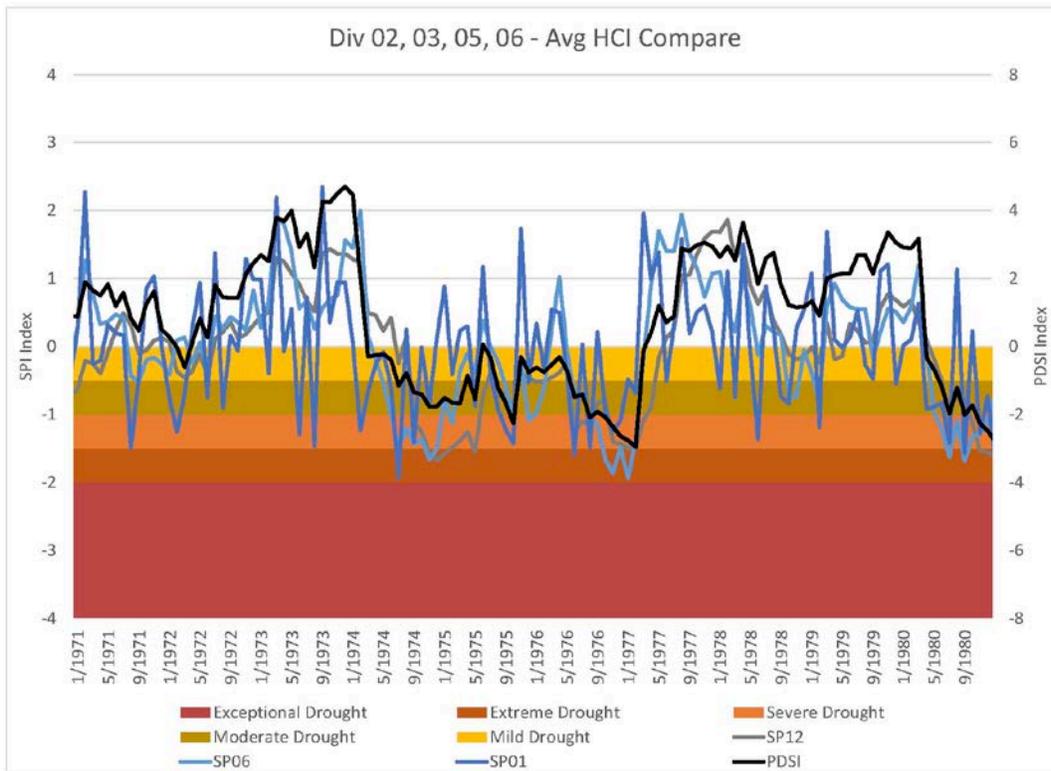
Source: Supporting Data downloaded from National Climatic Data Center (obtained 2018)

**Figure B-15: Composite SPI Index versus Composite PDSI Index – 1961 to 1970**



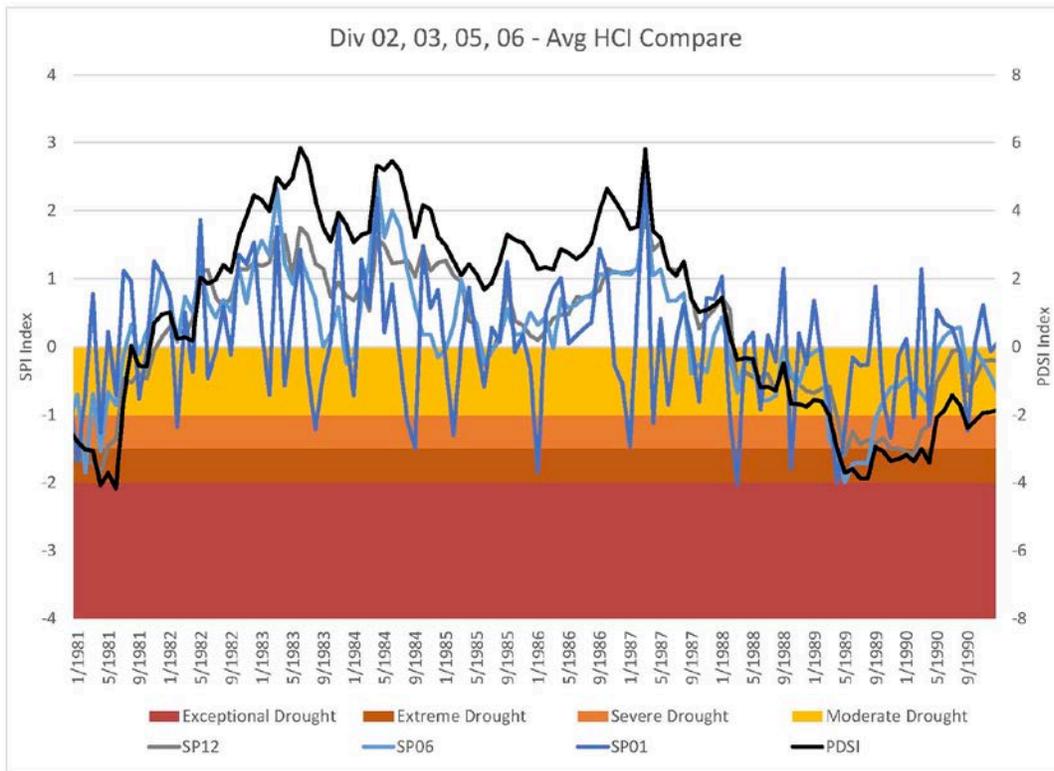
Source: Supporting Data downloaded from National Climatic Data Center (obtained 2018)

**Figure B-16: Composite SPI Index versus Composite PDSI Index – 1971 to 1980**



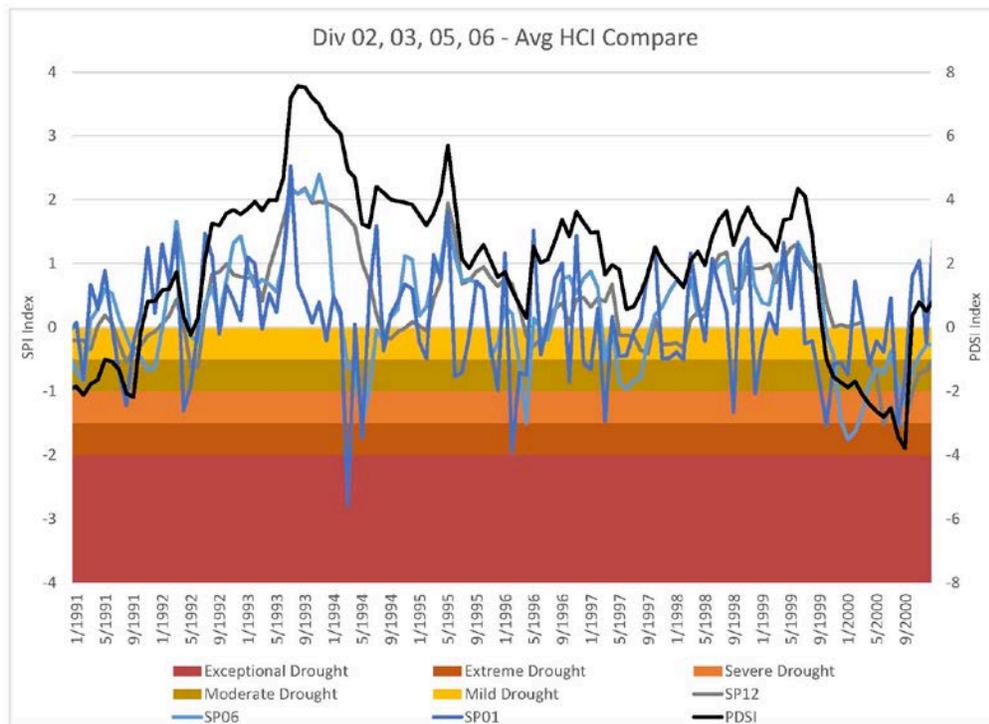
Source: Supporting Data downloaded from National Climatic Data Center (obtained 2018)

**Figure B-17: Composite SPI Index versus Composite PDSI Index – 1981 to 1990**



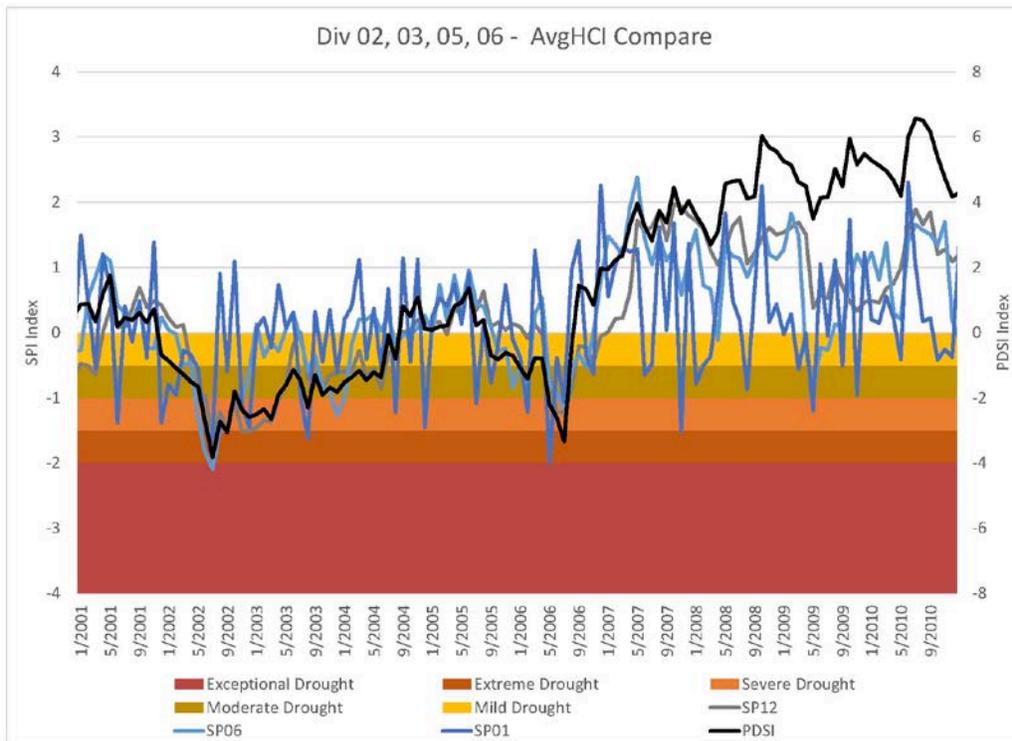
Source: Supporting Data downloaded from National Climatic Data Center (obtained 2018)

**Figure B-18: Composite SPI Index versus Composite PDSI Index – 1991 to 2000**



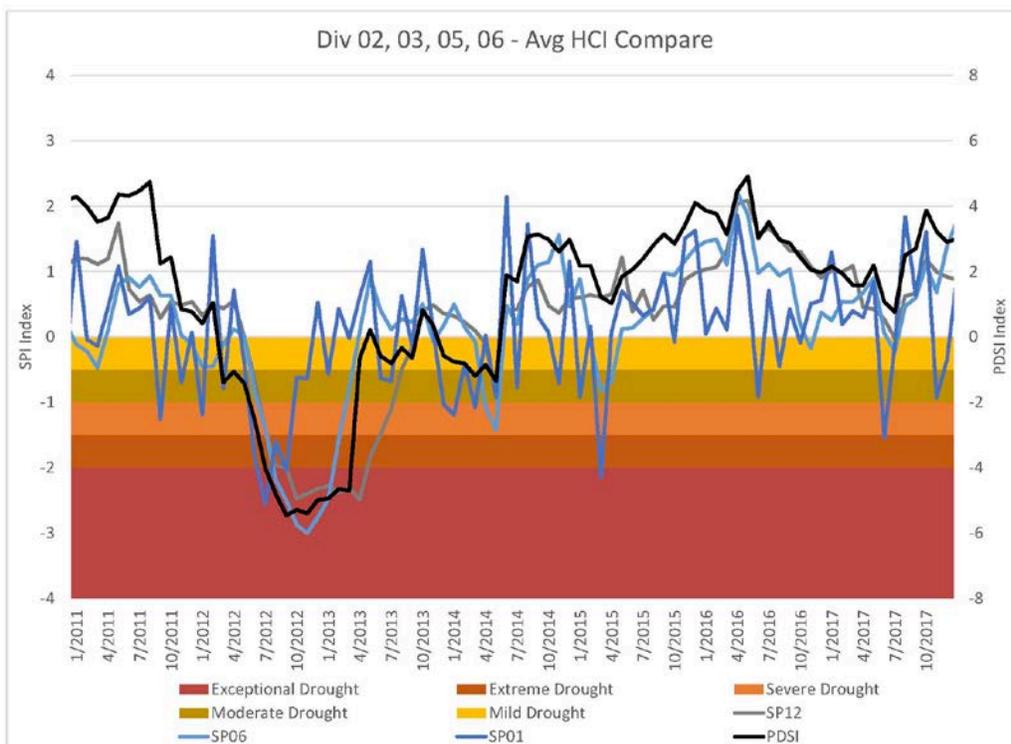
Source: Supporting Data downloaded from National Climatic Data Center (obtained 2018)

**Figure B-19: Composite SPI Index versus Composite PDSI Index – 2001 to 2010**



Source: Supporting Data downloaded from National Climatic Data Center (obtained 2018)

**Figure B-20: Composite SPI Index versus Composite PDSI Index – 2011 to 2017**



Source: Supporting Data downloaded from National Climatic Data Center (obtained 2018)

Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

The U.S. Drought Risk Atlas (a product of the National Drought Mitigation Center [NDMC]) summarizes the occurrence of drought by climate division, hydro climate indices, and severity as a percentage of the period-of-record. The historic occurrence of drought for the four climate divisions that encompass the Lower Platte River Basin are shown in Tables B-4 through B-7.

**Table B-4: Climate Division 02: Percent of Time Spent in Drought – 1900 to 2016**

PDSI			
Index Value	Percent of Time Spent in Drought	Drought Severity	Recurrence
$-2 < \text{PDSI} \leq -1$	34%	Mild	1 out of 3 years
$-3 < \text{PDSI} \leq -2$	21%	Moderate	1 out of 5 years
$-4 < \text{PDSI} \leq -3$	12%	Severe	1 out of 8 years
$\text{PDSI} \leq -4$	6%	Extreme	1 out of 17 years

Source: U.S. Drought Risk Atlas (frequency statistics obtained 2018)

**Table B-5: Climate Division 03: Percent of Time Spent in Drought – 1900 to 2016**

PDSI			
Index Value	Percent of Time Spent in Drought	Severity	Recurrence
$-2 < \text{PDSI} \leq -1$	26%	Mild	1 out of 4 years
$-3 < \text{PDSI} \leq -2$	16%	Moderate	1 out of 6 years
$-4 < \text{PDSI} \leq -3$	10%	Severe	1 out of 10 years
$\text{PDSI} \leq -4$	7%	Extreme	1 out of 14 years

Source: U.S. Drought Risk Atlas (frequency statistics obtained 2018)

**Table B-6: Climate Division 05: Percent of Time Spent in Drought – 1900 to 2016**

PDSI			
Index Value	Percent of Time Spent in Drought	Severity	Recurrence
$-2 < \text{PDSI} \leq -1$	31%	Mild	1 out of 3 years
$-3 < \text{PDSI} \leq -2$	18%	Moderate	1 out of 6 years
$-4 < \text{PDSI} \leq -3$	11%	Severe	1 out of 9 years
$\text{PDSI} \leq -4$	8%	Extreme	1 out of 13 years

Source: U.S. Drought Risk Atlas (frequency statistics obtained 2018)

**Table B-7: Climate Division 06: Percent of Time Spent in Drought – 1900 to 2016**

PDSI			
Index Value	Percent of Time Spent in Drought	Severity	Recurrence
$-2 < \text{PDSI} \leq -1$	28%	Mild	1 out of 4 years
$-3 < \text{PDSI} \leq -2$	17%	Moderate	1 out of 6 years
$-4 < \text{PDSI} \leq -3$	10%	Severe	1 out of 10 years
$\text{PDSI} \leq -4$	6%	Extreme	1 out of 17 years

Source: U.S. Drought Risk Atlas (frequency statistics obtained 2018)

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

In general, the PDSI and SPI compare reasonably well; however, the SPI does appear to predict fewer occurrences of severe and extreme droughts than the PDSI. This is likely due to the fact that the SPI and PDSI tell different stories. The PDSI considers the water balance and gives a more complete representation of conditions; however, the PDSI is a cumulative function where the PDSI from previous months can affect the PDSI of a current month making it harder to predict flash droughts). The SPI only considers precipitation anomaly compared to historic normal precipitation. Therefore, if precipitation returns to normal conditions, the SPI may indicate the drought is over whereas the PDSI may not.

For these reasons, both the SPI and PDSI should be considered together when evaluating drought conditions.

Analysis of historic PDSI values from the last 116 years reveal that mild, moderate, severe, and extreme droughts can be expected to occur in the Lower Platte River Basin once every three, six, nine, and fourteen years, respectively.

## Appendix C: Cost-Estimate of Potential Mitigation Actions

This page intentionally left blank

Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan  
Mitigation Alternatives  
Conceptual Design  
Construction Quantities and Cost Estimates

**Missouri River to Elkhorn River - 100 cfs - Southern Route  
Conceptual Cost Estimate**

Item	Quantity	Unit	Unit Cost	Total Cost	Notes
<i>Vertical Wells - 64.6 MGD total capacity</i>					
Vertical wells	32	EA	\$500,000 /EA	\$16,000,000	<i>Includes well construction costs, well pumps, access roads, well field collector piping, electrical distribution, instrumentation. Assumes well depth = 100 VF and well production capacity of 1,400 gpm.</i>
Land	224	acre	\$8,650 /acre	\$1,937,600	
<i>Transmission Main</i>					
Transmission Main - 60-inch. Includes clearing, grubbing, right of way.	58,080	LF	\$600 /LF	\$34,848,000	<i>Assumes 11 miles of transmission main to discharge location . Estimate \$10/diam inch/LF.</i>
<i>Operation &amp; Maintenance</i>	59,400	AF pumped	\$45 /AF	\$2,673,000	<i>Assumes \$45/AF pumped. Assume 15 day pumping period annually</i>
Subtotal				\$55,458,600	
Contingency	25%			\$13,196,400.00	
Engineering	15%			\$7,917,840.00	
<b>Total</b>				<b>\$76,572,840</b>	
<i>Water Supply at Source</i>					
	2,970	AF	20 yrs	59,400 AF	<i>Assumes 100 cfs x 15 days available every year</i>

Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan  
Mitigation Alternatives  
Conceptual Design  
Construction Quantities and Cost Estimates

**Sherman Reservoir Purchase Agreement  
Conceptual Cost Estimate**

Item	Quantity	Unit	Unit Cost	Total Cost	Notes	
<i>Annual Agreement Costs</i>						
Sherman Feeder Canal/retainer	20	yrs	\$125,000 /yr	\$2,500,000	<i>Estimate based on \$10/acre retainer on lands potentially impacted by storage call (10,000 acres), plus \$25,000 annually to District for operationa and maintainence.</i>	
<i>Cost per AF released</i>						
AF released (Scenario 1)	29,700	AF	\$150 /AF	\$4,455,000	<i>250 cfs x 1.98 x 15 days x 4 out of 20 yrs; price per acre-foot based on differential between dryland and irrigated rental rates</i>	
AF released (Scenario 2)	47,520	AF	\$150 /AF	\$7,128,000	<i>400 cfs x 1.98 x 15 days x 4 out of 20 yrs; price per acre-foot based on differential between dryland and irrigated rental rates</i>	
				Subtotal (Scenario 1)	\$6,955,000	
				Subtotal (Scenario 2)	\$9,628,000	
<hr/>						
Contingency	25%					<i>No contingency costs are included, however costs above will vary based on agreement negotiations</i>
Engineering	15%					<i>Limited engineering effort anticipated.</i>
<hr/>						
<b>Total (250 cfs x 15 days)</b>				<b>\$6,955,000</b>		
<b>Total (400 cfs x 15 days)</b>				<b>\$9,628,000</b>		
<i>Water Supply at Source</i>						
AF returned (Scenario 1)	7,425	AF	4 yrs	29,700	<i>Assumes 15 day release period of 250 cfs. Assumes releases would be available 4 out of 20 years</i>	
AF returned (Scenario 2)	11,880	AF	4 yrs	47,520	<i>Assumes 15 day release period of 400 cfs. Assumes releases would be available 4 out of 20 years</i>	

Note: Assumes agreement will have limitations on number of calls allowed. For estimating purposed, assumed 2 calls allowed every 10 years.

Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan  
Mitigation Alternatives  
Conceptual Design  
Construction Quantities and Cost Estimates

**Skull Creek Reservoir  
Conceptual Cost Estimate**

Item	Quantity	Unit	Unit Cost	Total Cost	Notes
Embankment	560,000	yd <sup>3</sup>	\$ 3	/yd	\$1,680,000
Cutoff Trench	23,200	yd <sup>3</sup>	\$ 3	/yd	\$75,400
Principal Spillway	1	LS	\$ 200,000	EA	\$200,000
	1	LS	\$ 100,000	EA	\$100,000
	1	LS	\$ 150,000	EA	\$150,000
	563	ft	\$ 1,000	/ft	\$563,000
Chimney Drain	8,900	yd <sup>3</sup>	\$ 25	/yd	\$222,500
Instrumentation	1	LS	\$ 55,000	EA	\$55,000
Mobilization & Demobilization @ 10% of Dam Construction				EA	\$319,290
	1	LS	\$ 319,290		
Seeding & Mulching	10	acre	\$ 1,500	/Ac	\$15,000
Miscellaneous Drainage & Erosion Control				EA	\$60,000
	1	LS	\$ 60,000		
Rip-rap Protection	1,700	yd <sup>3</sup>	\$ 85	/yd	\$144,500
Land Cost	2,100	acre	\$ 8,650	/Ac	\$18,165,000
<hr/>					
Subtotal					\$21,750,000
Contingency	25%				\$5,438,000
Administration/Legal	10%				\$2,175,000
Engineering	15%				\$3,263,000
<hr/>					
Subtotal Engineering/Admin/Contingency:					\$10,876,000
<b>Total</b>					<b>\$32,630,000</b>
 <i>Water Supply at Source</i>					
	2,970	AF	20 yrs		59,400 AF
					<i>Assumes 15 day release period at 100 cfs available every year</i>

Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan  
Mitigation Alternatives  
Conceptual Design  
Construction Quantities and Cost Estimates

**Bell Creek Reservoir  
Conceptual Cost Estimate**

Item	Quantity	Unit	Unit Cost	Total Cost	Notes	
Embankment	1,370,000	yd <sup>3</sup>	\$ 3.00	/yd	\$4,110,000	
Cutoff Trench	54,800	yd <sup>3</sup>	\$ 3.25	/yd	\$178,000	
Principal Spillway	1	LS	\$ 200,000	EA	\$200,000	
	1	LS	\$ 100,000	EA	\$100,000	
	1	LS	\$ 150,000	EA	\$150,000	
Piping, etc.	2,000	ft	\$ 1,000	/ft	\$2,000,000	
Chimney Drain	24,900	yd <sup>3</sup>	\$ 25	/yd	\$623,000	
Instrumentation	1	LS	\$ 55,000	EA	\$55,000	
Mobilization & Demobilization @ 10% o	1	LS	\$ 791,560	EA	\$792,000	
Seeding & Mulching	26	acre	\$ 1,500	/Ac	\$39,000	
Miscellaneous Drainage & Erosion Control	1	LS	\$ 40,000	EA	\$40,000	
Rip-rap Protection	7,600	yd <sup>3</sup>	\$ 85	/yd	\$646,000	
Land Cost	5,250	acre	\$ 8,650	/Ac	\$45,413,000	
<hr/>						
Subtotal					\$54,346,000	
Contingency					25%	\$13,587,000
Administration/Legal					10%	\$5,435,000
Engineering					15%	\$8,152,000
Subtotal Engineering/Admin/Contingency:						\$27,174,000
<b>Total</b>						<b>\$81,520,000</b>
 <i>Water Supply at Source</i>						
	2,970	AF	20	yrs	59,400 AF	

*Assumes pool area at top of dam + 25%*

*Assumes 15 day release period at 100 cfs available every year*

Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan  
Mitigation Alternatives  
Conceptual Design  
Construction Quantities and Cost Estimates

**Loup System Canal Recharge Alternative  
Conceptual Cost Estimate**

Item	Quantity	Unit	Unit Cost	Total Cost	Notes
<i>Annual Agreement Costs</i>					
Sargent Canal	20	yrs	\$10,000 /yr	\$200,000	<i>Annual retainer costs for right to use infrastructure, estimate based on similar agreements in Upper Platte basin.</i>
Middle Loup Canals	20	yrs	\$25,000 /yr	\$500,000	
Sherman Feeder & Farwell Irrigation District	20	yrs	\$20,000 /yr	\$400,000	
<i>Cost per AF Diverted</i>					
AF diverted (Excess Flow Scenario 1 - Historic Loup Operations)	305,200	AF	\$50 /AF	\$15,260,000	<i>Total excess flow diverted over 20-year period; estimated cost per acre-ft based on similar agreements in Upper Platte basin</i>
AF diverted (Excess Flow Scenario 2 - Full Loup Hydropower Right)	82,500	AF	\$50 /AF	\$4,125,000	<i>Total excess flow diverted over 20-year period; estimated cost per acre-ft based on similar agreements in Upper Platte basin</i>
Subtotal (Excess Flow Scenario 1 - Historic Loup Operations)				\$16,360,000	
Subtotal (Excess Flow Scenario 2 - Full Loup Hydropower Right)				\$5,225,000	
<b>Total (Excess Flow Scenario 1 - Historic Loup Operations)</b>				<b>\$16,360,000</b>	
<b>Total (Excess Flow Scenario 2 - Full Loup Hydropower Right)</b>				<b>\$5,225,000</b>	
<i>Water Supply at Source</i>					
AF returned (Excess Flow Scenario 1 - Historic Loup Operations)	376	AF/yr	20 yrs	7,525 AF	<i>Assume seepage returns to river during 15-day period annually over 20 years</i>
AF returned (Excess Flow Scenario 2 - Full Loup Hydropower Right)	102	AF/yr	20 yrs	2,034 AF	<i>Assume seepage returns to river during 15-day period annually over 20 years</i>

Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan  
 Mitigation Alternatives  
 Conceptual Design  
 Construction Quantities and Cost Estimates

**Dry Year Lease Agreement  
 Conceptual Cost Estimate**

Item	Quantity	Unit	Unit Cost	Number of Years	Total Cost	Notes	
Annual Agreement Costs	310,626	Acres	\$10 /Ac	20 yrs	\$62,125,200	Assumes a \$10/acre retainer paid each year	
Additional payment when call is made	310,626	Acres	\$150 /Ac	4 yrw	\$186,375,600	Assumes \$150/acre paid each year call is made. Price estimate based on difference between irrigated and dryland rental rates	
<b>Subtotal</b>					<b>\$248,500,800</b>		
Contingency		25%					No contingency costs are included, however costs above will vary based on agreement negotiations Limited engineering effort anticipated.
Engineering		15%					
<b>Total</b>					<b>\$248,500,800</b>		
<i>Water Supply at Source</i>							
Estimated annual depletions	23,850	AF					
Estimated monthly depletion	2,000	AF					
Estimated 15 day depletion	1,000	AF					
Assume 4 yrs out of 20 yrs implemented	4,000	AF					

Note: Assumes agreement will have limitations on number of calls allowed. For estimating purposed, assumed 2 calls allowed every 10 years.

**Sandpit to Platte River - 100 cfs  
Conceptual Cost Estimate**

Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan  
Mitigation Alternatives  
Conceptual Design  
Construction Quantities and Cost Estimates

Item	Quantity	Unit	Unit Cost	Total Cost	Notes
<i>Pumping - 64.6 MGD total capacity</i>					
Land for Pump Station	10	acre	\$8,650 /acre	\$86,500	Estimated area required for pump station building and access. Price based on 2018 Nebraska Farm Real Estate Report. Land price per acre of Center Pivot irrigated cropland in eastern Nebraska.
<i>Pump Suction and Discharge Piping</i>					
Piping - 60-inch. Includes clearing, grubbing, right of way.	1,000	LF	\$600 /LF	\$600,000	Assume sandpit is within 1000 feet of Elkhorn River. Estimate \$10/diam inch/LF.
<i>Pump Station</i>					
Pump Station Structure	900	SF	\$350 /SF	\$315,000	Estimated cost per square foot intended to include pump electrical and controls costs, in addition to structure costs. Estimate based on MUD High Service Pump No. 3 cost \$370,000 from 2016. MUD pump conditions were 25 MGD at 250 FT. Elkhorn River pumps would have higher flow but lower head and estimated HP of about 750 HP EA. O&M annual costs \$45/AF pumped
Pumps - 32 MGD	2	EA	\$325,000 EA	\$650,000	
Operation & Maintenance	14,850	AF pumped	\$45 /AF	\$668,250	O&M annual costs \$45/AF pumped
Lease agreement with Owners	20	years	\$150,000 year	\$3,000,000	
Subtotal				\$5,319,750	
Contingency	25%			\$412,875	
Engineering	15%			\$247,725	
<b>Total</b>				<b>\$5,980,000</b>	
Water Supply at Source	2,970	AF	5 yrs	14,850 AF	Assumes 100 cfs x 15 days available once every 4 years

Note: Assumes agreement will have limitations on number of calls allowed. For estimating purposed, assumed 1 call allowed every 4 years.

Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan  
Mitigation Alternatives  
Conceptual Design  
Construction Quantities and Cost Estimates

**Augmentation Wellfield to Platte River - 100 cfs  
Conceptual Cost Estimate**

Item	Quantity	Unit	Unit Cost	Total Cost	Notes
<i>Vertical Wells - 64.6 MGD total capacity</i>					
Vertical wells	32	EA	\$500,000 /EA	\$16,000,000	<i>Includes well construction costs, well pumps, access roads, well field collector piping, electrical distribution, instrumentation. Assumes well depth = 100 VF and well production capacity of 1,400 gpm.</i>
Land	224	acre	\$8,650 /acre	\$1,937,600	
<i>Transmission Main</i>					
Transmission Main - 60-inch. Includes clearing, grubbing, right of way.	63,360	LF	\$600 /LF	\$38,016,000	<i>Assume 12 miles of transmission main to discharge location. Estimate \$10/diam inch/LF.</i>
<i>Operation &amp; Maintenance</i>	59,400	AF pumped	\$45 /AF	\$2,673,000	
Subtotal				\$58,626,600	<i>Assumes \$45/AF pumped. Assume 15 day pumping period annually</i>
Contingency	25%			\$13,988,400	
Engineering	15%			\$8,393,040	
<b>Total</b>				<b>\$81,008,040</b>	
<i>Water Supply at Source</i>					
	2,970	AF	20 yrs	59,400 AF	<i>Assumes 100 cfs x 15 days available every year</i>

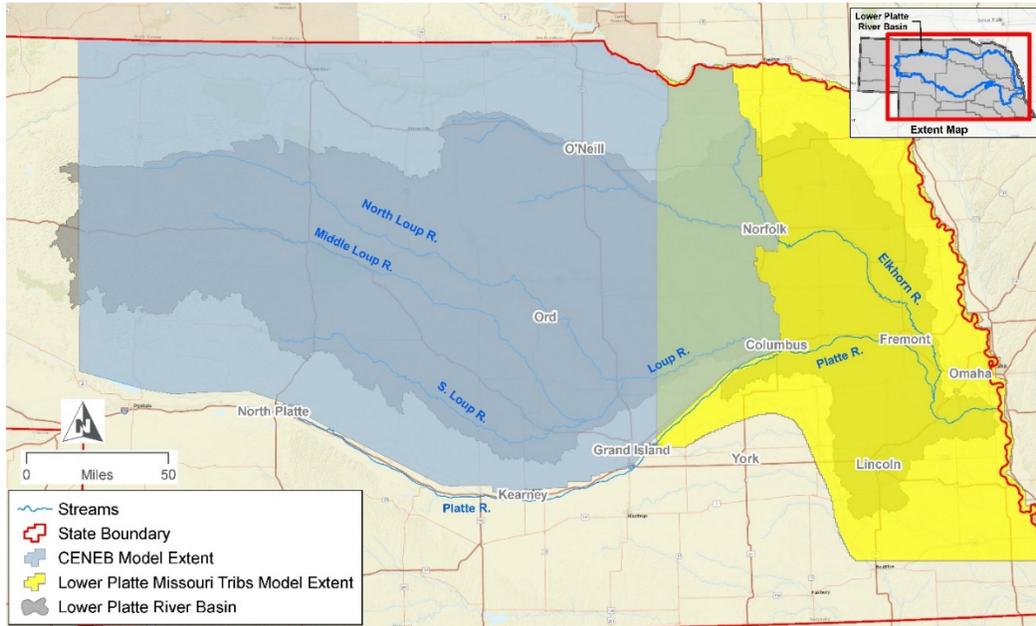
## Appendix D: Modeling Tools

This page intentionally left blank

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

There are three main groundwater water models that are encompassed by the Lower Platte River Basin. These include the Central Nebraska Model (CENEB) and Elkhorn-Loup Model (ELM) in the western and central portions of the basin and the Lower Platte Tributaries Model (currently under development) covering the eastern portion of the basin. These models analyze the surface and groundwater interaction in the basin.

**Figure D-1: Groundwater Modeling Studies**



### Lower Platte Missouri Tributaries Model

The Lower Platte Missouri Tributaries (LPMT) Groundwater Model is being developed to assist the Nebraska Department of Natural Resources (NeDNR) in performing its annual evaluation of the expected long-term availability of surface water supplies and hydrologically connected groundwater supplies in both the Lower Platte River and Missouri River Tributaries basins.

This numerical groundwater model will be used as a tool to calculate the groundwater depletion component of the NeDNR's evaluation of the appropriation status in the Lower Platte River and Missouri River Tributaries basins by evaluating the effect of well pumping on stream baseflow.

The LPMT Model covers a large portion of eastern Nebraska, assessing the central and northern parts of the study areas. See Figure D-1 for the geographical extent of the modeling area in relation to the Lower Platte River Basin.

### Central Nebraska Model

The CENEB was developed as a modeling tool for simulating surface water-groundwater interactions by reproducing long-term trends under varying hydrologic and hydrogeologic conditions in the region, in support of the Department's annual evaluation of the availability of each basin's hydrologically connected water supplies.

The CENEB expands on the geographic area of a previous model, the ELM. The ELM encompassed the entire Loup River Basin and the lands draining to the Elkhorn River above Norfolk. The CENEB includes the same areas as the ELM, and adds portions of the Niobrara River Basin in north central Nebraska and the Lower Niobrara River and Ponca Creek drainages in South Dakota. See Figure D-1 for the geographic extent of the modeling area with relation to the Lower Platte River Basin.

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

The CENEB was developed to characterize water supplies, uses, and demands in portions of the Niobrara, Loup, and Elkhorn Basins. The CENEB incorporates a groundwater model developed using MODFLOW-NWT and CROPSIM. A surface water operations model was not included as part of this model because there are few surface water demands in this region.

### Elkhorn-Loup Model

The ELM, is a U.S. Geological Survey (USGS) Nebraska Water Science Center project is designed to assist the Natural Resources Districts (NRDs) and NeDNR by characterizing the groundwater system within the Elkhorn River and Loup River Basins and by providing a regional groundwater-flow model.

The ELM, a multi-phase project, is a study of surface-water and groundwater resources in the Elkhorn River basin upstream from Norfolk, Nebraska, and the Loup River basin upstream from Columbus, Nebraska. The study area is approximately the same as the CENEB (see Figure D-1).

The first phase included construction of a groundwater-flow model using previously collected data. The calibrated groundwater-flow model was used to assess current and future impacts of groundwater pumping on surface water, and could be used to provide information to the NRDs for groundwater-management planning.

The second phase was part of a larger, ongoing effort to enhance the current knowledge of hydrogeology, improve the understanding of stream-aquifer interactions, and compile reliable data describing hydrogeologic properties such groundwater recharge, groundwater pumpage for irrigation, and groundwater discharge to evapotranspiration in the study area.

The third phase of the study continues to use new methods and data to refine the groundwater-flow model developed in phases one and two. Implementation of these new methods and data will increase the understanding of the availability of groundwater and the effect of anthropogenic stresses on the groundwater and surface-water resources in the Elkhorn and Loup River basins.

Finally, the results of the phase-three model will undergo calibration via parameter estimation similar to the calibration done for phase two, as well as the completion of additional analysis runs.

### Lower Platte River Consortium Conveyance Tool

The Lower Platte River Consortium Conveyance Tool (CONSORV) was developed by The Flatwater Group as a resource to estimate stream losses along different portions of the Lower Platte Basin, and to evaluate potential management actions in terms of estimated river flow changes at certain critical locations. CONSORV is a surface water model, built using the Stella modeling platform developed by iSee Systems, which operates on a daily timestep, and covers the Loup River basin downstream of St. Paul (along with a portion of the Middle Loup downstream of Dunning), the Elkhorn River downstream of Norfolk, and the Lower Platte River from Duncan to Louisville.

CONSORV primarily uses data from USGS and Nebraska DNR stream gages, focusing on the 2004 to 2015 time period, but can be used to project potential stream conditions and conveyance losses under various hydrologic and operational scenarios. The Stella framework used in CONSORV uses stocks, flows, and convertors to represent the storage, movement, and management decisions associated with water supplies in a river basin setting. Historic gains and losses within the model's river segments serve as the foundation for estimating changes to river flows under modified hydrologic conditions.

CONSORV takes advantage of the user-friendly, object-oriented nature of Stella to provide simple and intuitive interfaces, serving as dashboards for quickly constructing the conditions under a particular scenario, or set of scenarios, and then providing model output in an easily understood format. Simple buttons, dials, and sliders are included to allow the user to rapidly adjust the modeled conditions and run the model. Results are included in tabular, graphical, and map-based formats, allowing for quick and straightforward analysis of the output. Several of the key scenarios developed with input from the

## Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

Coalition are “built-in” to the model, but can also be easily modified to test for sensitivity and to evaluate alternative management actions. Flow at the Ashland gage serves as one of the primary evaluation metrics, and the volume of any additional estimated flow at Ashland resulting from alternative management actions is displayed via bar graphs, line charts, and tabular entries.

This page intentionally left blank

Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

## Appendix E: Platte River at Ashland Recession Tool

This page intentionally left blank

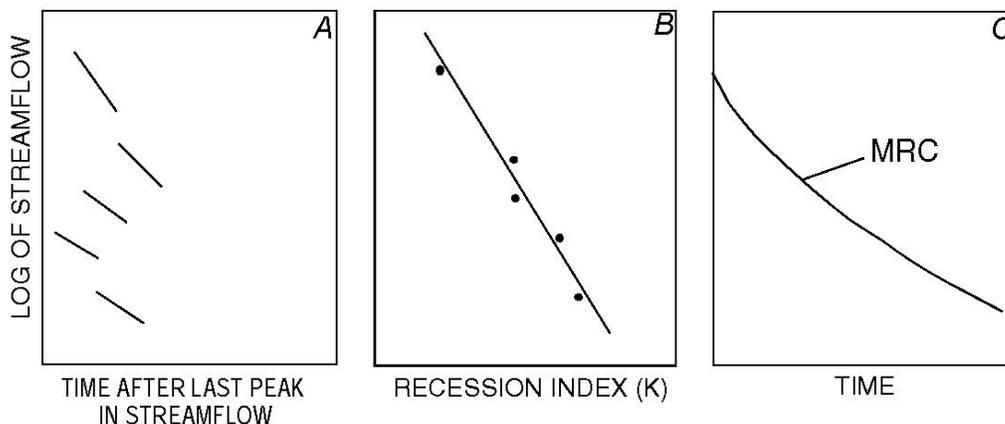
## Flow Recession Analysis for the Platte River at Ashland

Understanding the behavior of the Platte River at Ashland as it recedes is important to the ability of the Consortium to properly time the implementation of response actions. Using the Platte River at Ashland Recession Tool allows the user to enter in a flow in the Platte River at Ashland and predict the decay behavior for 30 days assuming no further inputs to the system (precipitation or upstream storage releases). The tool plots the recession curve and the user can determine the estimated days until a critical threshold is reached. The following discussion explains the analysis behind the Platte River at Ashland Recession Tool.

The USGS program RECESS was used to generate the Master Recession Curve (MRC). The program RECESS (USGS 1998) is available free from USGS and determines the MRC of streamflow recession during times when all flow can be considered to be groundwater discharge and when the profile of the groundwater head distribution is nearly stable. The program uses a repetitive interactive procedure for selecting several periods of continuous recession, determines the best-fit equations for the rate of recession as a function of the logarithm of flow, then uses the coefficients of this equation to derive the MRC, which is an equation of time as a function of the logarithm of flow.

The basic steps for determining the MRC are illustrated in Figure E-1. First, the program locates periods of streamflow recession and allows the user to select nearly linear segments (Figure E-1[A]). Then, for each segment, the program determines the best linear equation for time as a function of LogQ (logarithm of flow), and extracts from this equation a coefficient that is the recession index (K) of the segment (data points, Figure E-1[B]). Coefficients of this equation are used to obtain the MRC (Figure E-1[C]), which is a second-order polynomial expression for time as a function of LogQ.

**Figure E-1: Schematic Representation of the Method Used to Determine the Master Recession Curve**

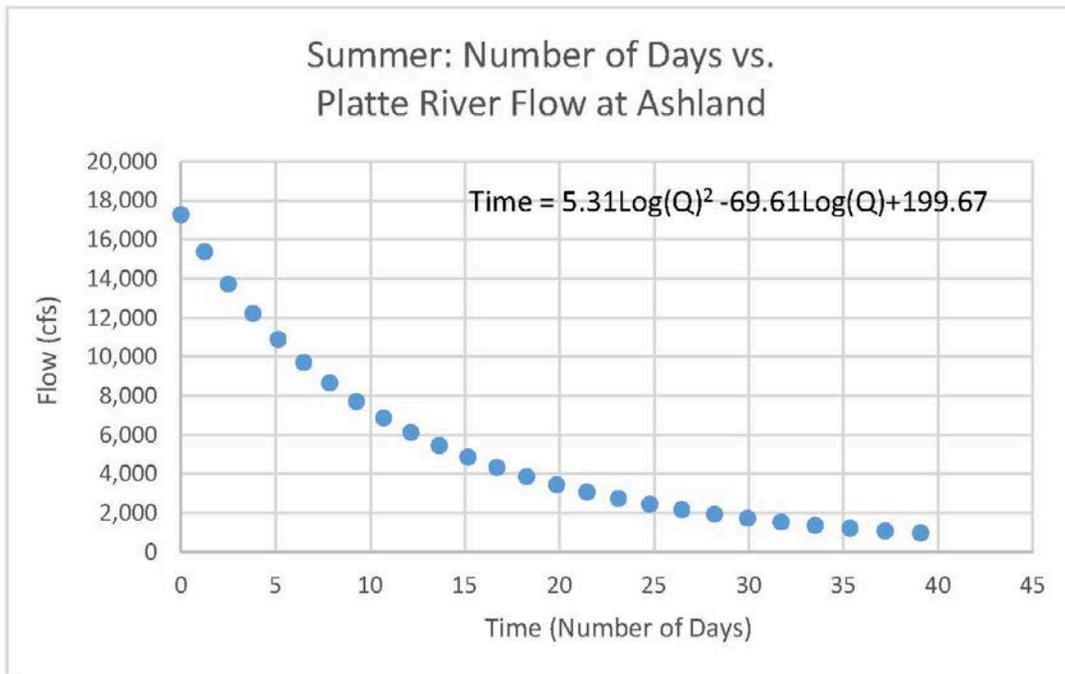


Source: USGS 1998.

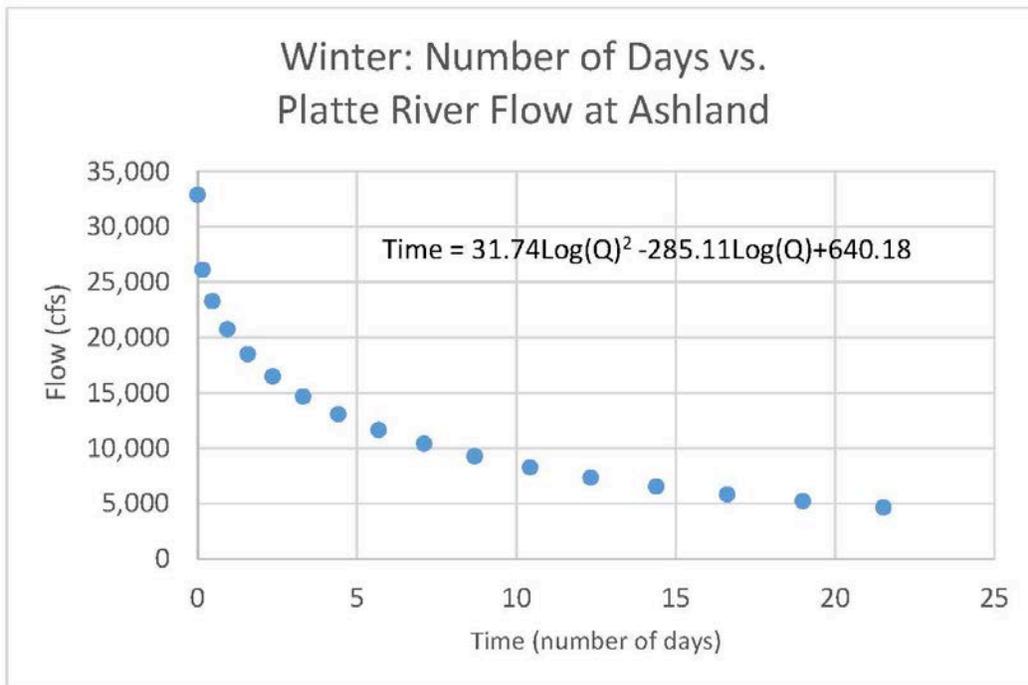
Notes: (A) selected regression segments; (B) recession index (K) (time per log cycle of streamflow recession) and best-fit line, and (C) the master recession curve, obtained from coefficients of function in B.

The analysis using RECESS utilized the mean average daily flow for the Platte River at Ashland from 1988 to 2015. The year was split into a summer period (April through September) and a winter period (October through March). The resultant MRC for both summer and winter are shown in Figure E-2 and Figure E-3, respectively.

**Figure E-2: Summer Master Recession Curve for Platte River at Ashland**



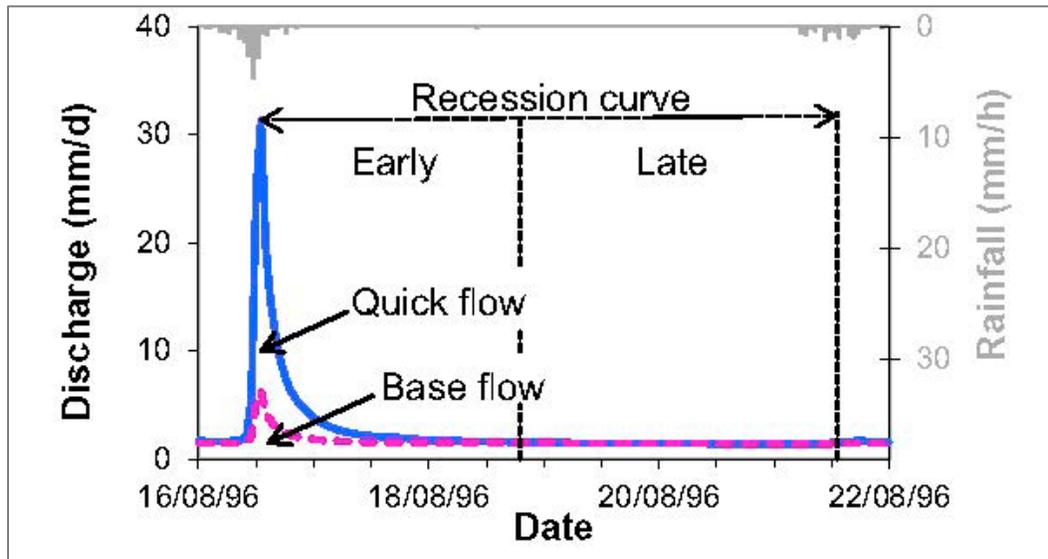
**Figure E-3: Winter Master Recession Curve for Platte River at Ashland**



As shown in Figure E-4, the total recession curve for a consists of both quick flow and baseflow. The USGS RECESS program results show the behavior of the MRC for the baseflow. Baseflow is the portion of streamflow that is not runoff and results from seepage of water from the ground into a channel slowly over time. For the analysis, it is necessary to understand the behavior of the early part of the recession known as quick flow. Quick flow occurs immediately after a rainfall/runoff event where the streamflow

peaks. If no other system inputs occur (no additional rainfall), then the streamflow will recede until it reaches baseflow.

**Figure E-4: Quickflow and Baseflow Components of Streamflow**



Source: Stewart, M.K. 2015. "Promising new baseflow separation and recession analysis methods applied to streamflow at Glendu Catchment, New Zealand." *Hydrology and Earth System Sciences*. 19:2587–2603. Doi: 10.5194/hess-19-2587-2015.

For the Platte River at Ashland, the recession of the quick flow generally follows the behavior of Equation E-1 for the first 1-2 days. After which, the recession generally follows the behavior of Equation E-2.

$$Q_n = Q_{(n-1)}2^{(-0.55)} \text{ for } 1 \leq n \leq 2 \quad \text{Equation E-1}$$

where  $Q$  is the flow in the Platte River at Ashland  $n$  corresponds to day  $n$  (the number of days after the start of the recession).

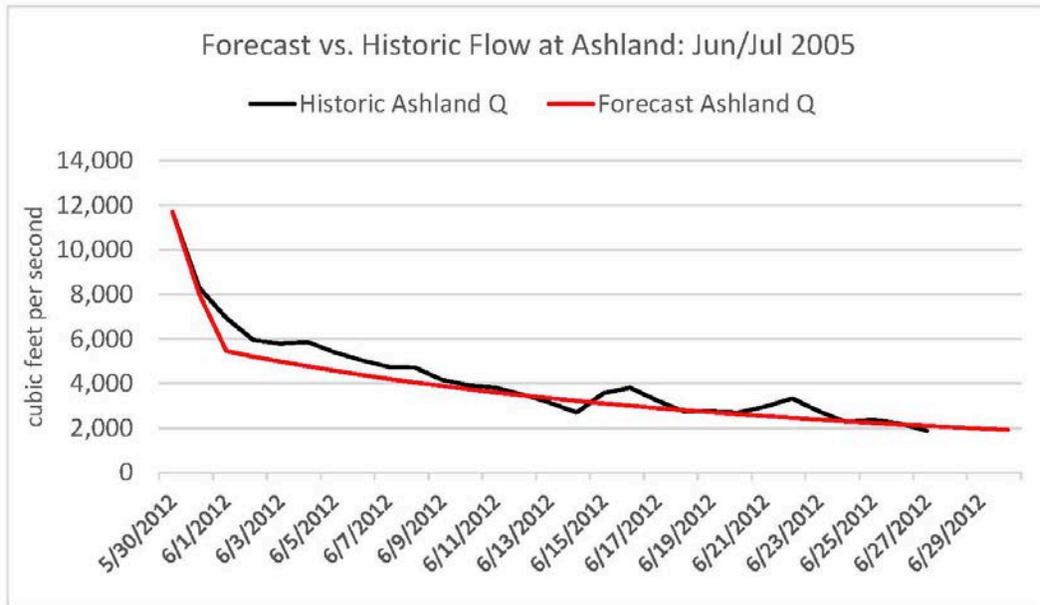
$$Q_n = 10^{[\text{Log}Q_{(n-1)} - \frac{k}{K}]} \text{ for } n > 2 \quad \text{Equation E-2}$$

where  $k = \text{recession constant} = 10^{\frac{-1}{K}}$  and  $K = \text{storage delay factor} = 10.61\text{Log}Q_{(n-1)} - 69.91$  for months April through September and  $K = \text{storage delay factor} = 63.49\text{Log}Q_{(n-1)} - 285.11$  for months October through March.

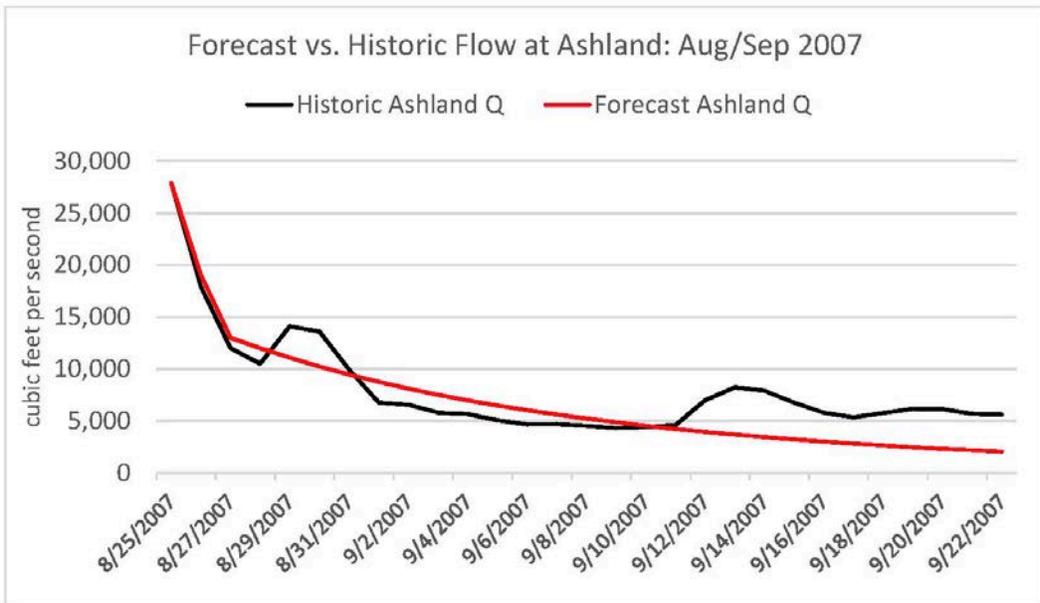
The storage delay factor,  $K$ , is defined as the time taken for discharge to recede by a factor of 10 (i.e. one log cycle). This factor is determined by RECESS and is provided in tabular output. The Platte River at Ashland Recession Tool uses the lookup function on these tables to obtain the  $K$ -value.

Figure E-5 through Figure D-9 show plots of randomly selected recession periods on the Platte River at Ashland and compares the historic streamflow versus the forecasted streamflow. In general, the forecasted streamflow reasonably matches the historic recession behavior.

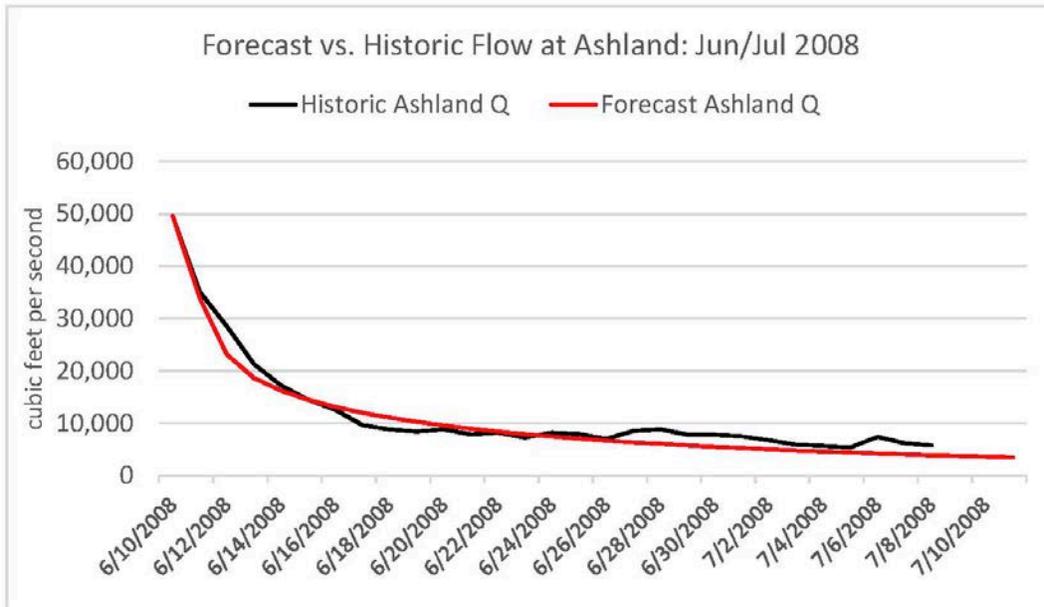
**Figure E-5: Forecasted versus Historic Flow for the Platte River at Ashland (June/July 2005)**



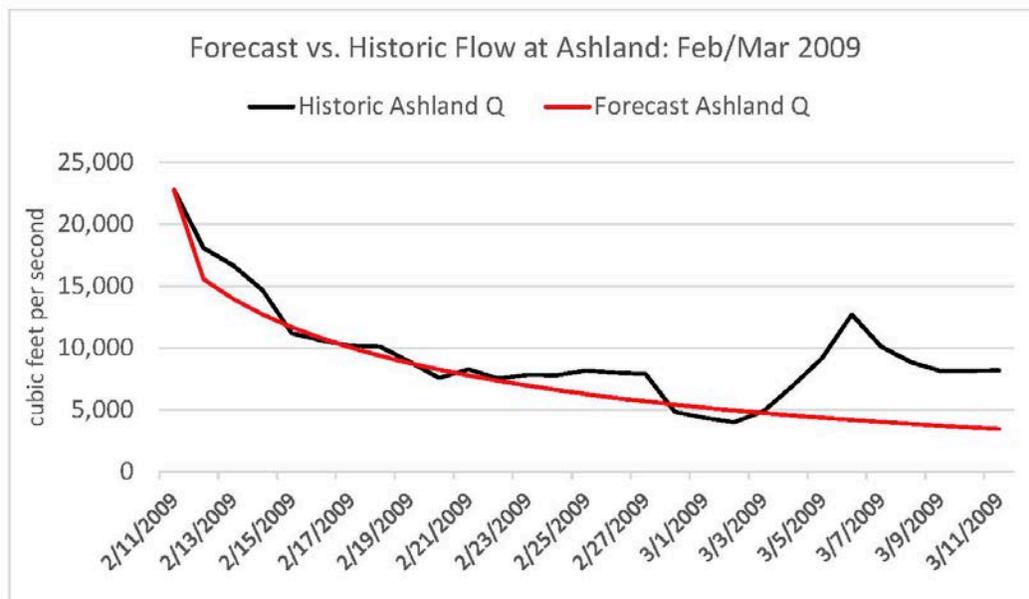
**Figure E-6: Forecasted versus Historic Flow for the Platte River at Ashland (August/September 2007)**



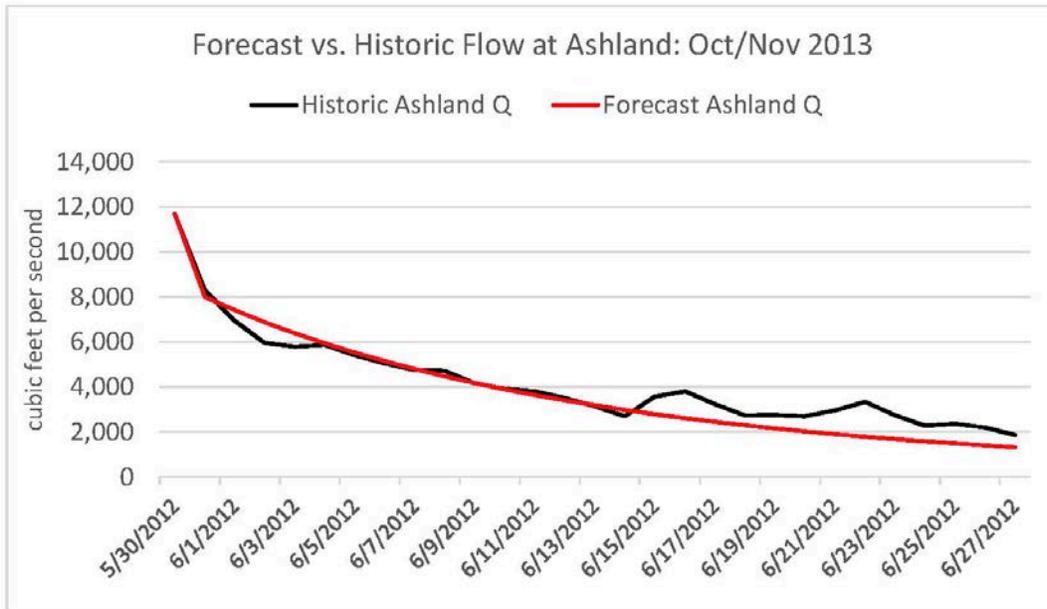
**Figure E-7: Forecasted versus Historic Flow for the Platte River at Ashland (June/July 2008)**



**Figure E-8: Forecasted versus Historic Flow for the Platte River at Ashland (February/March 2009)**



**Figure E-9: Forecasted versus Historic Flow for the Platte River at Ashland (October/November 2013)**



## Appendix F: Public Outreach and Stakeholder Involvement

This page intentionally left blank



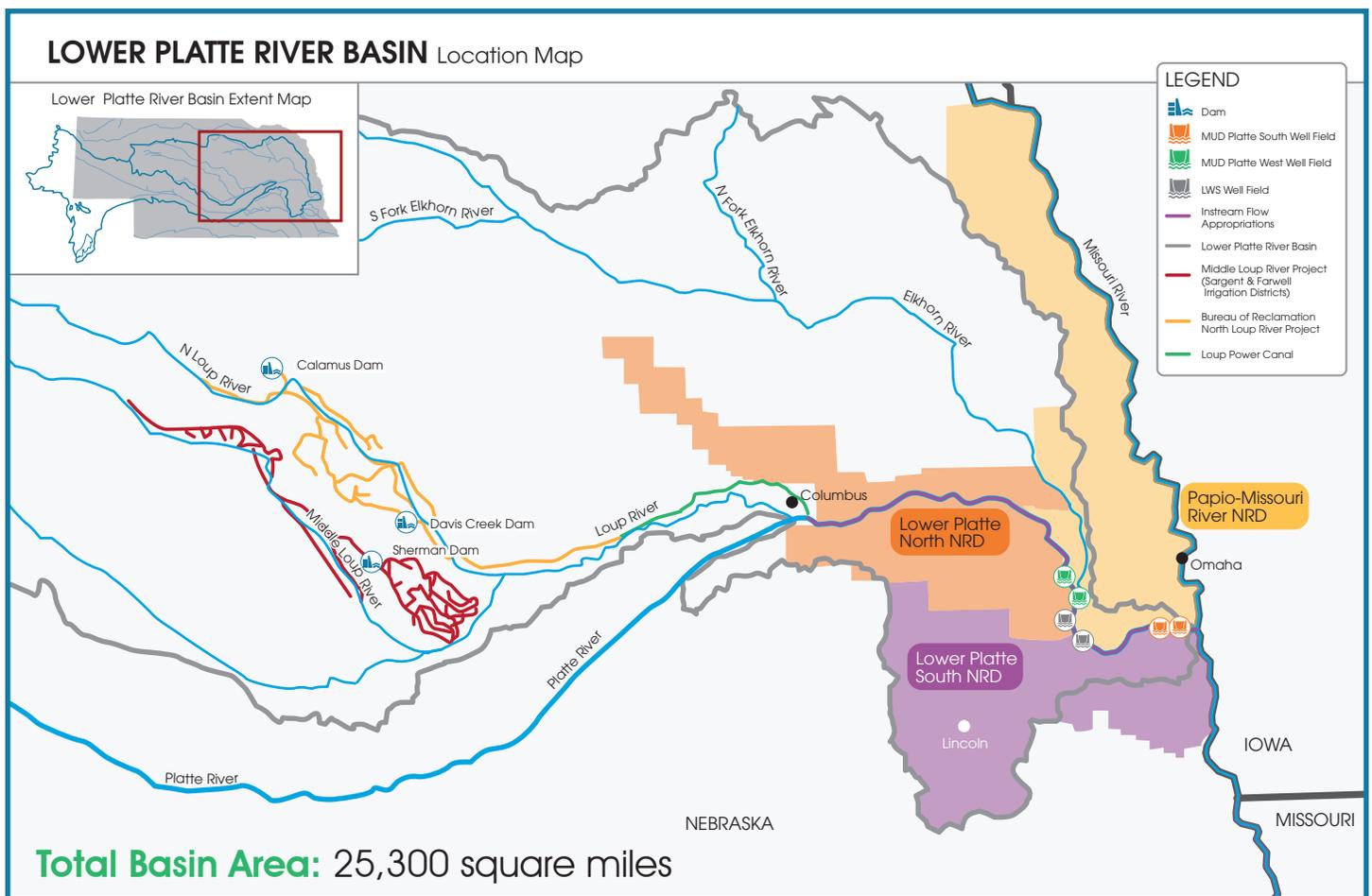
# Lower Platte River Consortium

The **three Lower Platte River Natural Resources Districts**, **Lincoln Water System**, the **Metropolitan Utilities District of Omaha**, and the **Nebraska Department of Natural Resources** are embarking on an effort to develop a Drought Contingency Plan for the Lower Platte River Basin in Nebraska. The plan will offer regional solutions to improve the water supply reliability and drought resiliency.

**Consortium Purpose Statement:** To study long-term water supplies available to the lower subbasin for enhancing streamflows or aquifer storage to support sustainable public water systems.

## What is the Lower Platte River Basin?

The Lower Platte River Basin is defined as all surface areas that drain into the Lower Platte River, including those areas that drain into the Loup River and the Elkhorn River, and all aquifers that impact surface water flows of the basin.



### Consortium Partners



### Funding Partners



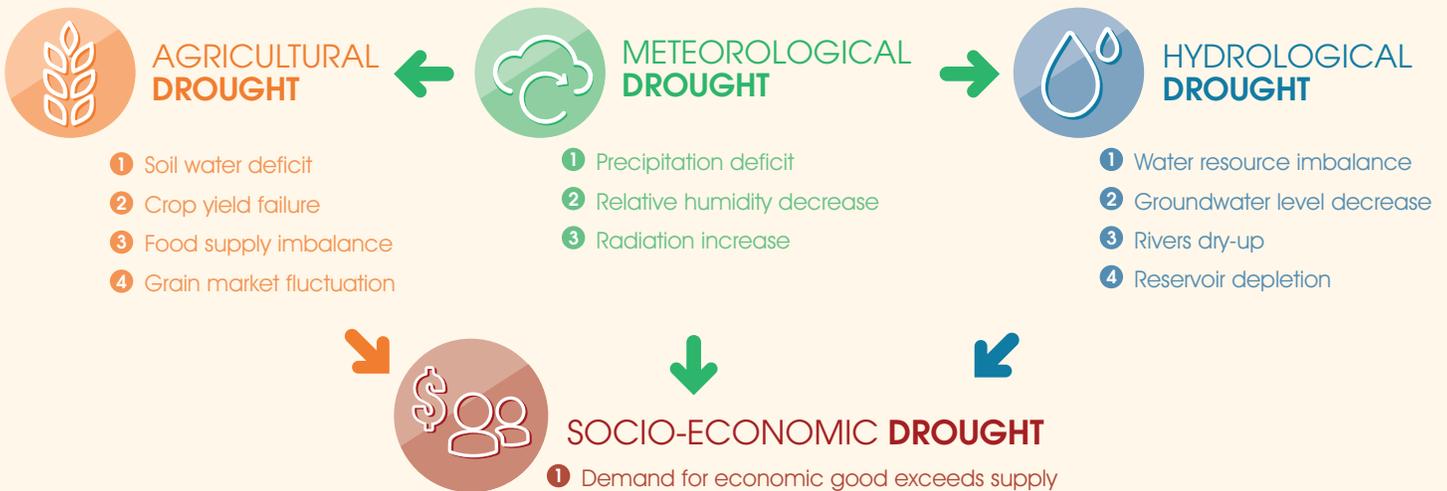
## What is the Drought Contingency Plan?

Consortium partners are collaborating to develop a Drought Contingency Plan which is in part funded by the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation and the Nebraska Water Sustainability Fund. The plan will offer drought mitigation and response planning from a regional, integrated perspective, while considering Consortium partners' existing water resources and assets and exploring alternative and/or new operational tactics to improve reliability and resiliency during droughts.

## What is drought?

**Drought** is a deficiency in precipitation over an extended period. Drought is a natural hazard, it has a slow onset, and may evolve over the course of months or even years. The impacts of drought can be reduced through **preparedness** and **mitigation**. It is a normal, recurrent feature of climate that occurs in virtually all climate zones. The duration of droughts varies widely. There are cases when drought develops relatively quickly and lasts a very short period of time, exacerbated by extreme heat and/or wind. In other cases drought may span many years.

**Human factors, such as water demand and water management can exacerbate the impact that drought has on a region. Because of the interplay between a natural drought event and various human factors, drought means different things to different people. Drought is defined in a number of ways.**



Planning ahead is more efficient and effective than waiting to take measures in a crisis. Drought contingency planning supports preparedness to:

- Identify vulnerabilities and mitigation actions to reduce risks
- Improve coordination and cooperation among key entities, and development of procedures for monitoring, assessing, and responding to drought
- Reduce impacts of drought, and conflicts between water users

# Drought Contingency Plans include 6 primary phases:

## 1. Establish Diverse Task Force and Objectives

- The Task Force is made up of member NRDs and their elected boards, Metropolitan Utilities District, Nebraska DNR, and Lincoln Water System. The Task Force actively participates in developing the drought contingency plan.
- The Task Force represents multiple interests in the planning area including:
  - Agricultural, domestic and commercial sectors
  - Fish and wildlife habitat
  - Forestry and range management
  - Park facilities
  - Soil conservation
  - Public water supplies
  - Surface rights including:
    - Storage, irrigation, hydropower, manufacturing, diversions, instream flows and other beneficial uses
- Bureau of Reclamation reviews the Task Force membership and provides feedback as necessary to support and encourage a diverse and inclusive Task Force.

## 2. Develop Monitoring Plan

- Establish a process for monitoring near- and long-term water availability, and a framework for predicting the probability of future droughts or confirming an existing drought.
- Establish a process for collection, analysis, and dissemination of water availability and other drought-related data (e.g., precipitation, temperature).
- Explain how data will be used to predict or confirm droughts, including identifying metrics and triggers that will be used to define stages of drought and to trigger response actions.

## 3. Conduct Vulnerability Assessment

- Assess the risks to critical resources within the planning area and the factors contributing to those risks.
- Will drive the development of potential mitigation and response actions.
- Consider a range of future conditions, including uncertainties related to changing hydrologic conditions.

## 4. Identify Mitigation and Response Actions

- Identify, evaluate, and prioritize response and mitigation actions and activities that can build long-term resiliency and can be implemented during a drought that will mitigate the impacts.
- Mitigation actions are actions, programs, and strategies implemented before drought to address potential risks and impacts while response actions are actions that are implemented during specific stages of drought to manage the limited supply and decrease the severity of immediate impacts.

## 5. Develop Administrative Framework

- Identify who is responsible for undertaking the actions necessary to implement each element of the drought contingency plan, including communicating with the public about those actions.
- Identify roles, responsibilities, and procedures necessary to: conduct drought monitoring; initiate response actions; initiate mitigation actions; and update the plan.

## 6. Identify Plan Update Process

- Describe the process that was undertaken to develop the plan, including how stakeholders were engaged and how input was considered.
- Include a process and schedule for monitoring, evaluating, and updating the drought contingency plan.

# A STATE IN DROUGHT

2012 Impacts on Nebraska

**100%** of Nebraska in drought

**96%** in **EXTREME** drought conditions

## AGRICULTURAL IMPACTS

HAY PRODUCTION  
↓ **28%**

CORN PRODUCTION  
↓ **16%**

SOYBEAN PRODUCTION  
↓ **21%**

over **1,100** IRRIGATORS

shut off from pumping from **Big Blue, Elkhorn, Loup, Niobrara, North Platte** and **Republican Rivers**.

Economic Impact from indemnity payments estimated at **\$780M**

Ranchers lost an average of **\$200** per cattle head

**178** reported water main breaks in **May, June & July** in Omaha – up from only **56** in **2011**

Nebraska experienced the worst fire season since **1919**  
More than **\$12M** in damage was reported

**400,000** acres had burned in more than **1,200** fires

**Lower Platte River** experienced record low flows with high water temperatures ranging from

**92-97°**  
Fahrenheit



↑ INCREASES IN FISH KILLS



↓ DECREASES IN WATER-BASED RECREATION

Worst outbreak of **epizootic hemorrhagic disease** since **1970s**



€ killing more than **1/3** of the **whitetail deer** population



# Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

---

Public Open House  
June 19, 2018

**Purpose:** To study long-term water supplies available to the lower Platte subbasin for enhancing streamflows or aquifer storage to support sustainable public water systems.

# Consortium Members



LOWER PLATTE SOUTH  
natural resources district



Lower Platte North  
Natural Resources District



PAPIÓ-MISSOURI RIVER  
NATURAL  
RESOURCES  
DISTRICT  
OMAHA, NE



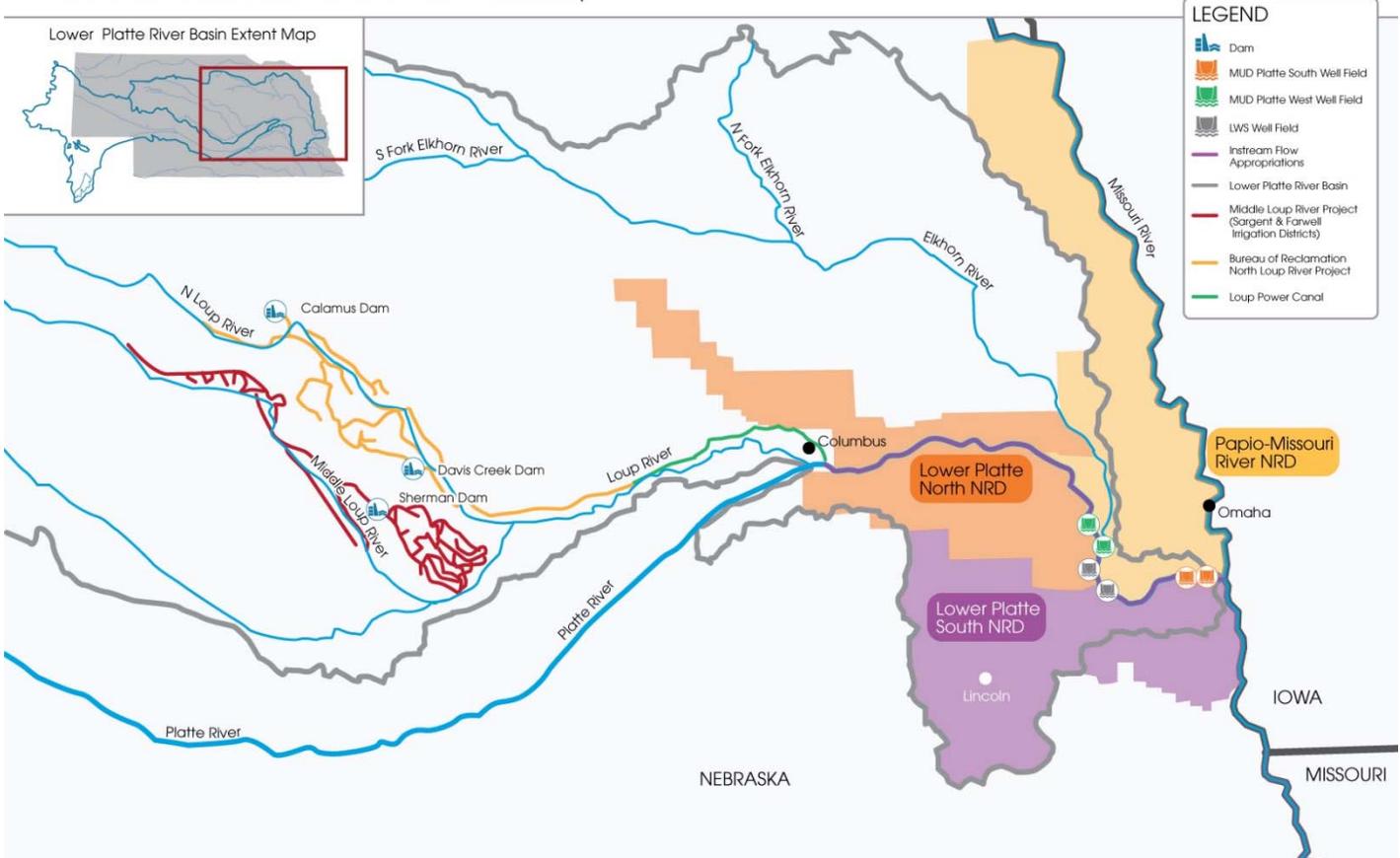
NEBRASKA  
DEPT. OF NATURAL RESOURCES



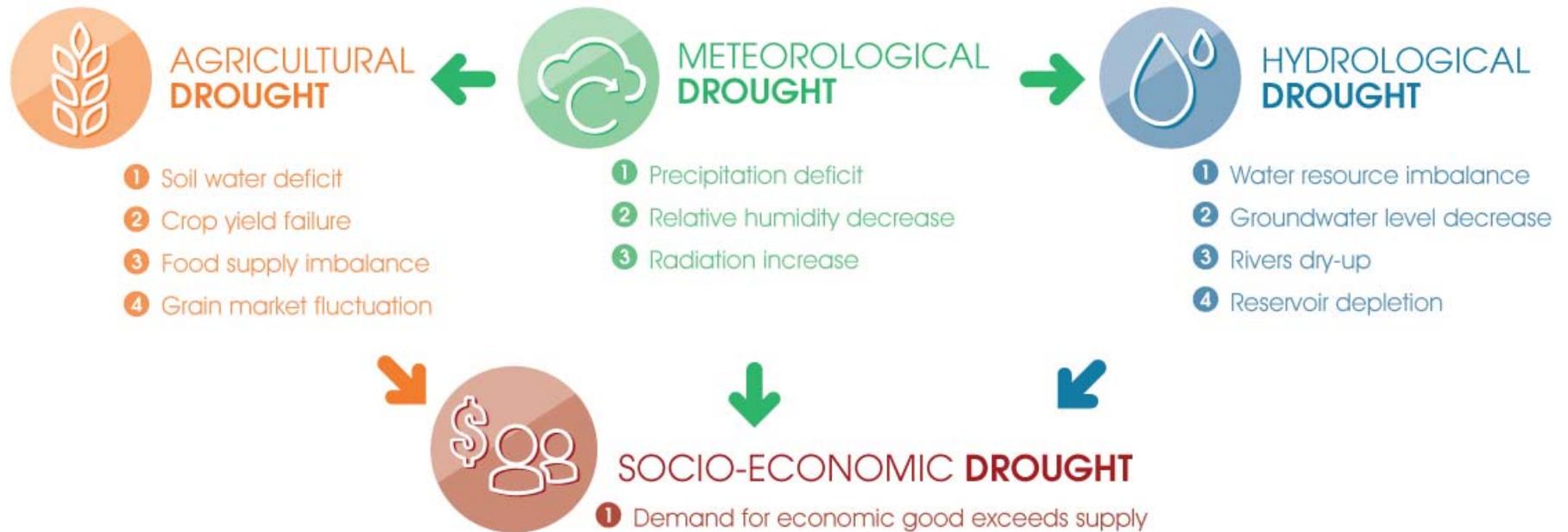
Lower Platte River **Drought Contingency Plan**

# Lower Platte River Basin

**LOWER PLATTE RIVER BASIN** Location Map



# Anatomy of Drought



# Drought Contingency Planning Process



Lower Platte River **Drought Contingency Plan**

# Basin Hydrology

- Upper Platte fed by snowmelt in Rocky Mountains
- Lake McConaughy - mainstem North Platte River
- Platte River above Duncan becomes disconnected during low flows



# Vulnerability Assessment

The degree to which a population is vulnerable to a drought hinges on the ability to anticipate, to deal with, resist, and recover from the drought.

# Major Sectors Impacted by Drought

- Agricultural
- Municipal & Industrial
- Recreational & Environmental

# Agricultural Sector

- NRD controls
  - Groundwater allocations
  - Reduction of irrigated acres
  - Limits on expansion of irrigated acres
- Surface Water Administration (prior appropriation doctrine)

# Municipal & Industrial Sector

- Population growth
- System production, pumping, and delivery capacities
- Water use restrictions (lawn watering, car washing, water shortage rates, etc.)
- Water quality impacted/higher treatment costs
- Infrastructure failure/water main breaks
- Single source/lack of redundancy

# Recreational & Environmental Sector

- Loss or degradation of habitat (wetlands, endangered species,
- Fish kills
- Reduced tourism (boating, camping, fishing, etc.)

# Climate Change and Drought

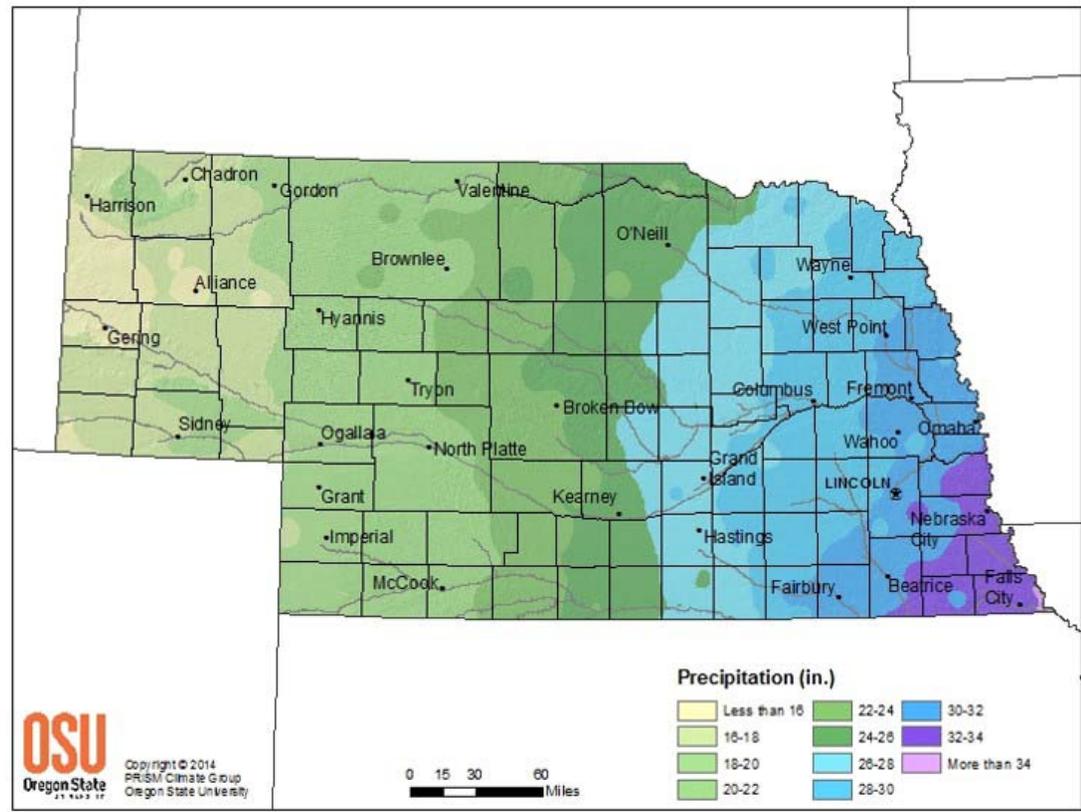
Tyler Williams  
Extension Educator

Lower Platte River **Drought Contingency Plan**

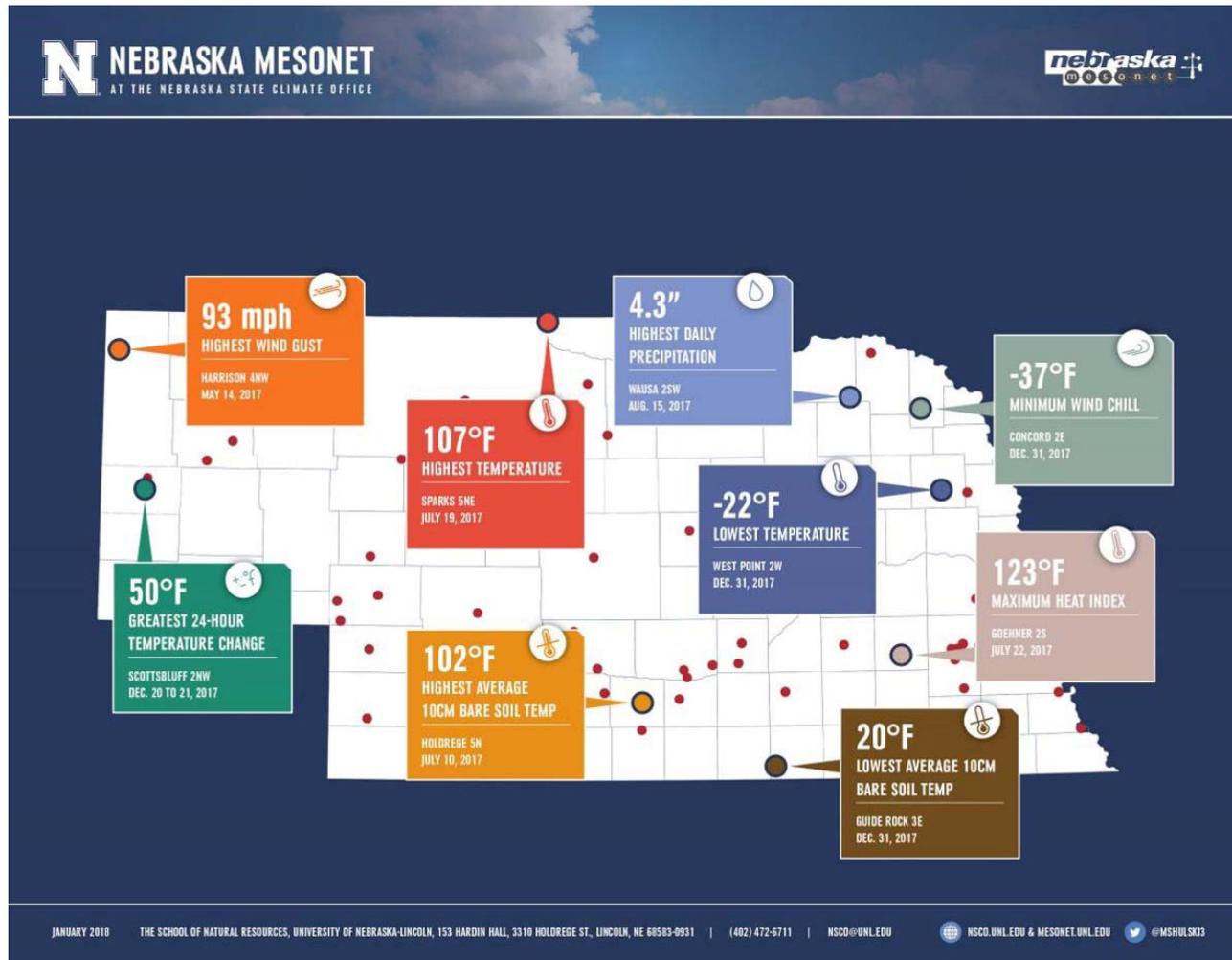
# What is drought?

- Drought is a deficiency in precipitation over an extended period.
  - Deficiency?
  - Precipitation?
  - Extended period?

# Average Annual Precipitation (1981-2010) Nebraska



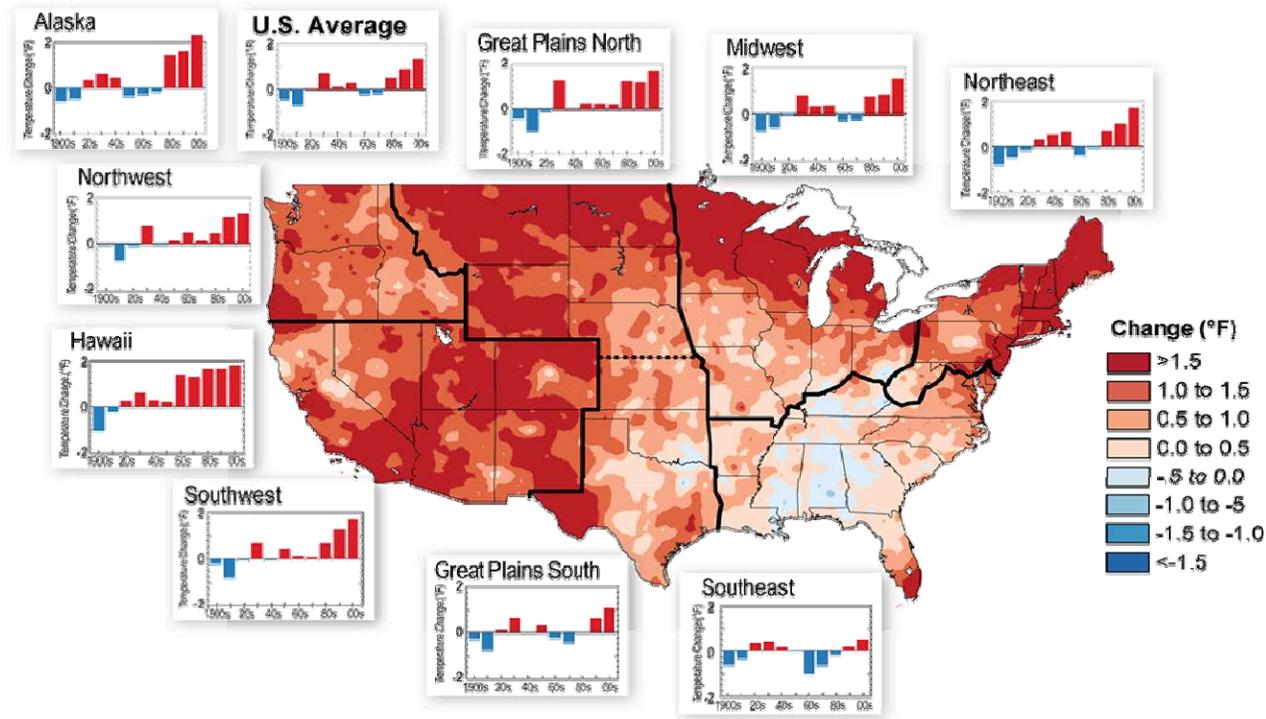
# 2017 State Weather Extremes



Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

# Annual Temperature Trend (1991-2012)

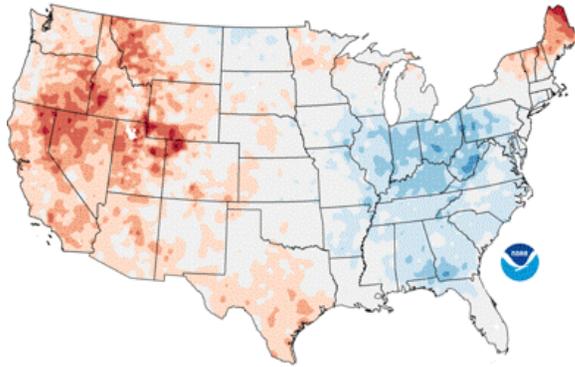
Observed U.S. Temperature Change



Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

# February Temp Trends

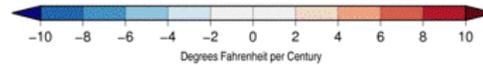
Average Temperature Trends  
February 1988–2017 (30 years)



Data Source: Skm Gridded Dataset (nClimGrid)

National Centers for Environmental Information

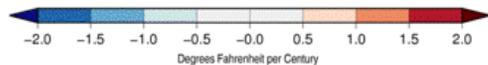
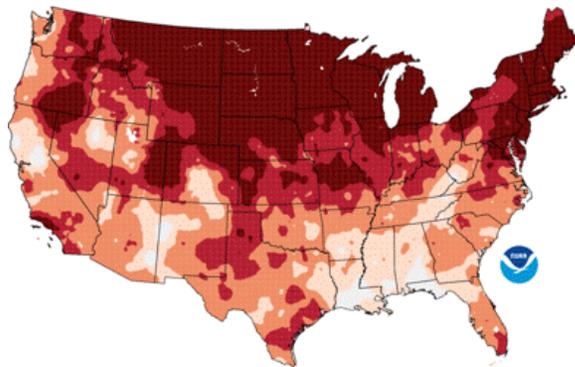
Average Temperature Trends  
February 1988–2017 (30 years)  
95% Confidence Interval



Data Source: Skm Gridded Dataset (nClimGrid)

National Centers for Environmental Information

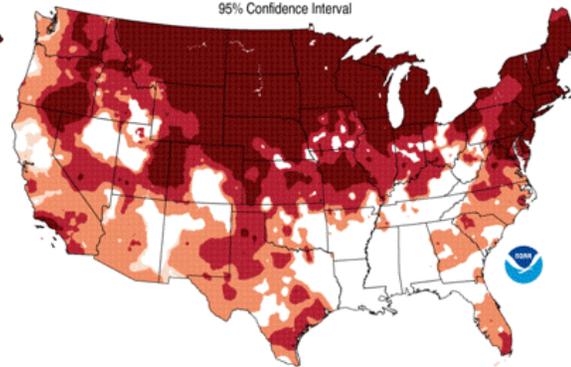
Average Temperature Trends  
February 1895–2017



Data Source: Skm Gridded Dataset (nClimGrid)

National Centers for Environmental Information

Average Mean Temperature Trends  
February 1895–2017  
95% Confidence Interval

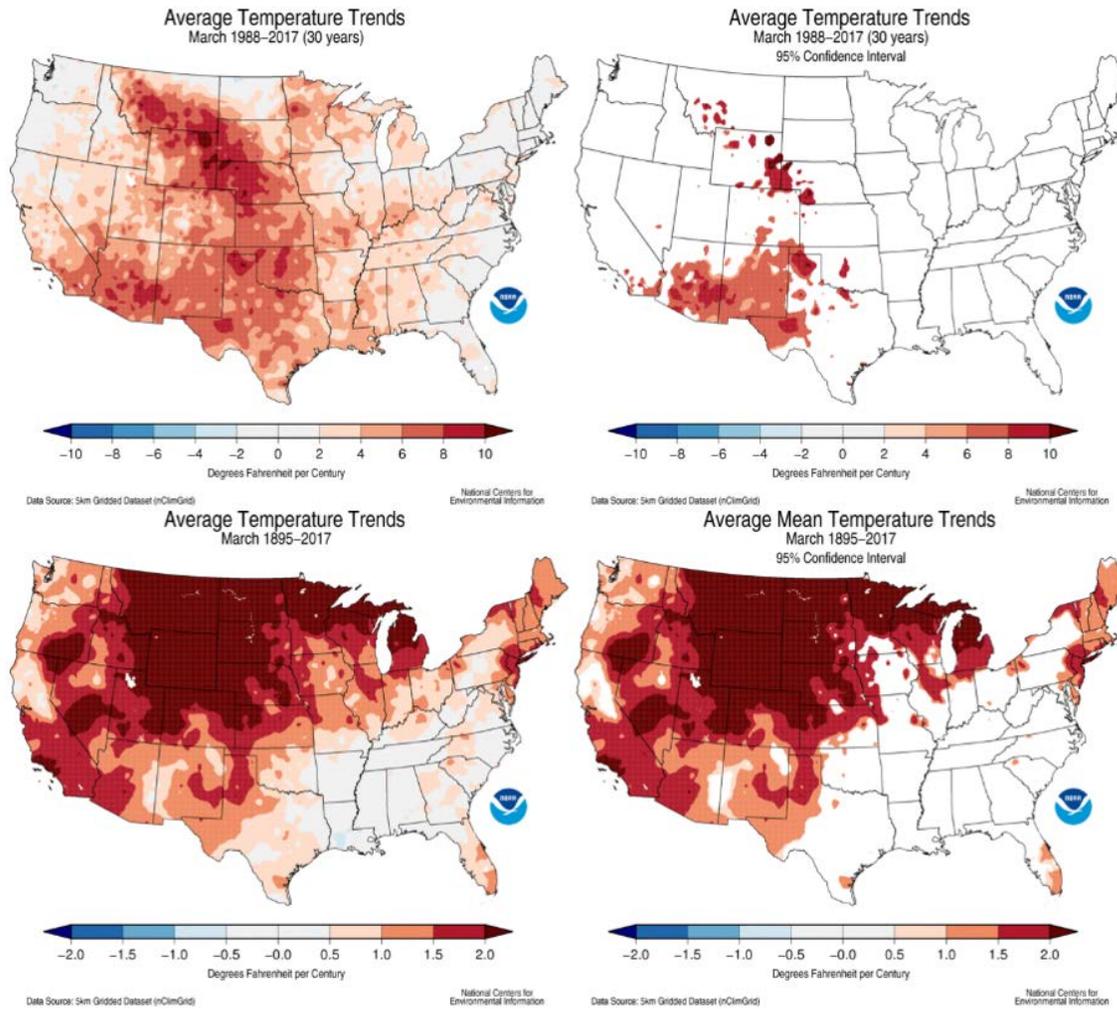


Data Source: Skm Gridded Dataset (nClimGrid)

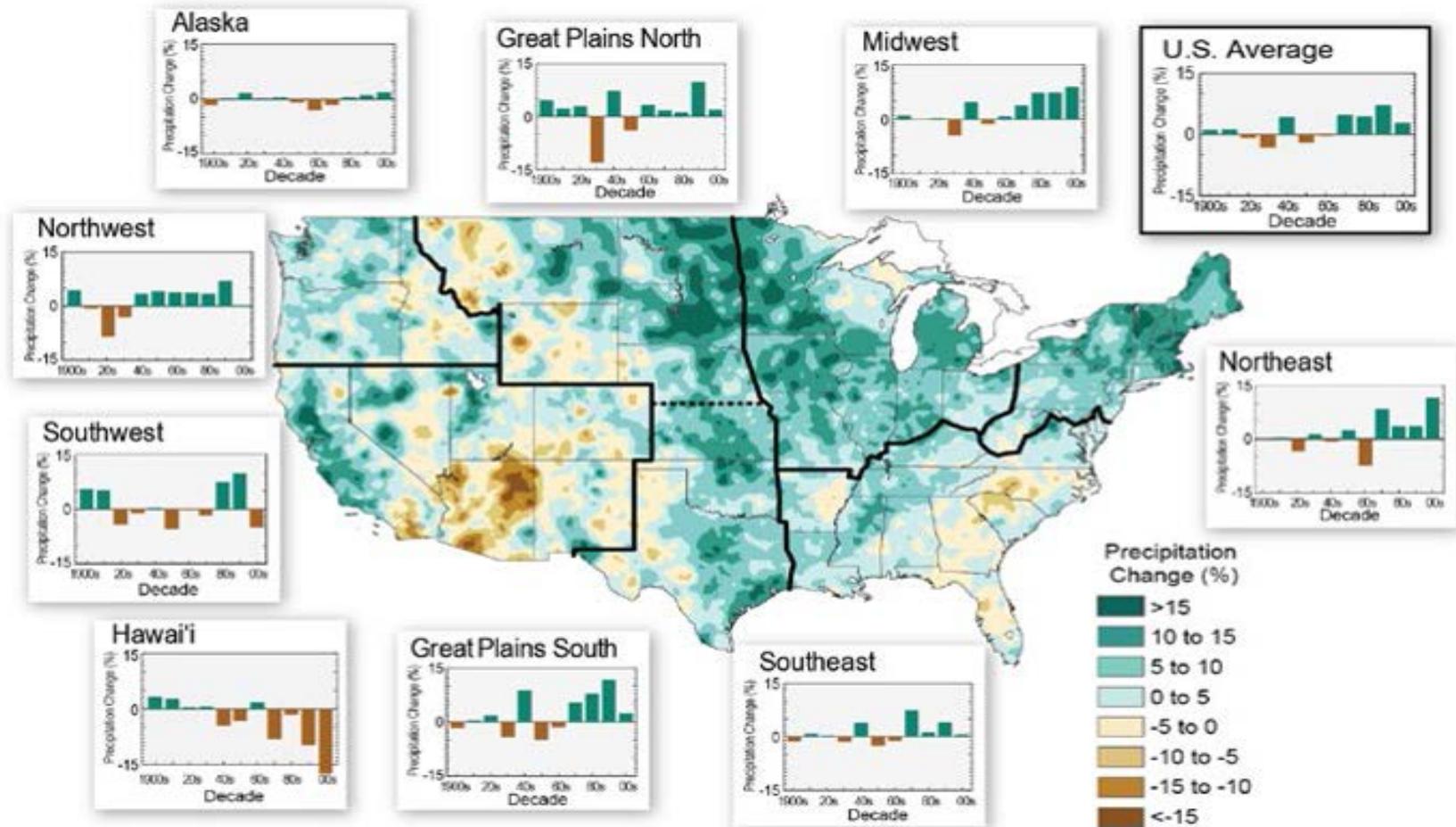
National Centers for Environmental Information

Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

# March Temp Trends

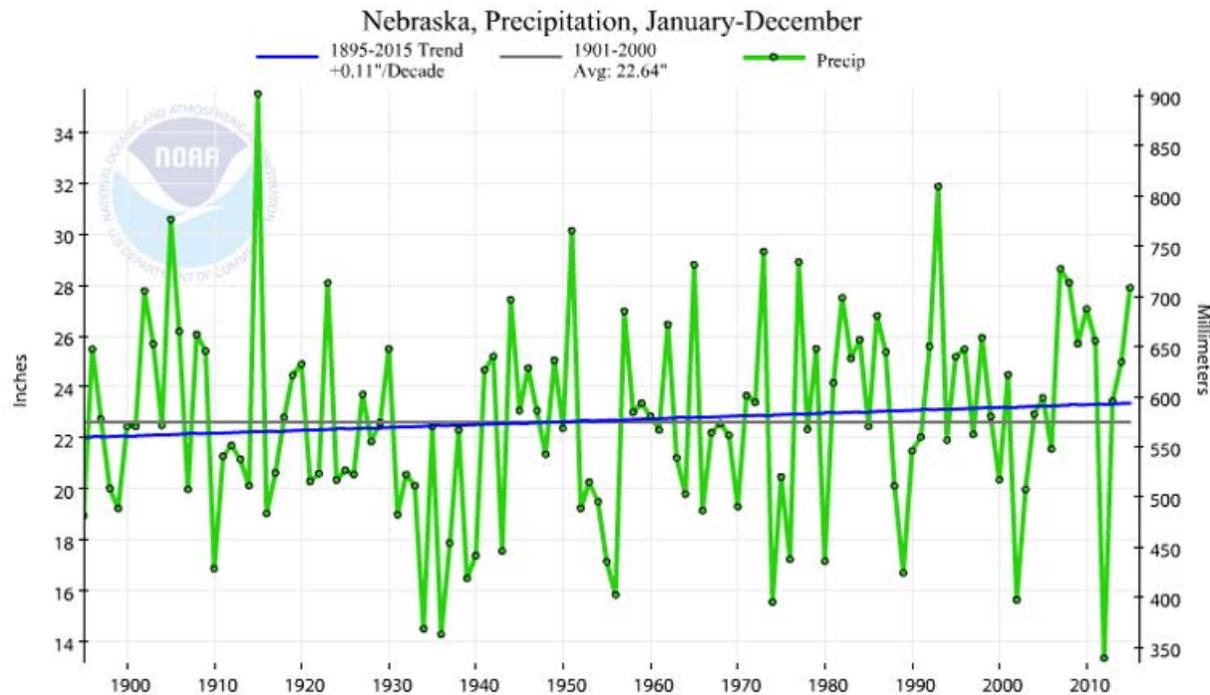


# Recent Changes in Precipitation



Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

# State-wide Precipitation

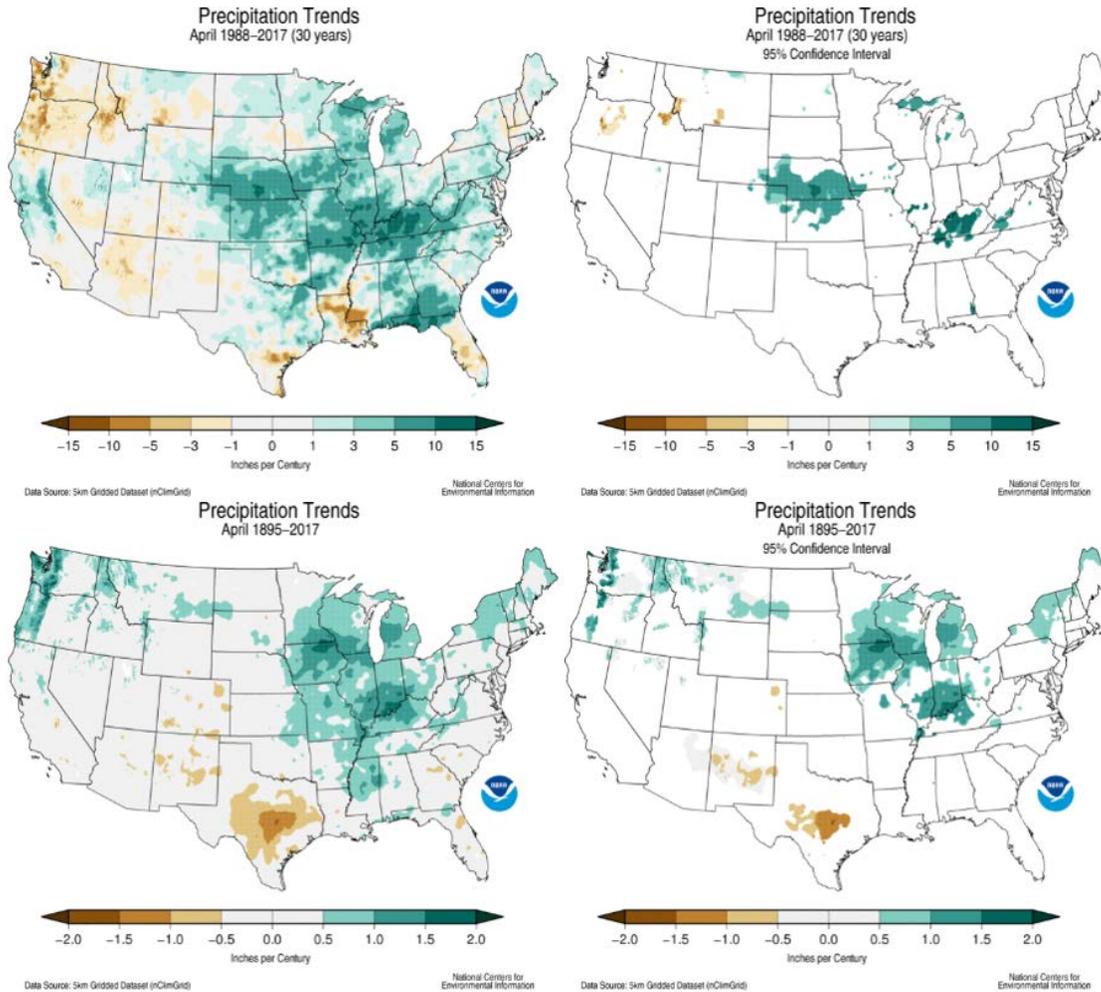


State-wide aggregate change in total precipitation by season (1895-2012)

- Winter: -0.20 in
- Spring: +1.11 in
- Summer: -0.45 in
- Fall: +0.04 in

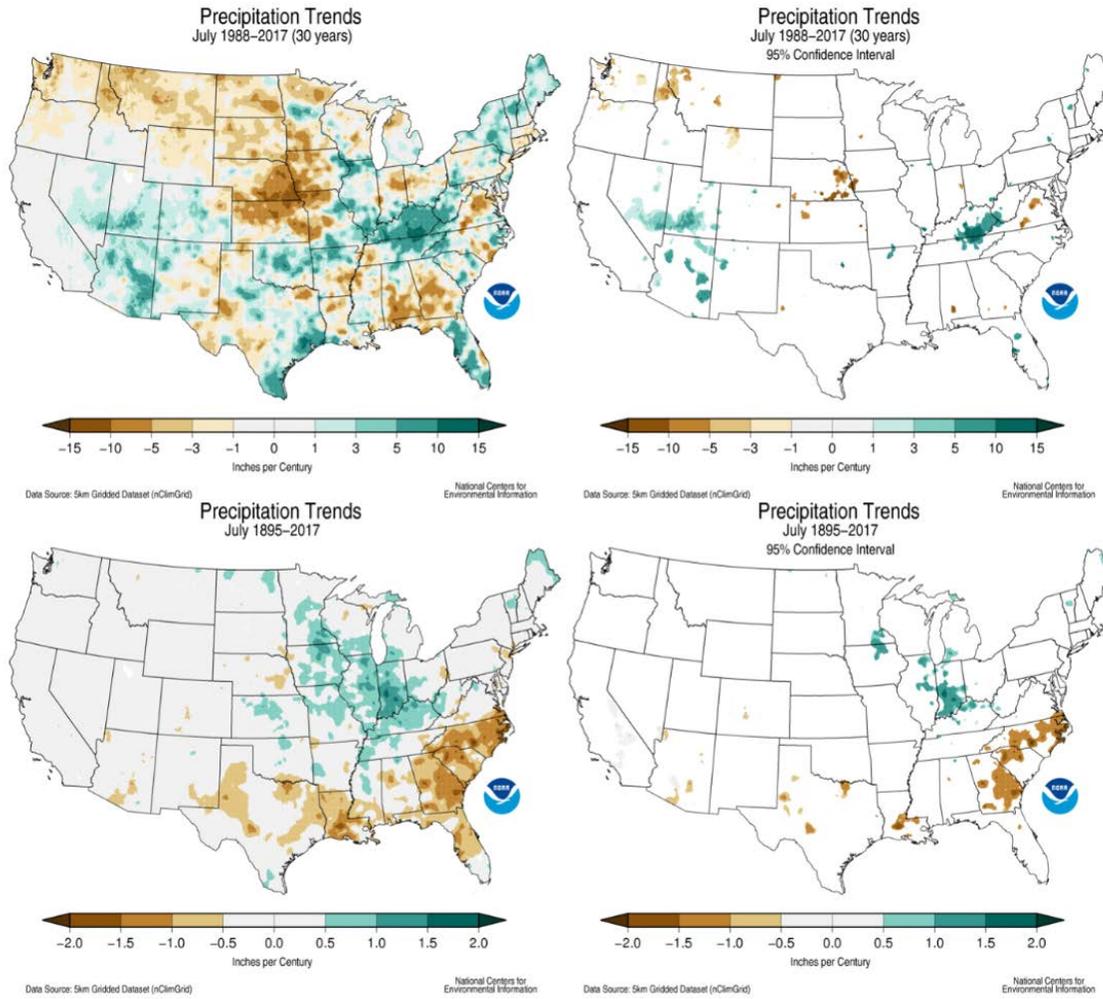
Source: Shulski et al., 2015

# April Precip Trends



Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

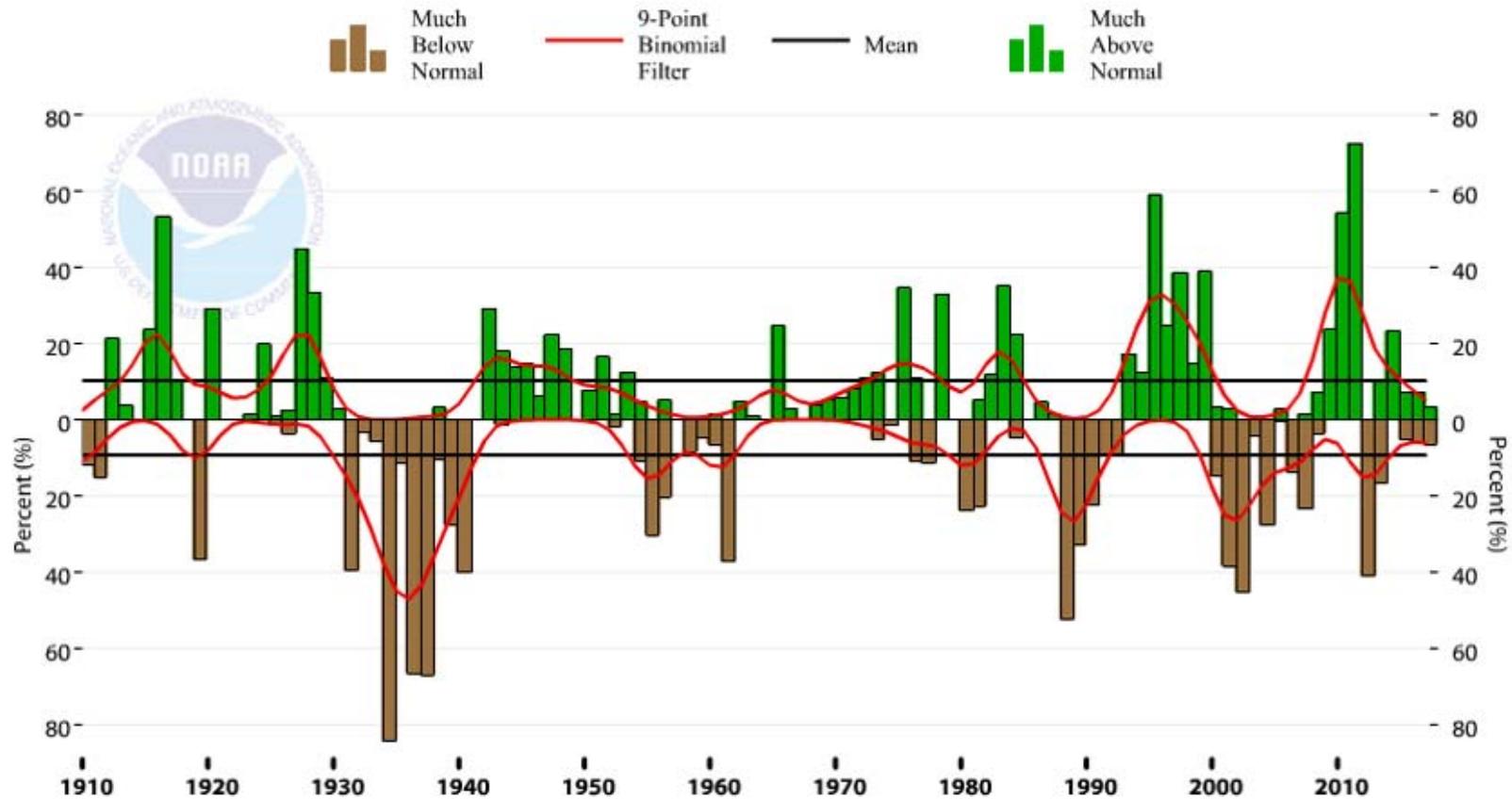
# July Precip Trends



Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

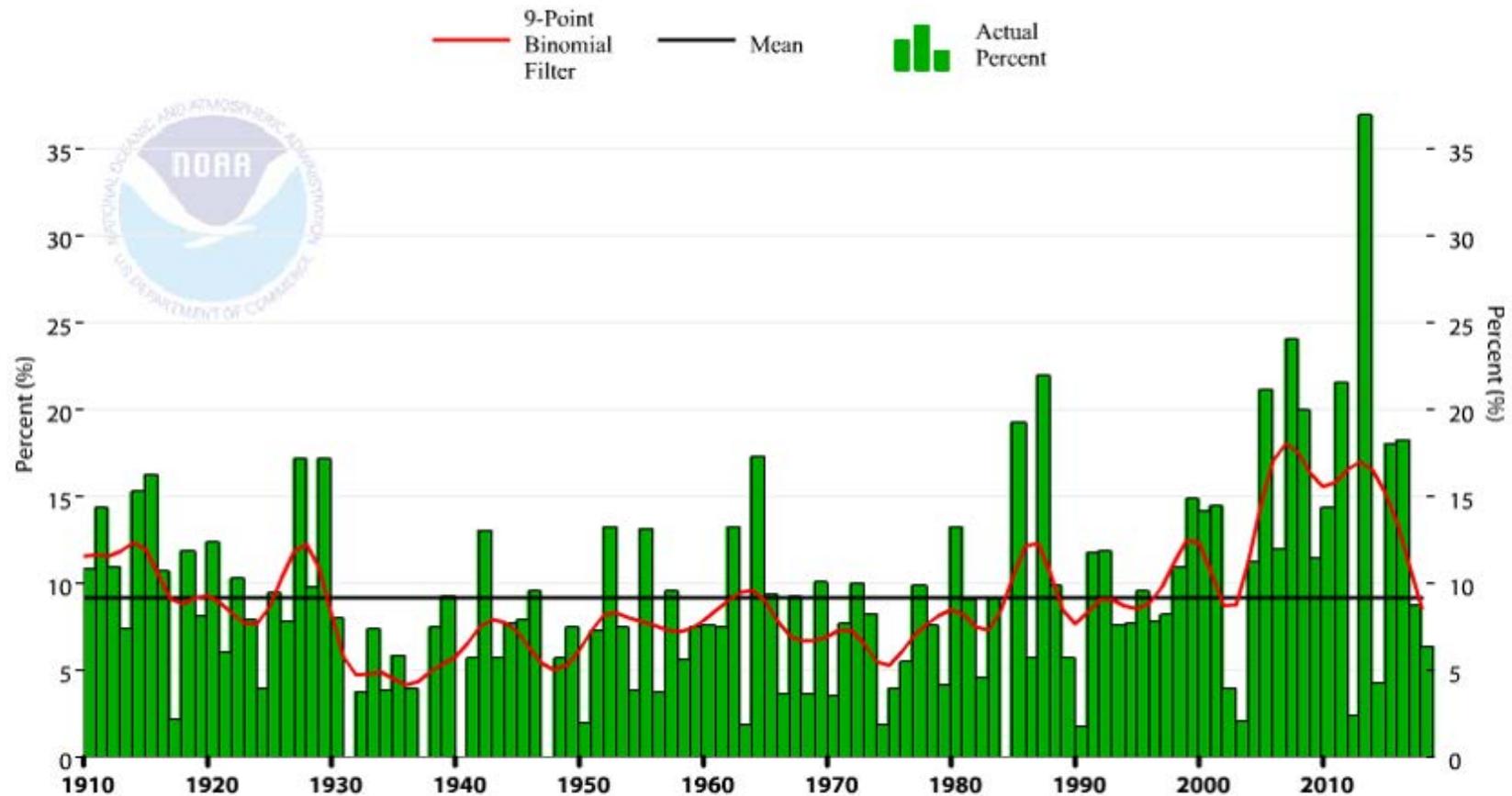
# Northern Rockies and Plains Extremes in PDSI (Step 3)

## Warm Season (April-September 1910-2017)



Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

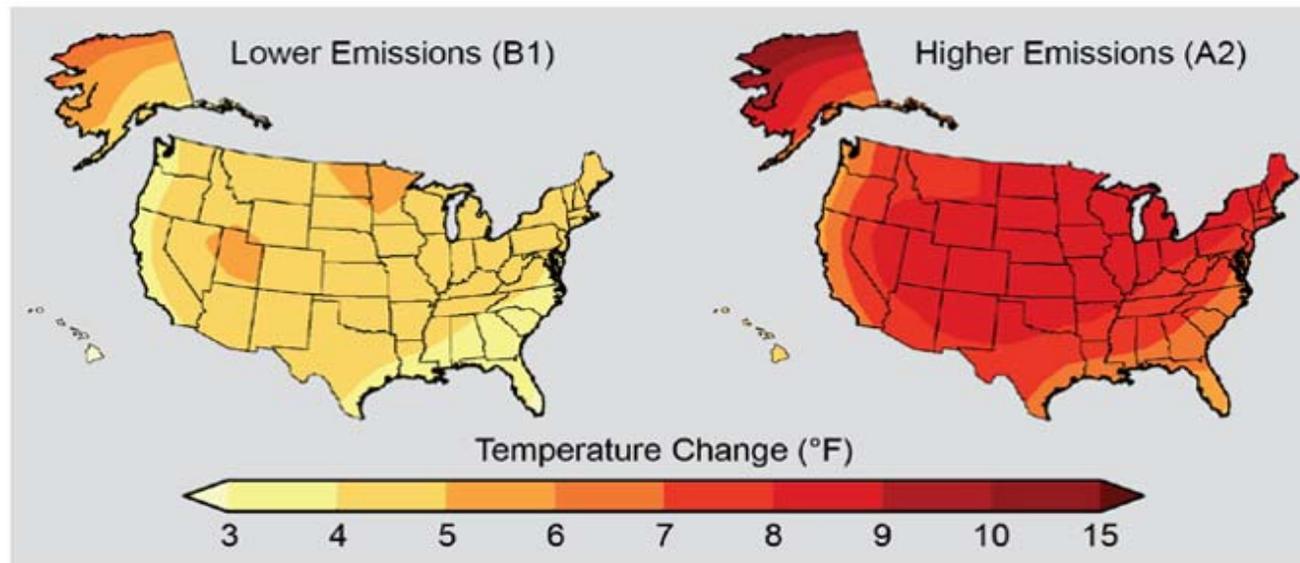
# Northern Rockies and Plains Extremes in 1-Day Precipitation (Step 4\*) Spring (March-May) 1910-2018



Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

# Projected Changes in Nebraska's Climate

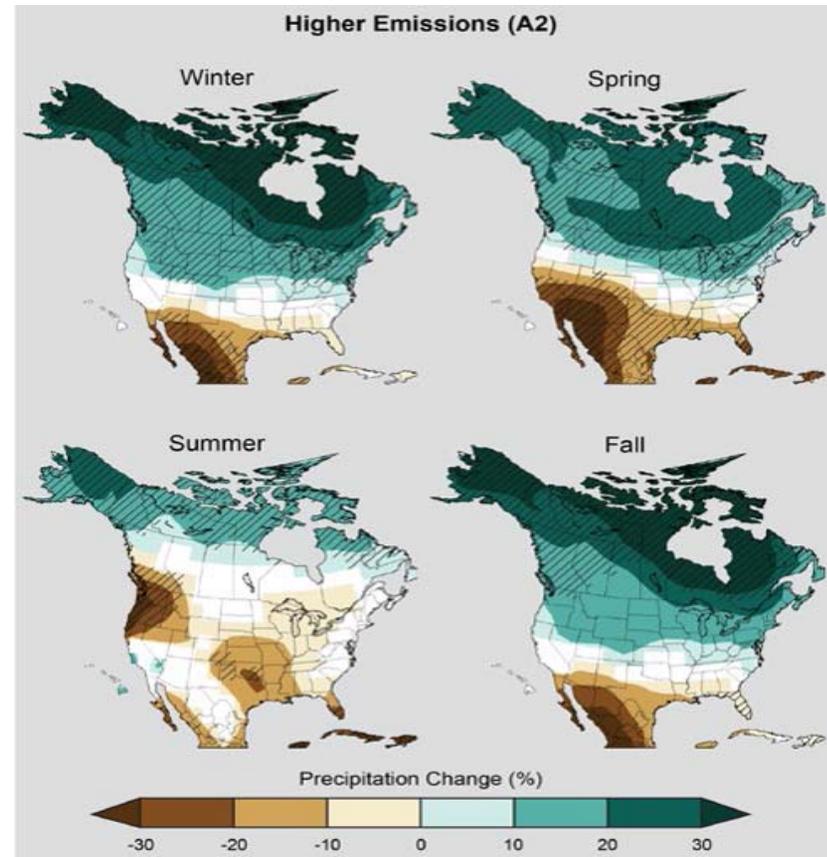
- Projections for Temperatures from 2070-2099 – heavily influenced by emissions
- 100°F days (10-20/yr), Night temps above 60°F (20-40 nights/yr), frost-free days (14 days by 2100)



Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

# Projected Changes in Nebraska's Climate Projection for Precipitation

- Projection for Precipitation
    - Small increase in winter/early spring precipitation in NE.
    - Drying trend in the central Plains in summer.
    - Increase in heavy precipitation events expected to continue
- In general, dry areas will get drier, wet areas will get wetter**



# Impact Recap

- More precipitation in April, May and June, less in March and July
- Rain falling in less-frequent, but heavier events
- Increase in growing season length (esp. in west)
- Severe and extreme events increasing
- Warmer temperatures in the winter and fall and warmer nights in the summer – more rain, less snow
- Freeze risk? – temps increasing, but freeze distribution is tricky
- Night time temps increase – respiration increases and livestock cool-down-time decreases
- More GDDs but outside of typical “growing season”
- “Flash” droughts (2012)

# What does this mean...

- Precipitation
  - Altered timing of typical rainfall pattern
  - Timing is important to coincide with use by agriculture, recreation, habitat, and communities.
- Rivers and streams
  - Increase peak flow due to heavy rainfall events and saturated soil in spring
  - Altered by snowmelt timing
  - Enhanced flood risk
- Soil moisture
  - Decrease due to increased atmospheric demand and early/late season warming
  - Reduce groundwater recharge and crop/plant available moisture
- Irrigation
  - Likely to increase with extended growing season and longer dry spells
- Groundwater
  - Water quantity and water quality challenges
  - ~80% of NE's public water and ~100% of private water comes from groundwater
- How can we better capture the liquid that falls, flows, and melts?
  - Storage, surface characteristics, technology

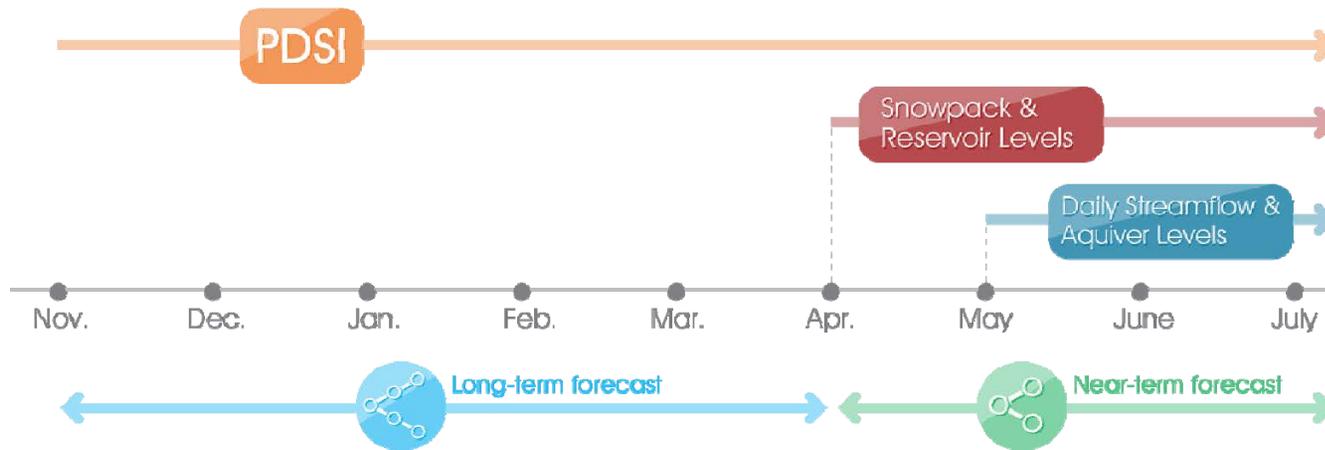
# Challenges I see...

- Seasonal variability
- Projections are vague – especially for Plains
- What about technology?
- What will we do for emissions?
- How will the earth respond?
  - Short term extremes vs. long-term consistency
    - The Melting Arctic and Midlatitude Weather Patterns: Are they connected?
      - <https://journals.ametsoc.org/doi/full/10.1175/JCLI-D-14-00822.1>

# Drought Monitoring

Lower Platte River **Drought Contingency Plan**

# Timeline Showing Progression



Category	PDSI	Platte River Streamflow at Ashland	Aquifer Volumes
Moderate Drought	-2.0 to -2.99	3,000 – 1,500 cfs	Varies
Severe Drought	-3.0 to -3.99	1,500 – 500 cfs	
Extreme Drought	-4.0 and below	Less than 500 cfs	

# Drought Management

**Mitigation actions** are actions, programs, and strategies implemented **before drought** to address potential risks and impacts.

**Response actions** are actions that are implemented **during specific stages of drought** to manage the limited supply and decrease the severity of immediate impacts.

# Response Actions

-  Coordinated Public messaging
-  Urban water use restrictions
-  Urban water rate pricing
-  Shifting water operations
-  Groundwater pumping management & administration of surface water
-  Groundwater augmentation pumping
-  Import water from Missouri River
-  Reservoir Releases
-  Rapid Response Area

# Mitigation Actions

-  Surface water storage
-  Canal recharge
-  Alluvial aquifer recharge
-  Water leasing/banking/exchanges

# WE WANT TO HEAR FROM YOU!

Please provide your input. It will be used to help inform the drought mitigation planning effort.

1. Several sectors including (Agricultural, Municipal & Industrial, Recreational & Environmental) have been identified as being vulnerable to drought, what other sectors have we not considered that should be? \_\_\_\_\_

I can't think of any additional topics

2. How are these other sectors impacted? \_\_\_\_\_

N/A

3. What other comments do you have? \_\_\_\_\_

Well done, very interesting.

Perhaps a public accessible website, esp for the power points presentations. ?

Thank you for your input.



# WE WANT TO HEAR FROM YOU!

Please provide your input. It will be used to help inform the drought mitigation planning effort.

1. Several sectors including (Agricultural, Municipal & Industrial, Recreational & Environmental) have been identified as being vulnerable to drought, what other sectors have we not considered that should be? \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

2. How are these other sectors impacted? \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

3. What other comments do you have? *Have you considered what a 2 yr. drought will have on MUD's Platte West Well Field only a few miles East of the Mead, NE Super Fund site?*

*(Hint) It will draw contaminated water into their well field, and into Omaha's water system!*

---

---

---

---

Thank you for your input.



# WE WANT TO HEAR FROM YOU!

Please provide your input. It will be used to help inform the drought mitigation planning effort.

1. Several sectors including (Agricultural, Municipal & Industrial, Recreational & Environmental) have been identified as being vulnerable to drought, what other sectors have we not considered that should be?

*Residential / Commercial*  
*Government - Rural Water Districts*  
*environment → Native flora/fauna*  
*impacts -*

2. How are these other sectors impacted? - not major

*↳ mostly landscaping*

*3 RWD - supply, revenue*

3. What other comments do you have?

*Thanks for doing this*  
*infrastructure impacts - soil stuff*  
*demand - pipe breakage*  
*road leave*

*wildfire*  
*more cooling energy use?*

Thank you for your input.

# WE WANT TO HEAR FROM YOU!

Please provide your input. It will be used to help inform the drought mitigation planning effort.

1. Several sectors including (Agricultural, Municipal & Industrial, Recreational & Environmental) have been identified as being vulnerable to drought, what other sectors have we not considered that should be? \_\_\_\_\_

Historically NE has had a reliance upon the ag sector in supporting the state economy & tax income

2. How are these other sectors impacted? \_\_\_\_\_

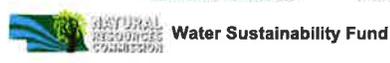
What are the obligations of municipal & industrial sector re: responsibility to ag & environmental sectors?

3. What other comments do you have? \_\_\_\_\_

Drought has occurred in other years - a part of the discussion would benefit years other than 2012

When is it reasonable to "make a call on the River" = Platte, Loup, Elkhorn  
What restrictions exist in using the MO. River based upon other users?

Thank you for your input.



# WE WANT TO HEAR FROM YOU!

Please provide your input. It will be used to help inform the drought mitigation planning effort.

1. Several sectors including (Agricultural, Municipal & Industrial, Recreational & Environmental) have been identified as being vulnerable to drought, what other sectors have we not considered that should be? \_\_\_\_\_

A smaller or secondary effect could be rural communities and businesses dependent on ag or recreation. For example, during a drought, farmers spend less money on pickups or going out to eat, etc. ~~\_\_\_\_\_~~

2. How are these other sectors impacted? Some communities are dependent on some of their local sales tax from impacts mentioned above. YMCAs or other organizations use that for providing grants, operating funds, etc. I could go on and on, but we know the full impact doesn't stop at the "front door".

3. What other comments do you have? \_\_\_\_\_

Thank you for your input.



WaterSMART



Water Sustainability Fund

# WE WANT TO HEAR FROM YOU!

Please provide your input. It will be used to help inform the drought mitigation planning effort.

1. Several sectors including (Agricultural, Municipal & Industrial, Recreational & Environmental) have been identified as being vulnerable to drought, what other sectors have we not considered that should be? \_\_\_\_\_

private well owners, ~~private wells~~ including small communities. If they run out, will come to Lincoln or Omaha to purchase water? increasing demand in an extreme drought

2. How are these other sectors impacted? \_\_\_\_\_

3. What other comments do you have? Are there discussions for how much continued development of both population and large industry water users. At what point is it "fully appropriated", particularly for a drought scenario.

Thank you for your input.



# WE WANT TO HEAR FROM YOU!

Please provide your input. It will be used to help inform the drought mitigation planning effort.

1. Several sectors including (Agricultural, Municipal & Industrial, Recreational & Environmental) have been identified as being vulnerable to drought, what other sectors have we not considered that should be? \_\_\_\_\_

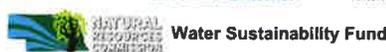
*Increasing numbers of acreages  
with private well water supply*

*Focus was on Lincoln & Omaha  
What about the smaller communities  
Wahoo, Elmwood etc...*

2. How are these other sectors impacted? \_\_\_\_\_

3. What other comments do you have? \_\_\_\_\_

Thank you for your input.





Water Sustainability Fund

Lower Platte Drought Consortium  
Stakeholder Workshop  
June 19, 2018

CONTACT INFORMATION		EMAIL	PHONE
Name <i>Jennifer Schellreper</i>	Address <i>Lincoln</i>		
Organization (if applicable) <i>NEDNR</i>	City/Zip		
Name <i>Gary Aldridge</i>	Address		
Organization (if applicable) <i>LPSNRD Director</i>	City/Zip		
Name <i>Milt Schmidt</i>	Address		
Organization (if applicable) <i>LPSNRD</i>	City/Zip		
Name <i>Deborah Eagan</i>	Address		
Organization (if applicable) <i>LPSNRD</i>	City/Zip		
Name <i>Kelly Smith</i>	Address		
Organization (if applicable) <i>National Drought Mitigation Center UNL</i>	City/Zip		
Name <i>Gordon Coke</i>	Address		
Organization (if applicable) <i>The Flatwater Group</i>	City/Zip		



Lower Platte Drought Consortium  
Stakeholder Workshop  
June 19, 2018

CONTACT INFORMATION		EMAIL	PHONE
Name <i>Greg Osborn</i> Organization (if applicable) <i>LPSNRD</i>	Address City/Zip		
Name <i>VIM SHIELDS</i> Organization (if applicable) <i>MUD</i>	Address City/Zip		
Name <i>Vern Barrett</i> Organization (if applicable) <i>LPSNRD</i>	Address City/Zip		
Name <i>Dick Ehrman</i> Organization (if applicable) <i>LPSNRD</i>	Address City/Zip		
Name <i>ERIC COSTS CHALK</i> Organization (if applicable) <i>LPNNRD</i>	Address City/Zip		
Name <i>Ardis Plummer</i> Organization (if applicable) <i>USDA/NRCS</i>	Address City/Zip		



Water Sustainability Fund

Lower Platte Drought Consortium  
Stakeholder Workshop  
June 19, 2018

CONTACT INFORMATION		EMAIL	PHONE
Name Robert Anderson Organization (if applicable) LPS NRD Bd of Directors	Address City/Zip		
Name David Pearson Organization (if applicable) National Weather Service	Address 6707 N 258th Valley, NE City/Zip		402-686-0122
Name Steve Owen Organization (if applicable) Lincoln Water System	Address City/Zip		
Name Jerry Johnson Organization (if applicable) LPN NRD	Address 354 E 9th City/Zip Wahoo, 68066	jjohnson1927@gmail.com	402-277-0807
Name Daryl Anderson Organization (if applicable) LPN NRD	Address 511 Commercial City/Zip <del>Dallas</del> Wahoo, NE		
Name LARRY RUTH Organization (if applicable) LPS NRD	Address 11500 VAN DORN City/Zip WALTON, 68461	larry.lynn.ruth@gmail.com	402-430-9299



Lower Platte Drought Consortium  
Stakeholder Workshop  
June 19, 2018



WaterSMART



Water Sustainability Fund

CONTACT INFORMATION		EMAIL	PHONE
Name Tom Mount Ford Organization (if applicable) Lower Platte North NRD	Address P.O. Box 126 511 Commercial St. rd City/Zip Wahoo 68505	tmountford@pnrd.org	402-443-4675
Name DAVID POTTER Organization (if applicable) Lower Platte South NRD	Address City/Zip Lincoln NE	dpotter@lpsnr.org	402-476-2729
Name Nicholas R. Walsh Organization (if applicable) Nebraska Emergency Management Agency	Address City/Zip Lincoln NE	nicholas.walsh@nebraska.gov	402-471-7205
Name Paul Zick Organization (if applicable) LPSNRD	Address City/Zip LINCOLN		
Name Tyler Williams Organization (if applicable) NE Extension	Address 444 cherry creek road City/Zip Lincoln 68521	tyler.williams@unl.edu	402-441-7180
Name Eric C. Lee Organization (if applicable) Lincoln Water system	Address City/Zip		



WaterSMART



Water Sustainability Fund

Lower Platte Drought Consortium  
Stakeholder Workshop  
June 19, 2018

CONTACT INFORMATION		EMAIL	PHONE
Name <i>Paul Woodward</i> Organization (if applicable) <i>P-MNRD</i>	Address City/Zip		
Name <i>Mike Soucek</i> Organization (if applicable) <i>LENRD</i>	Address City/Zip		
Name <i>Marlin Petermann</i> Organization (if applicable) <i>P-MNRD</i>	Address City/Zip		
Name <i>DAW SCHULZ</i> Organization (if applicable) <i>LPSNRD</i>	Address City/Zip		
Name <i>Dustin Wilson</i> Organization (if applicable) <i>NARD</i>	Address City/Zip		
Name <i>Rick Kubat</i> Organization (if applicable) <i>MUD</i>	Address City/Zip		



Lower Platte Drought Consortium  
Stakeholder Workshop  
June 19, 2018



WaterSMART



Water Sustainability Fund

CONTACT INFORMATION		EMAIL	PHONE
Name <i>Bowce JOHNSON</i>	Address <i>254</i>	<i>johnsb628@gmail.com</i>	<i>402-310-1570</i>
Organization (if applicable) <i>CPSNRD</i>	City/Zip <i>W. COTRES HOME DR. LINCOLN NE 68528</i>		
Name	Address		
Organization (if applicable)	City/Zip		
Name	Address		
Organization (if applicable)	City/Zip		
Name	Address		
Organization (if applicable)	City/Zip		
Name	Address		
Organization (if applicable)	City/Zip		



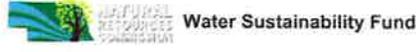
WaterSMART



Water Sustainability Fund

Lower Platte Drought Consortium  
Open House  
June 19, 2018

CONTACT INFORMATION	EMAIL	PHONE
<p>Name Scott Dalton - Congressman Dan Bergens office 13906 Good circle, F101 Omaha 68144</p>	<p>Scott.Dalton@mail.house.gov</p>	<p>402-938-0300</p>
<p>Name Nancy Meyer 2043 Co. Rd. Y Cedar Bluffs, NE 68015</p>	<p>nmeyer@istandard.com</p>	<p>402-720-1058</p>
<p>Name Mike DeKob NRD</p>	<p>midellak@attol</p>	<p>402-466-6357</p>
<p>Name Phil Luebbert 2700 Fletcher Ave. Lincoln NE 68504</p>	<p>pluebbert@isco.com</p>	<p>402-474-8768</p>
<p>Name Harold Roper 7441 W. 40th Dawey, NE 68336</p>	<p>heroper@gmail</p>	<p>466-3994</p>
<p>Name Genny Hellenich 2854 CMA Valparaiso NE 68065</p>	<p>ghellenich@inebraska.com</p>	<p>560-8508</p>



Lower Platte Drought Consortium  
Open House  
June 19, 2018

CONTACT INFORMATION	EMAIL	PHONE
Name Lotus Luetkanhaus 630 COUNTY Rd D Ashland, NE		402-944-2392
Name Ann Williams - HDR		
Name Wm. Saeger LPN NRD	william.saeger@gmail.com	
Name Dan Steinkruger LPS NRD	dlstein15@gmail.com	4024804413
Name Jeff Henson	henson.jeff.55@gmail.com	
Name John Miyoshi	Johnmiyoshi@icloud.com	402-480-8508



Lower Platte Drought Consortium  
Open House  
June 19, 2018

CONTACT INFORMATION	EMAIL	PHONE
Name RONALD SROBODA NRD	rsroboda@juno.com	402-488-8097
Name Joe Birkel LPN NRD		
Name Frank Kwapioski	frank@h2optionsLLC.com	402-261-3524
Name Mary Baker	bakermaryTbb@gmail.com	402 440 3050
Name Crystal Powers	cpowers@nebraska.edu	402-472-9549
Name		



Water Sustainability Fund

Lower Platte Drought Consortium  
Open House  
June 19, 2018

CONTACT INFORMATION	EMAIL	PHONE
Name Steve Masters	stevemasterspe@gmail.com	402 278 551
Name Karen Arner & Jim Goebel	<del>aa</del> jgoebel@unl.edu	402-499-7930
Name		



# Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

---

**Public Open House #2  
Lower Platte South NRD  
December 5, 2018**

Purpose: To study long-term water supplies available to the lower Platte subbasin for for enhancing streamflows or aquifer storage to support sustainable public water water systems.

# Consortium Members



LOWER PLATTE SOUTH  
natural resources district



Lower Platte North  
Natural Resources District



PAPIÓ-MISSOURI RIVER  
NATURAL  
RESOURCES  
DISTRICT  
OMAHA, NE



CITY OF  
**LINCOLN**<sup>™</sup>  
NEBRASKA



**NEBRASKA**  
DEPT. OF NATURAL RESOURCES



METROPOLITAN  
UTILITIES DISTRICT  
*Live Green. Think Blue.*

Lower Platte River **Drought Contingency Plan**

# Tonight's Purpose & Agenda

## Tonight's Purpose:

- 1) Present draft Drought Contingency Plan
- 2) Gather your input and comments on Plan

- 5:00 – 5:30 Open House
- 5:30 – 6:00 Presentation
- 6:00 – 7:00 Open House and 1 on 1 Discussion

\*Comment forms available for written feedback as well

# Background

- Lower Platte River Basin Planning Effort
  - Majority of time plenty of water
  - Some shortages in late July/August
  - Coalition's approach => Don't sacrifice development of new uses for the few weeks every few years where demands are not met.
- Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan is then focused on those few weeks every few years

# Funding

- Bureau of Reclamation – WaterSMART grant
- Water Sustainability Funding
- Consortium members

# Drought Contingency Planning Process



Lower Platte River **Drought Contingency Plan**

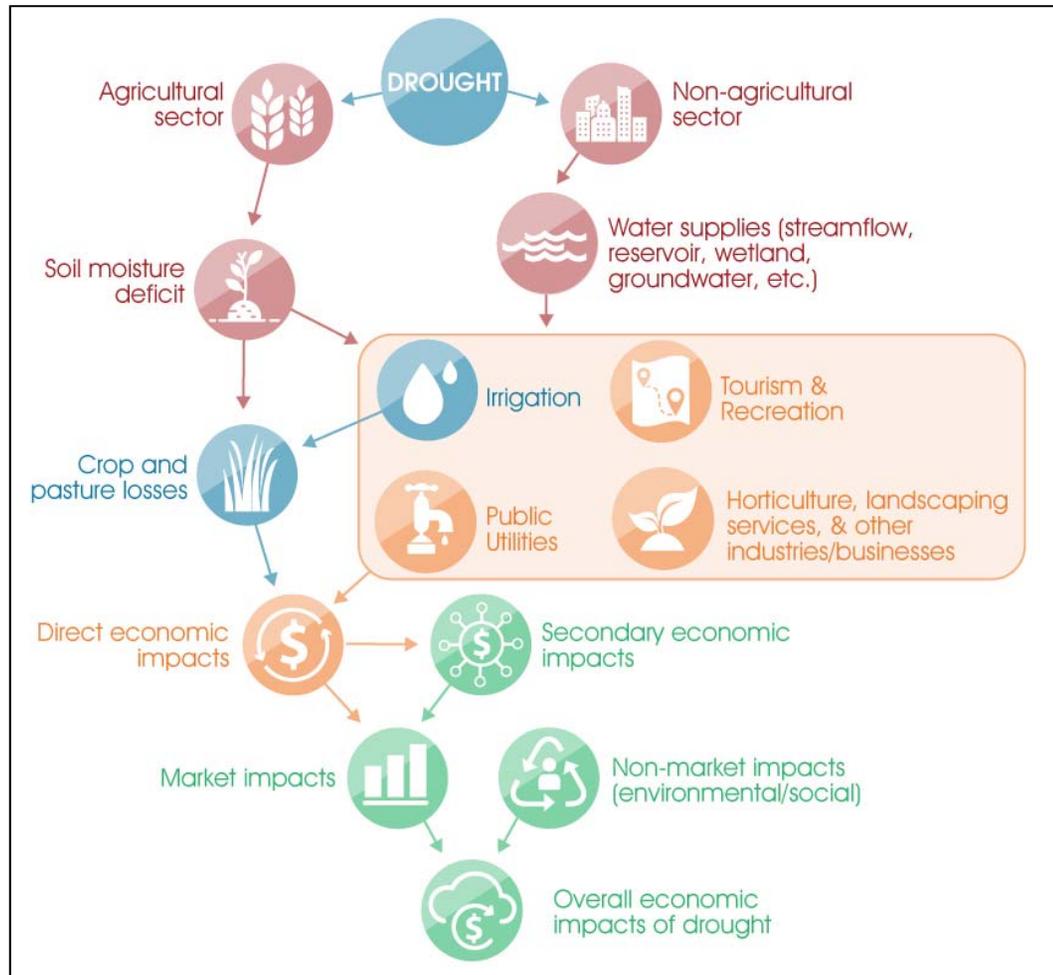
# Vulnerability Assessment

The degree to which a population is vulnerable to a drought hinges on the ability to anticipate, to deal with, resist, and recover from the drought.

# Major Sectors Impacted by Drought

- Lower Platte Basin  
Identified Vulnerabilities:
- Agricultural
  - Public Water Supplies
  - Recreation/Environmental

*\*Open House #1 focused on identifying Vulnerabilities*



# Drought Monitoring

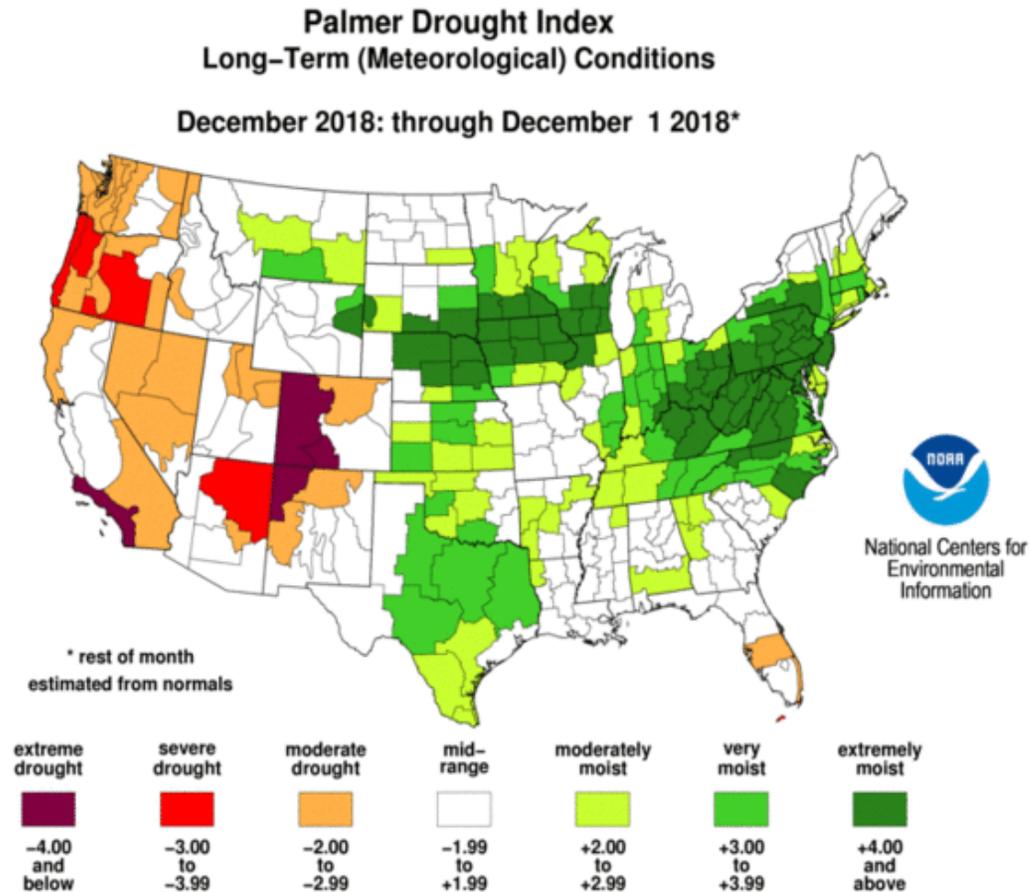
Lower Platte River **Drought Contingency Plan**

# Drought Triggers

Category	Palmer Drought Severity Index (PDSI)	Platte River Streamflow at Ashland
Mild Drought	-1.0 to -1.99	--
Moderate Drought	-2.0 to -2.99	3,000-1,500 cfs
Severe Drought	-3.0 to -3.99	1,500-500 cfs
Extreme Drought	-4.0 and below	Less than 500 cfs

PDSI is a climate index that reflects precipitation and soil moisture balance. PDSI used in combination with streamflow monitoring to determine drought severity

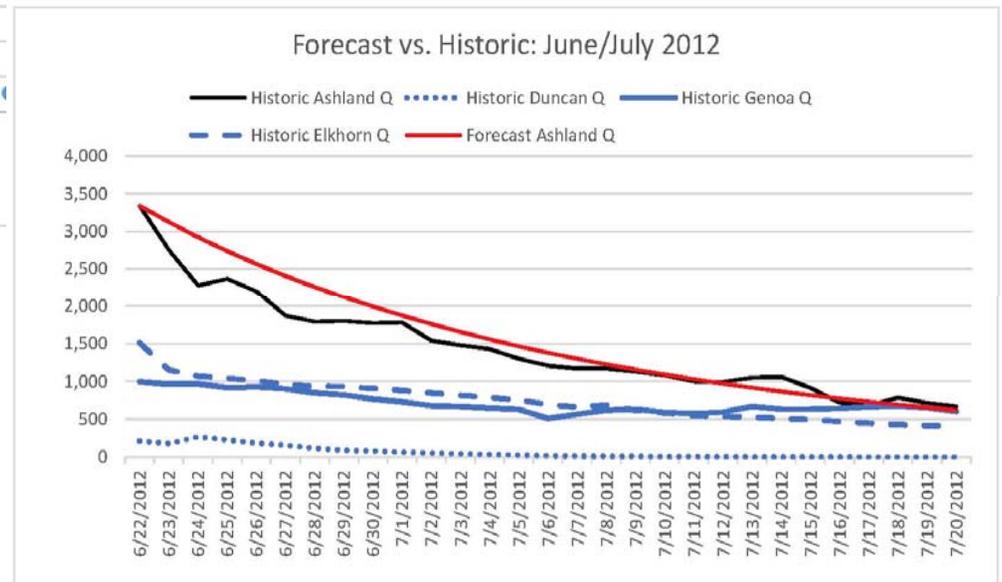
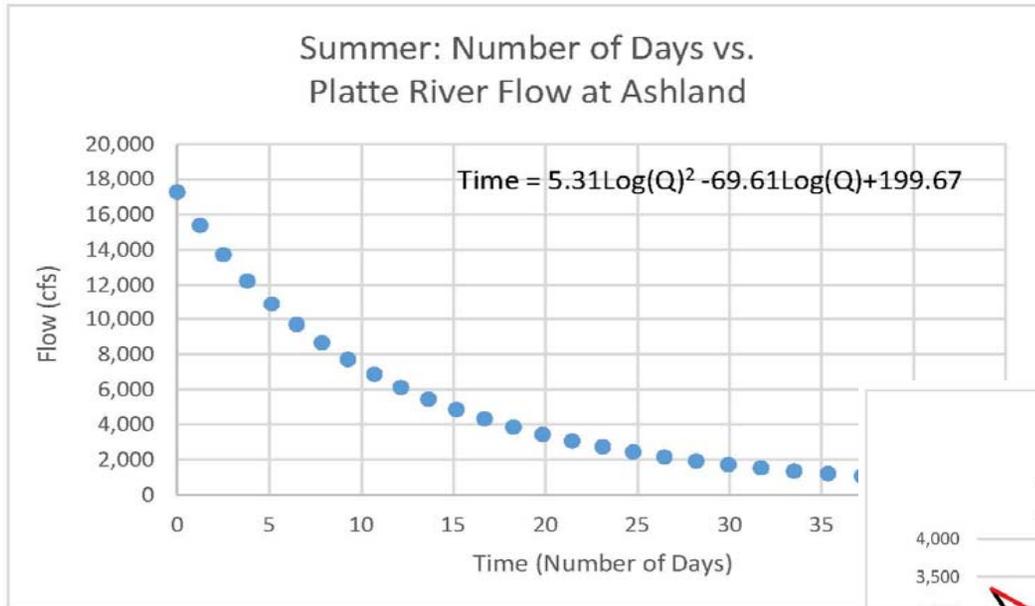
# Palmer Drought Severity Index



Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

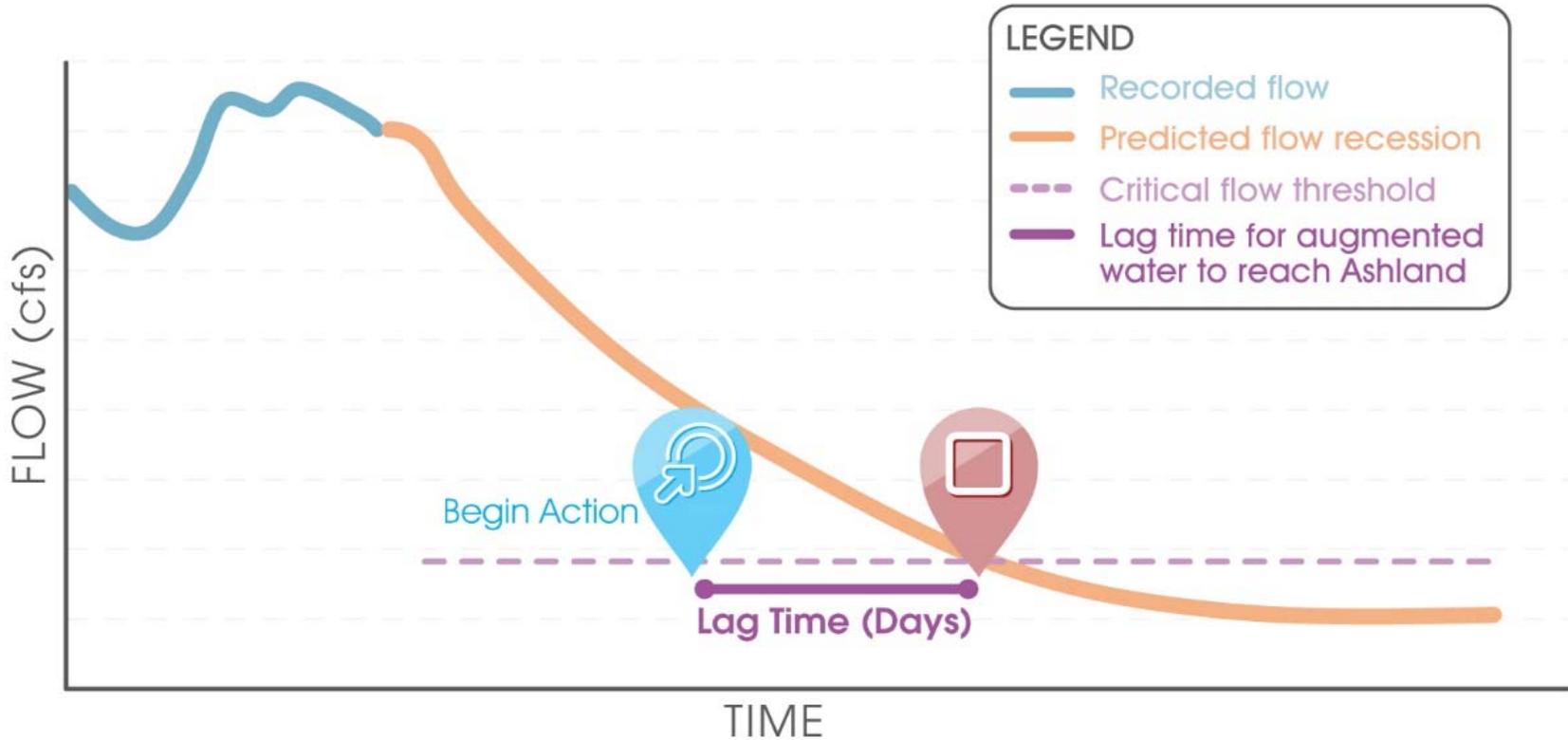
# Recession Curve Analysis

MRC calculated from USGS  
RECESS program

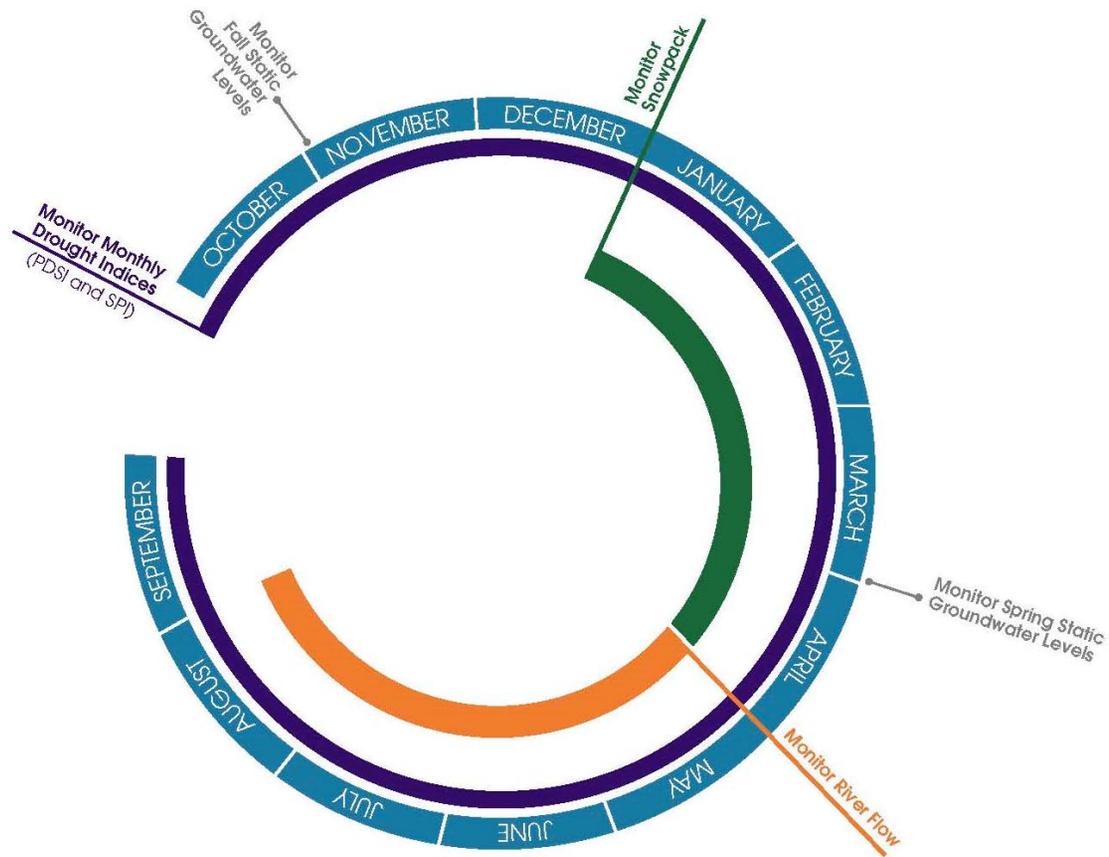


Historic Flow at Ashland  
versus Predicted Flow at  
Ashland using MRC

# Streamflow Monitoring



# Monitoring Progression



Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

# Drought Management

Mitigation actions are actions, programs, and strategies implemented **before drought** to address potential risks and impacts.

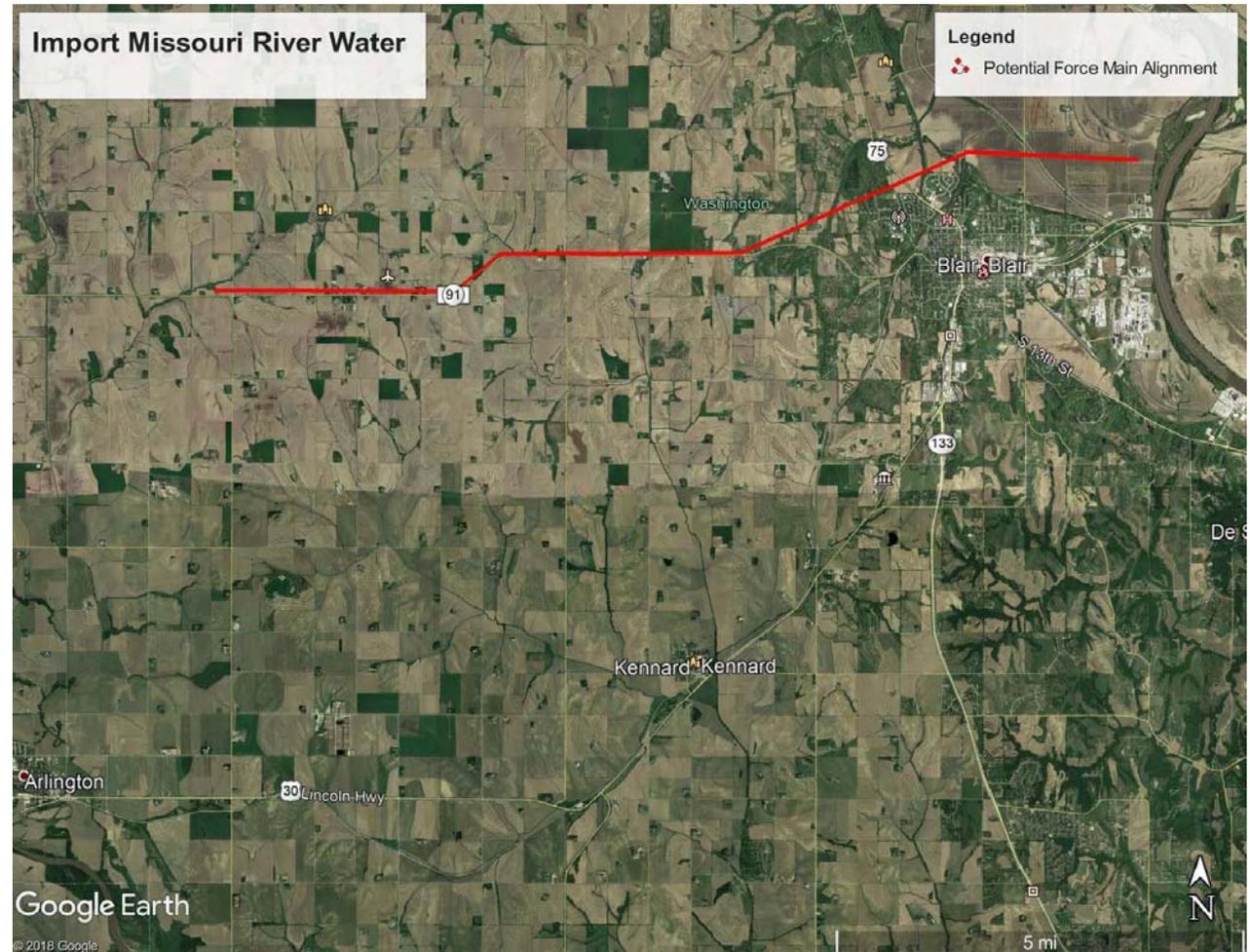
Response actions are actions that are implemented **during specific stages of drought** to manage the limited supply and decrease the severity of immediate impacts.

# Mitigation Actions

-  Import water from Missouri River
-  Surface water storage
-  Canal recharge
-  Alluvial aquifer augmentation pumping
-  Groundwater augmentation pumping
-  Rapid Response Area (Dry Year Lease)

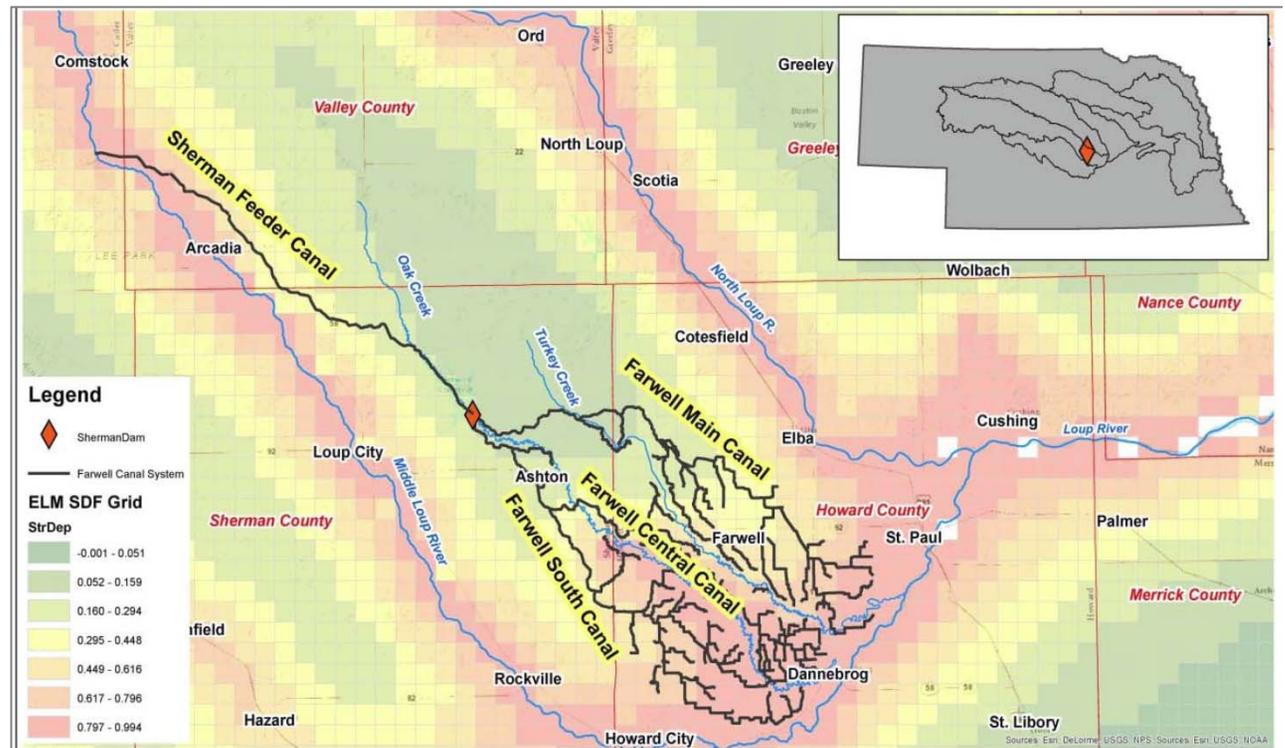
# Import Missouri River Water

- Alluvial Wellfield adjacent to Missouri River
- 1,400 GPM wells (32 total for 100 cfs capacity)
- 11 miles – 60” main
- Discharge to a tributary of Bell Creek



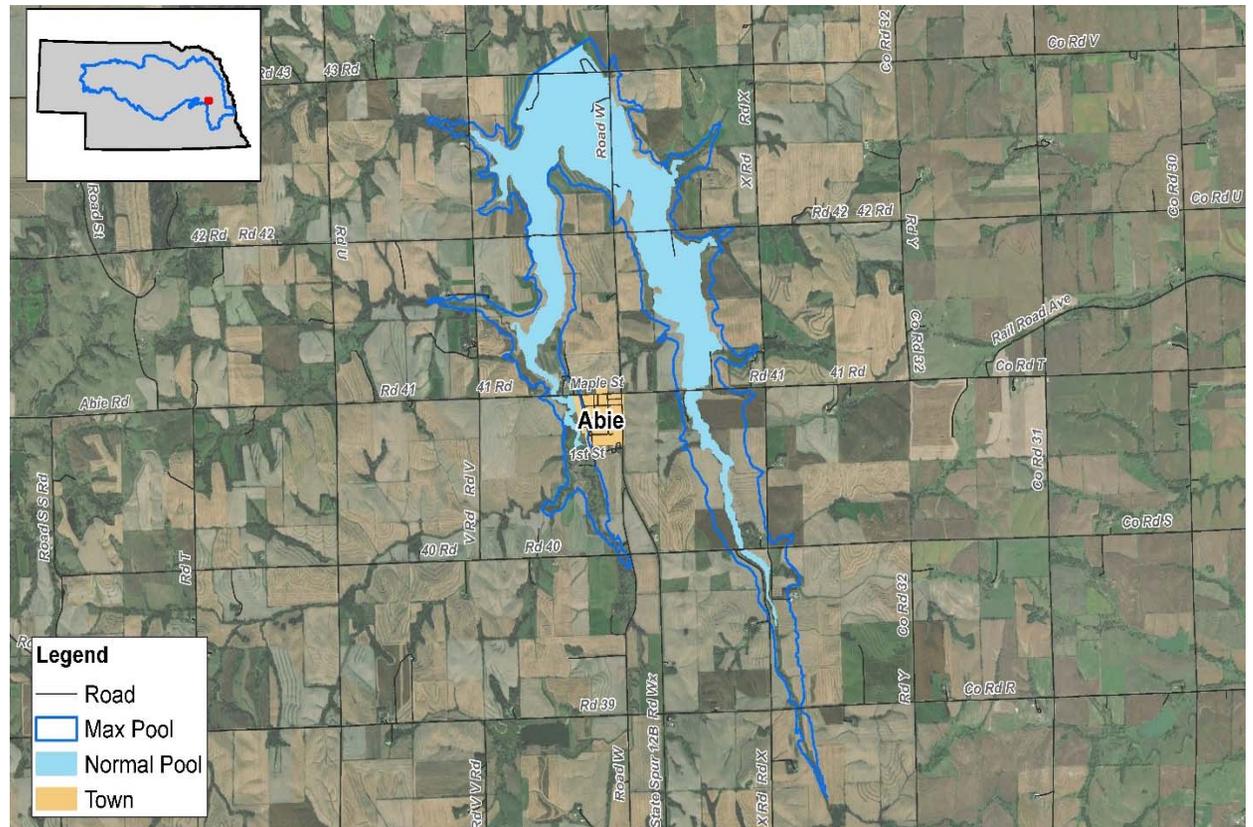
# Sherman Reservoir and Farwell Canal System

- Existing facility owned by Loup Basin Rec. District (no federal nexus)
- Purchase of approx. 11,000 AF of storage water
- Assume agreement limits frequency of calling on water
- Approximately 1/3 of water reaches Ashland gage



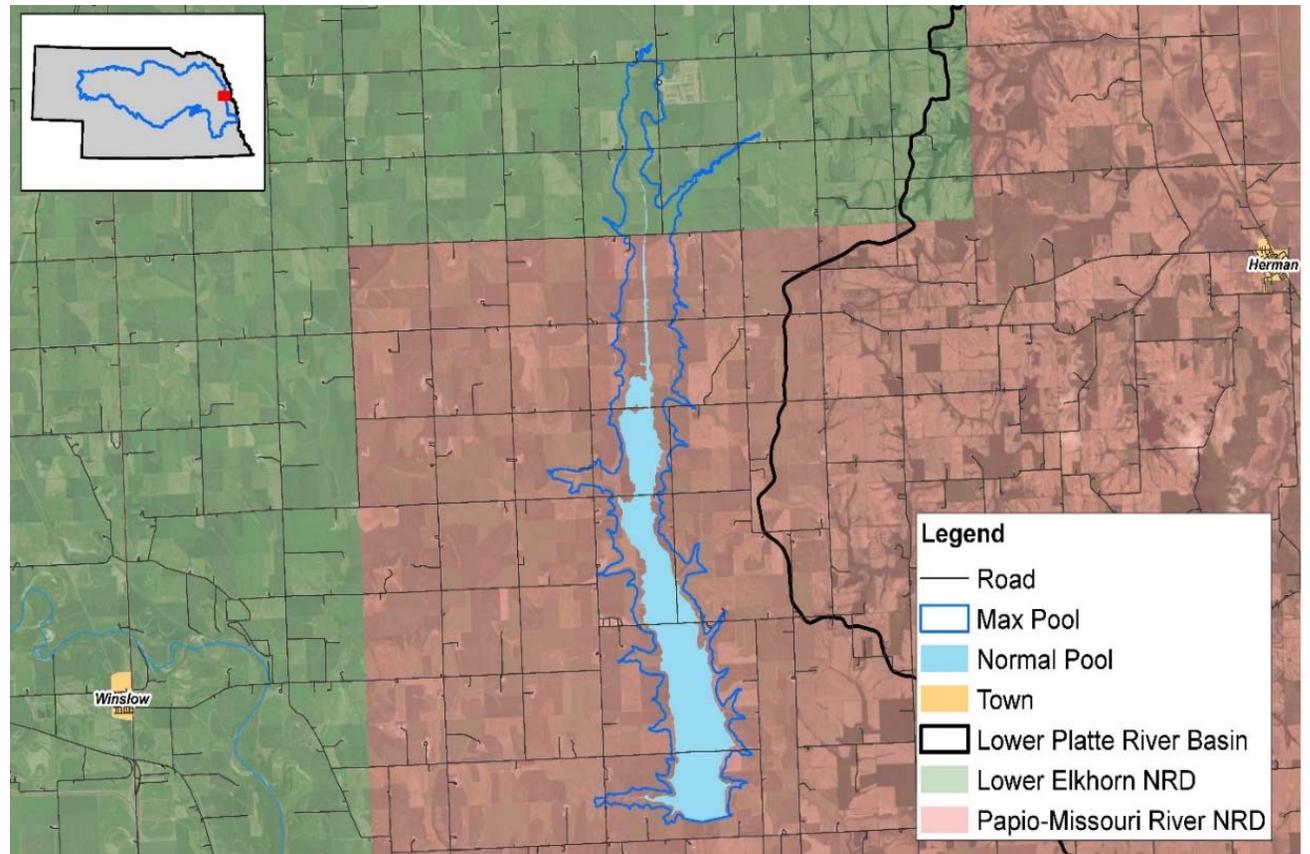
# Skull Creek Reservoir

- New storage reservoir on Skull Creek
- Normal pool storage of approximately 12,700 AF
- Capture runoff during times of excess
- Release of storage water to augment flows
- Approximately 80% of release reaches Ashland gage



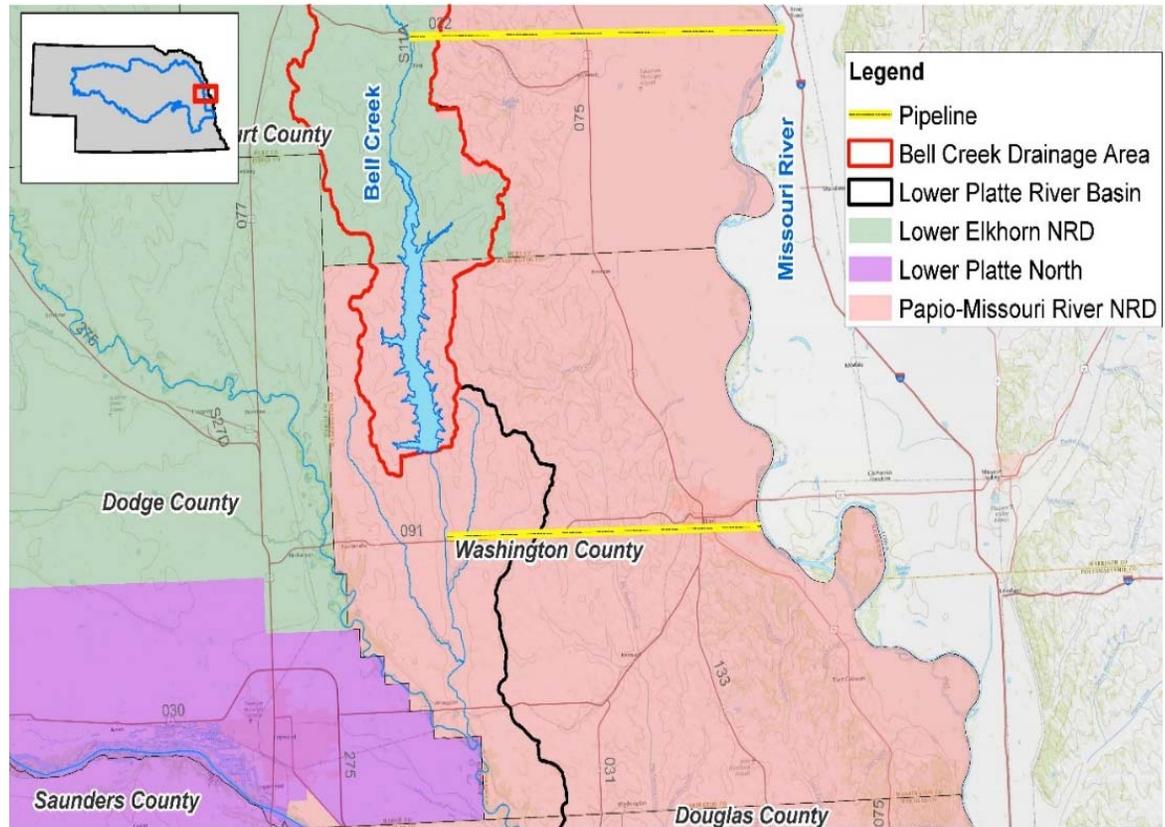
# Bell Creek Reservoir

- New storage reservoir on Bell Creek
- Normal pool storage of approximately 13,600 AF
- Capture runoff during times of excess
- Release of storage water to augment flows
- Approximately 80% of release reaches Ashland gage



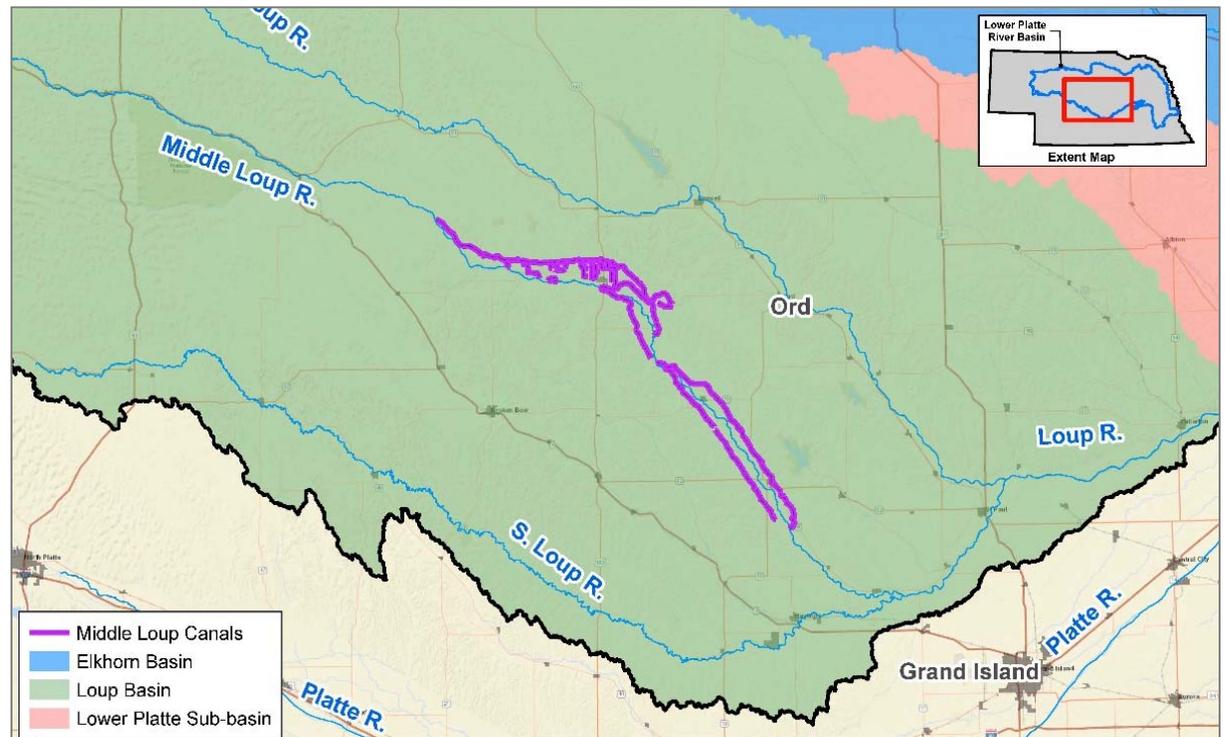
# Bell Creek Reservoir – With Missouri River Import Water

- New storage reservoir on Bell Creek (same location as previous Bell Creek Reservoir alternative)
- Imported water from Missouri River (Upstream of previous import location – smaller capacity required)
- Imported water from Missouri River increases reliability of water supply during extended droughts



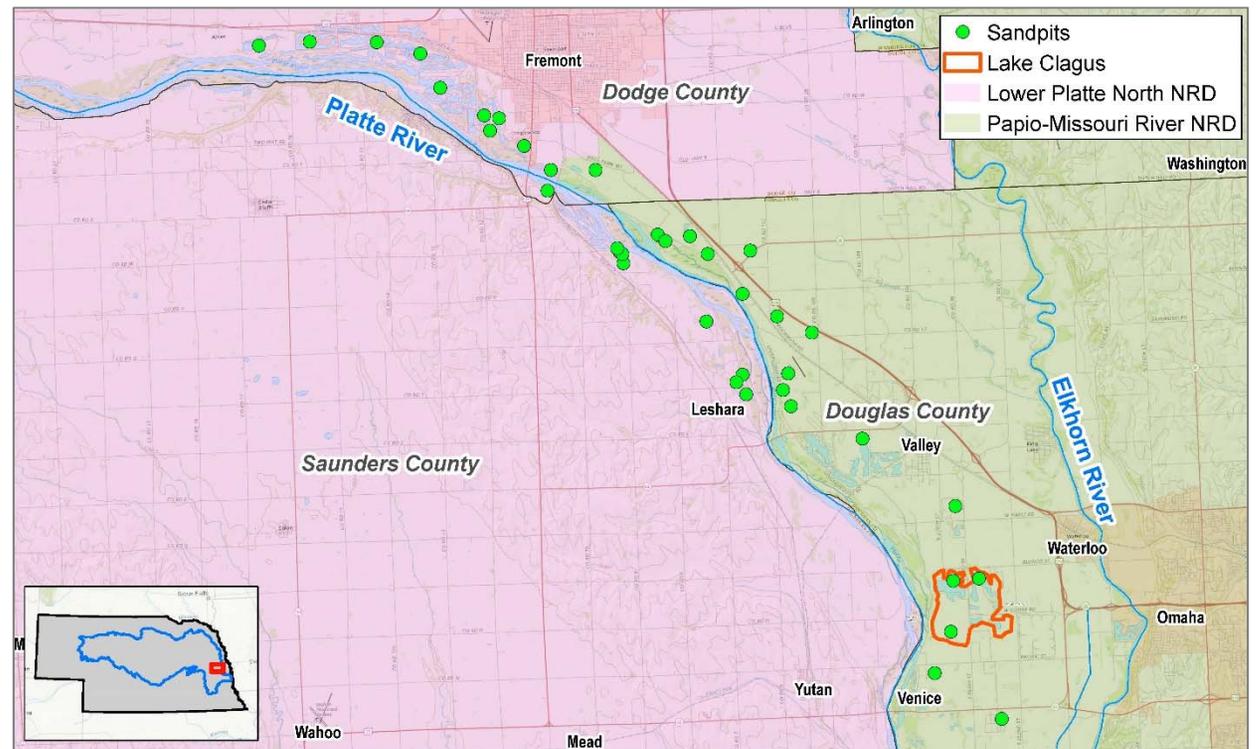
# Middle Loup Canal Recharge

- Existing facilities of Loup Basin Rec. District and Middle Loup PPID
- Diversion of Excess Flow in Loup River (2 demand options)
- Passive recharge to aquifer subsequent baseflow accretion – no active management
- Approximately 1/3 of baseflow accretions reach Ashland gage



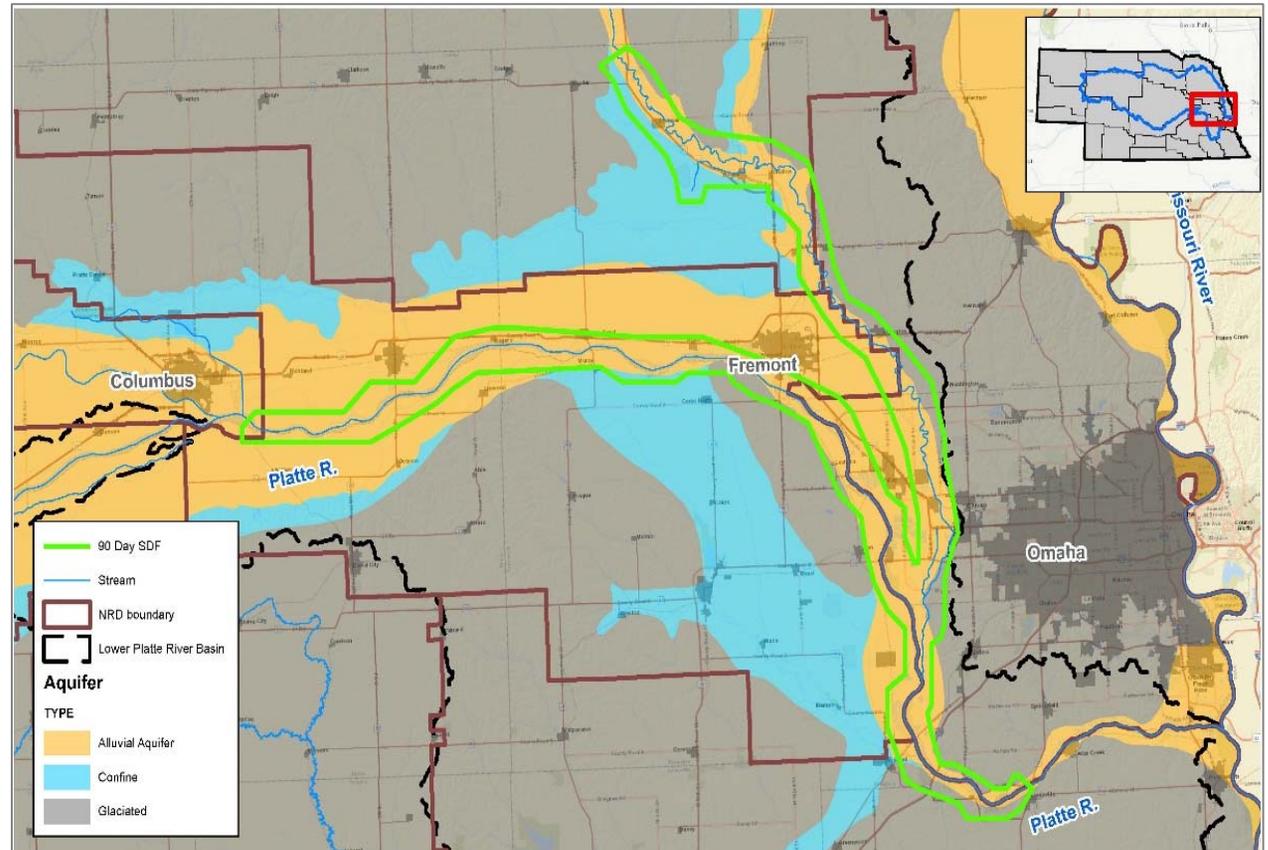
# Alluvial Sandpits

- Existing sandpits privately owned – would require agreement
- Linkage of individual sandpits
- Purchase right to drawdown water level 3-4 ft (3,000 to 4,000 AF)
- Assume agreement limits frequency of access to water
- Hydrologic connection to Platte – limits usage



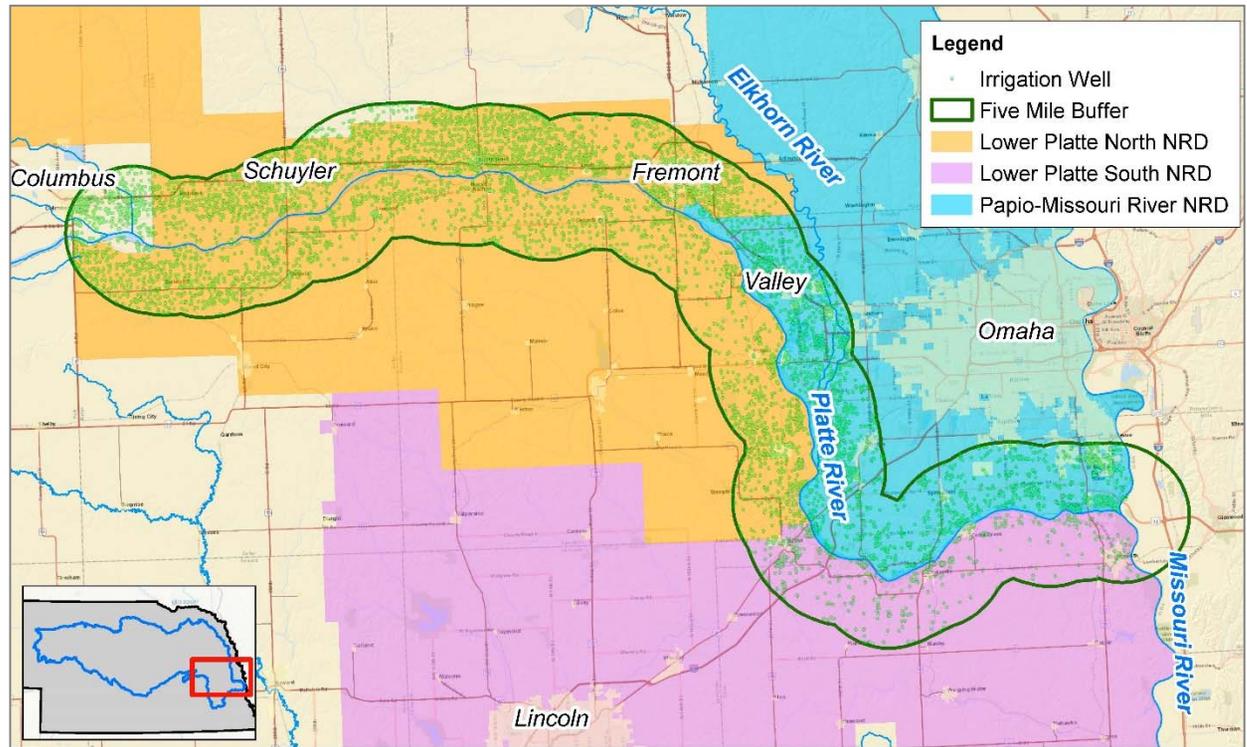
# Groundwater Well-field Augmentation

- New wellfield to pump directly to Elkhorn/Platte River
- Assume 1,400 GPM wells
- Limit hydrologic connection to Platte – Outside the 90-day SDF limits
- Potential well-field sites: Todd Valley, between Elkhorn/Platte downstream of Fremont



# Rapid Response/Dry-Year Lease

- Compensation to producers within 5 miles of Platte River to not irrigate
- Approximately 310,000 acres of irrigated land
- Assume agreement limits frequency of calling on water
- Assumed a base annual payment with escalator for dry year lease



# Evaluation of Mitigation Actions

Alternative	Volume Added at Source (AF)	Volume Increase at Ashland (AF)	Cost Estimate (assuming 20-year agreement)	Cost per Acre-Foot added at Ashland
 Import Missouri River Water	59,400	46,300	\$76,573,000	\$1,654
 Sherman Release (400 cfs at St Paul)	47,520	15,720	\$9,628,000	\$612
 Sherman Release (250 cfs at St. Paul)	29,700	9,800	\$6,955,000	\$710
 Skull Creek Res. Rel. (100 cfs at Linwood)	59,400	46,300	\$32,630,000	\$705
 Bell Creek Res. Rel. (100 cfs at Waterloo)	59,400	46,300	\$81,520,000	\$1,761
 Bell Creek Reservoir + Missouri River Import Water	59,400	46,300	\$129,564,000	\$2,798
 Middle Loup Canal Recharge (Historic Loup Canal Operations)	7,525	2,525	\$16,360,000	\$6,478
 Middle Loup Canal Recharge (Full Hydropower Right downstream)	2,034	634	\$5,225,000	\$8,238
 Alluvial Sandpit/Aquifer	14,850	14,850	\$5,980,000	\$403
 Augmentation Wellfield	59,400	59,400	\$81,008,000	\$1,364
 Rapid Response/Dry Year Lease	4,000	4,000	\$248,500,800	\$62,125

- 20-year period evaluated to reflect relative reliability of each measure.
- 15-day operating period, targeting late July/early August critical low flow period
- Routing tool used to estimate reach gain/losses
- Cost per acre-foot based on water that makes it to Ashland (common point)

Contingency Plan

# Evaluation of Mitigation Actions

## Canal Recharge & Dry Year Lease

- passive recharge
- Cost/benefit analysis does not take into consideration returns throughout year
- Resiliency to overall system

## Canal recharge, dry year lease, Sherman Reservoir storage agreement, sandpit pumping

- Require cooperation and agreements with existing facilities/producers.
- Negotiations will dictate ultimate cost
- Cost/benefit analysis based on best estimates (similar agreements in state; cost differential between irrigated and dryland)

## Alluvial Wellfield adjacent to Missouri River

- Only alternative that imports water from outside basin
- Relatively immune to drought stresses (navigable channel)

# Response Actions



## Coordinated Public messaging

- Coordination/communication amongst members
- Continued communication with interested stakeholders
- Each member inform constituents, customers and public of state of drought and any individual initiated actions (e.g. groundwater controls, water rate structures, water use restrictions, etc.)
- Coordination with other planning agencies (e.g. NEMA, Missouri Basin Plan, etc.)(as needed)

# Individual Response Actions

Examples of drought response actions/activities of individual members – Independent of this drought plan:

- Rate structure/water allocations
- Surface water administration
- Groundwater management/allocation areas
- MUD/LWS coordination of Platte River wellfields
- MUD/LWS interconnection evaluation

# Administrative Framework

Lower Platte River **Drought Contingency Plan**

# What does plan do?

- Establishes monitoring and communication protocols – consistency of information
- Provides coordination of water management activities in the Lower Platte
- Offers eligibility for further BOR implementation funding
- Provides opportunity to further investigate mitigation actions as warranted/desired by members

# What doesn't plan do?

- Supersede individual member programs, controls or management activities
- Dictate actions to individual members
- Infringe on local control

# Next Steps

- Public open house – TONIGHT
- Final draft for BOR review – February 1, 2019
- Finalize plan - Spring 2019
- Member board approvals – Spring 2019



# Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan

---

**Public Open House #2  
Lower Platte South NRD  
December 5, 2018**

## Evaluation of Potential Mitigation Measures

Drought mitigation measures are actions, programs, and strategies implemented during non-drought periods to address potential risks and effects and to reduce the need for response actions; implementation of drought mitigation measures improves long term resilience and reliability of the regional water supply.

Eight mitigation measures, and variations or combinations thereof, were evaluated as part of the Drought Planning effort to estimate potential increases in regional water supply. The following table summarizes cost estimate versus volume of water added, advantages, disadvantages, and uncertainties. For purposes of comparison, flow benefits in the table are focused on a 15-day period in August with the cumulative values, where noted, representing the sum of flow benefits over 20-years.

ALTERNATIVE	VOLUME ADDED AT SOURCE		VOLUME INCREASE AT ASHLAND		COST ESTIMATE	COST PER ACRE-FOOT ADDED AT ASHLAND	ADVANTAGES	DISADVANTAGES	UNCERTAINTIES	
	CUMULATIVE AF/15 DAYS	AVE DAILY CFS	WHERE ADDED	CUMULATIVE AF/15 DAYS						AVE DAILY CFS
<b>Import Missouri River Water (to Bell Creek/no reservoir)</b>	59,400	100	Waterloo	46,300	80	\$76,572,840	\$1,654	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Secondary source of water outside of Platte River basin increases reliability of supply.</li> <li>Operational every year &amp; year-round</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Larger construction cost than many alternatives</li> <li>Implementation - 5-10 years</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Future regulation on Missouri River</li> <li>Well field siting</li> </ul>
<b>Sherman Release (400 cfs at St Paul)</b>	47,520	400	St. Paul	15,720	132	\$9,628,000	\$612	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Utilizes existing facilities (no construction cost; ability to pilot study)</li> <li>Produces large volume of water on-demand</li> <li>Loup River historically a reliable water supply source.</li> <li>Implementation: 3-5 years</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Likely limitation on frequency of call on storage water</li> <li>Significant conveyance losses from release point to Lower Platte River (Assumed allowed 4 out of 20 years)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Requires cooperation and agreements with existing facility owners.</li> <li>Negotiations will dictate price.</li> <li>Cost estimates based on similar agreements in state.</li> </ul>
<b>Sherman Release (250 cfs at St. Paul)</b>	29,700	250	St. Paul	9,800	83	\$6,955,000	\$710			
<b>Skull Creek Res. Rel. (100 cfs at Linwood)</b>	59,400	100	Linwood	46,300	80	\$32,630,000	\$705	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Produces large volume of water on demand</li> <li>Potential for multi-purpose facility</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Larger construction cost than many alternatives</li> <li>Land requirements, involving multiple landowners</li> <li>Implementation: 5-10 years</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Runoff volume varies year to year</li> <li>Land use impacts on runoff</li> <li>Implementation (permitting, land purchase, etc.)</li> </ul>
<b>Bell Creek Reservoir (Release 100 cfs at Waterloo)</b>	59,400	100	Waterloo	46,300	80	\$81,520,000	\$1,761			
<b>Pump Missouri River water (via alluvial well-field) into Bell Creek Reservoir</b>	59,400	100	Waterloo	46,300	80	\$129,564,000	\$2,798	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Secondary source of water outside of Platte River basin increases reliability.</li> <li>Operational every year &amp; year-round.</li> <li>Importing into Bell Creek Reservoir requires a lower capacity system for importing water - saving money</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Larger costs associated with combining alternatives that require both land and infrastructure.</li> <li>Implementation: 5-10 years</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Future regulation on Missouri River</li> <li>Well field siting</li> <li>Implementation (permitting, land purchase, etc.)</li> </ul>
<b>Middle Loup Canal Recharge (Historic Loup Canal Operations)</b>	7,525	13	Arcadia	2,525	4	\$16,360,000	\$6,478	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The canal recharge and dry-year lease projects are passive mitigation measures whose benefits (passive baseflow returns) accrue throughout the year, adding to the overall supply reliability.</li> <li>Existing infrastructure - no initial construction costs</li> <li>Implementation: 3-5 years</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Unavailable to release a pulse of water volume "on-demand".</li> <li>Takes time for the full benefit to be realized in river (lag effect) and some attenuation</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Requires cooperation and agreements with existing facility and/or landowners.</li> <li>Negotiations will dictate price.</li> <li>Cost estimates based on similar agreements in state.</li> <li>Amount of improvement of overall system supply reliability from year around accretions</li> </ul>
<b>Middle Loup Canal Recharge (Full Hydropower Right downstream)</b>	2,034	3	Arcadia	634	1	\$5,225,000	\$8,238			
<b>Alluvial sandpit pumping</b>	14,850	100	Leshara	14,850	100	\$5,980,000	\$403			
<b>Augmentation Well-field</b>	59,400	100	TBD	59,400	100	\$81,008,040	\$1,364	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Available every year &amp; year-round</li> <li>Can be located closer to critical reach to reduce losses compared to alternatives producing similar volumes upstream in the Basin.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Land &amp; infrastructure costs make this one of the more expensive alternatives.</li> <li>Adds to overall depletions</li> <li>Implementation: 5-10 years</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Siting to avoid interference with existing wells.</li> <li>Long-term reliability of aquifer</li> </ul>
<b>Rapid Response Area/ Dry-year Lease</b>	4,000	33	Columbus to Louisville	4,000	33	\$248,500,800	\$62,125	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No infrastructure or construction necessary.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Logistics of securing agreements with thousands of producers</li> <li>Likely limitation on the number of calls allowed in a 20-year period (Assumed 4 out of 20 years)</li> <li>Most expensive of all the alternatives by an order of magnitude based on assumptions.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Negotiations will dictate price.</li> <li>Cost estimates based on similar agreements in state, and factors such as cost differential between irrigated and dry land rental rates.</li> <li>Uncertain how many producers would participate (benefits assume 100% participation which is unlikely)</li> </ul>

## Drought Monitoring

The recommended timeline for drought monitoring is displayed in graphic to the right. Hydroclimate indices SPI and PDSI should be monitored year round. Groundwater levels are monitored by NRDs in the spring and fall of each year in accordance with their individual groundwater management plans. Snowpack volumes should be monitored from the beginning of the calendar year through the runoff season. Streamflows should be monitored starting in late spring through the summer when water use for irrigation, cooling, and lawn watering is at its peak.

Many indicators and indices exist to help identify drought conditions in the Lower Platte River Basin. These include hydroclimate indices, streamflow

levels, groundwater aquifer levels, Rocky Mountain snowpack, and Lake McConaughy reservoir storage levels. Additionally, as previously stated, the focus of this first increment of the Drought Plan is on augmenting surface water supplies in the Lower Platte River near Ashland. It is believed that in addressing the water supply shortages in the Lower Platte River, ancillary benefits to the remaining sectors would exist including: irrigation, power, environmental, and recreational. The “Drought Triggers” table below identifies four drought levels recommended for the Drought Plan (mild drought, moderate drought, severe drought, and extreme drought) as well as the associated index ranges that define these levels.



**DROUGHT MONITORING CONTINUUM**

Notes: PDSI = Palmer Drought Severity Index

The following lists the levels of drought, remaining consistent with the US Drought Monitor definitions of drought.

- A Level 0, “Abnormally Dry”<sup>1</sup> indicates an area may be experiencing “short-term dryness slowing planting, growth of crops or pastures” indicating the onset of drought or may be coming out of drought and experiencing lingering effects of drought.
- A Level 1, “Moderate Drought” involves “some damage to crops, pastures; streams, reservoirs, or wells low, some water shortages developing or imminent; and voluntary water-use restrictions requested.”
- A Level 2, “Severe Drought” means that “crop or pasture losses likely; water shortages common; and water restrictions imposed.”
- A Level 3, “Extreme Drought” involves “major crop/pasture losses” and “widespread water shortages or restrictions.”

DROUGHT TRIGGERS			
CATEGORY	LEVEL	PALMER DROUGHT SEVERITY INDEX (PDSI)	PLATTE RIVER STREAM FLOW AT ASHLAND
Mild Drought	0	-1.0 to -1.99	
Moderate Drought	1	-2.0 to -2.99	3,000-1,500 cfs
Severe Drought	2	-3.0 to -3.99	1,500-500 cfs
Extreme Drought	3	-4.0 and below	Less than 500 cfs

<sup>1</sup> An “Abnormally Dry” classification by the National Drought Monitor corresponds to a PDSI “mild drought” classification.

Public Pulse, Omaha World Herald

12 10 2018

1314 Douglas St., Suite 700, Omaha, NE 68102

Published last week was an article concerning finding future water resources for Lincoln & MUD. I felt the suggestions mentioned were Dumb & Dummer. local reservoirs displace & put farmers out of business.

I would suggest burying two or three 6 or 8 ft dia tunnels from the Lewis & Clark Lake near Gavins Point Dam to the Platte River basin. Consider an Eminent Domain route west of HWY 281 or Hwy 83. The outlets could be engineered to cross the basin with fluted outlets top or side to gently disperse the flow.

The water would be Nebraska's own, from the NE side of the lake. Electrical power for the pumping units could be purchased from the generation owners.

Petroleum producers pump their products across the Nation. Nebraska could surely pump water 250 ~~miles~~ *or less miles*

IMPOSSIBLE..Go visit the Grand Coulee Dam in Montana. A Similiar method has been pumping water from the Columbia River for thousands of acres of crops, for many years..

Nebraska's future needs for water will only increase..Lewis & Clark will always have water to spare.

Sincerely Rex L Kuntzelman cell 402 590 6530

1840 East 19th St. Fremont, NE 68025

# Looking for water to help weather the next drought

Lincoln, MUD work will others to find ways to replenish the Platte, but there is no silver bullet

By Nancy Giesler  
WORLD-HERALD STAFF WRITER

Back in 2012, when the stopped and the earth cracked open, cities across Nebraska back water use. In some, including Lincoln, watering your lawn on a wrong day could bring a knock your door.

The strain on the Lower Platte River, which serves about 80 percent of the state's population, including Lincoln and Omaha, is apparent.

Lincoln, far more dependent than Omaha, has boosted its water supplies by 30 percent since then. Both cities are collaborating with other water managers to find a way to replenish the Lower Platte during drought.

Last month, the Lower Platte River Basin Consortium published a draft analysis of eight potential sources for extra water. The cost ranges from \$6 million to nearly \$250 million, and the options come with varying degrees of reliability.

"They're expensive — there is no silver bullet," said John Engel, the vice president and water resource engineer at HDR Inc., who assisted with the study.

A public meeting on the report is set for 5 p.m. Wednesday at the Lower Platte South Natural Resources District, 3125 Portia St., in Lincoln. A formal presentation starts at 5:30 p.m.

The analysis cost about \$500,000 and was funded by state and federal dollars. The consortium consists of the Lower Platte South, Lower Platte North and Panio-Missouri

## Drought: 'It's not a matter of if area will need more water

The purpose of a new source isn't to enable additional pumping, Mendenhall and Owen said. Rather, it would be used to replenish flows on the Platte so that all needs can be met.

The water managers are certain of one thing: A solution doesn't lie out west. That's because the Platte River, fed by snow melt from the Rocky Mountains, runs dry during extreme drought before it reaches Lincoln and Omaha.

In 2012, it petered out near Columbus and then resurfaced farther east after being replenished by two significant tributaries, the Elkhorn and Loup Rivers.

Building reservoirs on creeks near Winslow or Linwood, piping in water from the Missouri River or tapping into a nearby aquifer are the options that would supply the most water, according to the report. Though the Missouri River option is costly, the report notes, it brings the added insurance of pulling in water from outside the Platte River watershed.

Next up for the consortium is to get a better sense of which options might be best through drought monitoring, test scenarios and more coordination and communication.

nancy.giesler@worldherald.com, 402-444-3102  
twitter.com/nancyg

### 8 POTENTIAL SOURCES FOR REPLENISHING LOWER PLATTE RIVER

The Lower Platte River Basin Consortium has identified eight potential sources of water for replenishing the Platte. Here is the possible cost over 20 years and a rough cost per acre-foot of water.

- ▶ Install a well field adjacent to the Missouri River and pump water into a tributary of the Elkhorn River; \$76.6 million, \$1,700 per acre-foot of water
- ▶ Purchase storage capacity in the existing Sherman Reservoir for use on demand; \$7 million to \$10 million, \$600 to \$700 per acre-foot of water
- ▶ Build a reservoir on Skull Creek near Linwood; \$32.6 million, \$700 per acre-foot of water
- ▶ Build a reservoir on Bell Creek east of Winslow; \$82 million, \$1,800 per acre-foot of water
- ▶ Pull water from the Loup River during the non-irrigation season and fill the Madie Loup Canal system to help with recharge and base flows; \$5 million to \$16 million, \$8,500 to \$8,000 per acre-foot of water
- ▶ Install a well field in a localized aquifer that is somewhat isolated from the Platte system and then pump water into the river; \$81 million, \$1,400 per acre-foot of water
- ▶ Pump water from sandpit lakes along the Platte back into the river; \$6 million, \$400 per acre-foot of water
- ▶ Lease access to irrigated acres from farmers along the Platte; \$248.5 million, \$62,000 per acre-foot of water

— Nancy Giesler  
**DUMBS & DUMMER**

able to deliver water to all of our communities," said Rick Kubal, government affairs attorney for MUD. "It's not a matter of if, it's a matter of when (water will be needed). Rather than being reactionary to that situation, the purpose of the consortium is to be proactive."

With two water plants on the Platte and a third on the Missouri River, MUD can pump up to about 328 million gallons a day. The most it has had to pump on one day was 227 million gallons, the record set on June 21, 1988.

Continued from Page 1

forward, said Steve Owen, superintendent of water production for Lincoln.

"This is real important," he said. "It's all about making sure we have sufficient water."

In 2016, the participants published a report outlining the need for additional water. In five of the preceding 13 years, water shortages were a problem, that report found. Twice, in 2002 and 2012, Lincoln has had to mandate water restrictions. Since 2012, Lincoln has expanded capacity by 30 percent, but that won't be enough to meet future needs, Owen said.

In a separate, complementary study, Lincoln and the Metropolitan Utilities District are examining whether Lincoln should also obtain water from MUD.

As harsh as 2012 was, the state dodged a bullet because the following year didn't bring a replay. It's likely that Nebraska won't be so lucky in the future. Over the lifetime of a child born today, Nebraska's typical summer heat waves will be similar to the extreme heat of 2012, according to a University of Nebraska-Lincoln analysis of global warming impacts on the state.

"As Nebraskans, we should all be mutually concerned that we're

JAN 2 2019

Dear Mr. Woodward,

I am writing to ask you please do not go ahead with the Contingency plan concerning the Bell Creek.

What may look like X amount of acres to you is our home and our livelihood. Generations of our family have worked to care for and improve this land. Our son is now a 5<sup>th</sup> generation farmer, he has 2 little boys for whom we hope to have the opportunity for them to continue our way of life. These little guys already help feed cattle and ride in the combine, trucks and tractors with us.

This farm has been our whole life - My husband and I have been married 43 years, working this land together. This decision affects not only us, but will hurt our neighbors just as much as us.

Please know that we are real people making our living out here, but its more than that, its our home.

Thank you,

Temp & Betty Rasmussen

402-654-2593

e-mail - rasmussen@midlands.net

25498 Co. Rd 12

Arlington NE 68002

## Engel, John

---

**From:** Woodward, Paul <pwoodward@papionrd.org>  
**Sent:** Wednesday, January 2, 2019 8:56 AM  
**To:** Engel, John  
**Subject:** FW: Bell Creek reservoir

Please include in record of public comments

---

**From:** Gayle Hansen <ghansen78@icloud.com>  
**Sent:** Wednesday, January 2, 2019 8:42 AM  
**To:** Woodward, Paul <pwoodward@papionrd.org>  
**Subject:** Bell Creek reservoir

Dear Paul Woodward,

I am concerned about the Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan, specifically the mitigation measure regarding Bell Creek in Washington County. Because the surface water storage reservoir on Bell Creek would cover around 1720 acres of land, much of it farmland, the county would lose a sizable amount of productive farmland. This would result in a net loss in valuation for the county, consequently reducing the ability of farmers in the area to make a decent living. I am also concerned that the reservoir would close three roads that are essential to emergency use by fire departments in the area. Myself and my brother own land in this area that would be flooded and we would both be negatively affected by the reservoir plan. This land has been actively farmed by my family for around 50 years. Thus, the land is very important to myself and my family.

Sincerely,

Gayle Kruger Hansen

## Rock, Simone

---

**From:** Woodward, Paul <pwoodward@papionrd.org>  
**Sent:** Thursday, December 20, 2018 10:13 AM  
**To:** Paul Zillig; Petermann, Marlin; Rock, Simone; Engel, John  
**Subject:** FW: Bell Creek Reservoir proposal - LPC plan

All-

Please read and incorporate comment below into public comments.

I will reply and thank him for providing input.

Merry Christmas,

Paul

---

**From:** gary kruger <gkruger@gpcom.net>  
**Sent:** Thursday, December 20, 2018 10:06 AM  
**To:** Woodward, Paul <pwoodward@papionrd.org>  
**Subject:** Bell Creek Reservoir proposal - LPC plan

Hello Paul Woodward,

My name is Gary Kruger and my family owns 320 acres of farmland along the Bell Creek north of Arlington. My farm has waterways/ditches through it that are tiled to drain my farm ground and also provides drainage for surface runoff from my neighbors fields and their tile lines that drain into my ditches. I also have NRD cost share terraces that have been installed with drain tile that also would be rendered useless and make my hill ground also unfarmable.

If the Bell Creek is dammed near or on my property, almost all of my farm will be under water or unfarmable from the tile being plugged. Also, access to my property will be severely limited as a county road bridge on road P9 will be underwater.

I am not a large farmer so losing this many acres out of my operation will greatly affect my ability to remain a farmer. Just as important, losing farmable land will prohibit passing a sustainable farm operation to my son.

My family and I are opposed to the Lower Platte Contingency Plan.

Thank you for your consideration,

Gary Kruger

# LOWER PLATTE RIVER DROUGHT CONSORTIUM PARTNERS



PAPIO-MISSOURI RIVER  
NATURAL RESOURCES DISTRICT



Lower Platte North  
Natural Resources District



LOWER PLATTE SOUTH  
NATURAL RESOURCES DISTRICT

NEBRASKA  
DEPT. OF NATURAL RESOURCES



## We Want to Hear Your Input!

Please provide your comments and views on the Drought Plan. Your feedback will be used for further evaluation, and will be taken into consideration as this project continues to move forward. We appreciate your input!

(Please print)

Name: Nancy Meyer Phone: 402.720.1058  
Address: 2043 C.R. 4 Email: nmeyer@istwater.com  
City: Cedar Bluffs State: NE Zip: 68005

### Comments:

- Please be sure to do thorough communication w/ all stakeholders.
- What if we did nothing, what would that look like? Consider putting that in the study to ground everyone on the reason for it.
- What if we did nothing except raise the cost of water? (I.E. free market solution may change water-wasting behaviors)
- Please do not design a solution to fit current needs. Please instead include future projections for population growth, Rural food production needs and climate change projections.
- We the taxpayers paid UNL to create a drought study spearheaded by Dr. Don Wilhite. If this report/study included that comprehensive research, you should mention this. If it did not, why not?
- Stakeholders in any option need a clear picture of what benefits and risks/responsibilities each option would involve. LPN NRD is already asking what's in it for us? Success of plan is in implementation so any entity asked to be responsible for any option's implementation should be set up to succeed, not be left holding the bag. Everyone worries about assuming all risk & no reward, as Kevin Aron pointed out.



RESOLUTION 2018-19

BOARD OF COUNTY SUPERVISORS  
WASHINGTON COUNTY, NEBRASKA

**WHEREAS**, the Lower Platte River NRD is proposing drought mitigation measures for the Lower Platte River Basin; and,

**WHEREAS**, included in that study is consideration of future dam construction within Washington County; and,

**WHEREAS**, significant impact to the agricultural industry and economy of Washington County would occur with removal of land from production for dam construction; and,

**WHEREAS**, drought mitigation proposals impacting the Bell Creek are cost prohibitive and other less costly options are available; and,

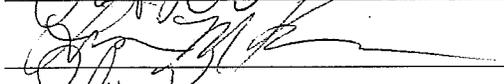
**WHEREAS**, future regulation of water volume within the Missouri River is uncertain and therefore unreliable; and,

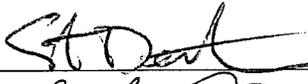
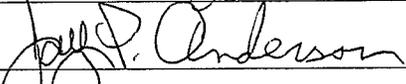
**WHEREAS**, this Board opposes the closure of any county roads for the construction of dams in Washington County; and

**WHEREAS**, this Board wishes to express its opposition to the construction of dams and implementation of well fields along the Bell Creek within Washington County for drought mitigation in the Lower Platte River Basin.

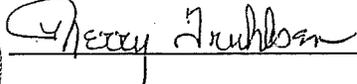
**NOW, THEREFORE, BE IT RESOLVED BY THIS BOARD OF COUNTY SUPERVISORS, WASHINGTON COUNTY, NEBRASKA** that this Board hereby expresses its opposition to the construction of dams and implementation of well fields along the Bell Creek within Washington County, Nebraska for drought mitigation in the Lower Platte River Basin.

DATED this 26<sup>th</sup> day of December, 2018.

  
\_\_\_\_\_  
  
\_\_\_\_\_  
  
\_\_\_\_\_  
  
\_\_\_\_\_

  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Bob Truhlsen  
  
\_\_\_\_\_  
ATTEST:



  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Merry Truhlsen, County Clerk

**TALBOT LAW OFFICE, P.C.**  
**A LIMITED LIABILITY ORGANIZATION**  
**1526 Washington Street, Suite H**  
**P.O. Box 405**  
**Blair, Nebraska 68008**

**Edmond E. Talbot III**  
**Licensed in Nebraska and Iowa**

**Phone (402) 426-3385**  
**Fax (402) 426-3387**  
**etalbot@talbotlawoffice.com**

December 27, 2018

Lower Platte River Drought Consortium Partners  
c/o Lower Platte South NRD  
PO Box 83581  
3125 Portia St.  
Lincoln, NE 68521

c/o Papio-Missouri River NRD  
8901 S. 154<sup>th</sup> St.  
Omaha, NE 68138-3621

Re: Proposed Dams in Washington County, Nebraska

To Whom It May Concern:

The undersigned, attorney for the Bell Creek Drainage District, submits this correspondence in opposition to any dam construction within Washington County and more particularly on the Bell Creek. This correspondence has been authorized by the Board of Directors of the Bell Creek Drainage District, and I am requesting that it be placed in the public records of the Lower Platte River NRD and the Papio-Missouri River NRD.

Sincerely,



Edmond E. Talbot III

EET:cmb  
cc: Steve Kruger  
Ted Japp DC  
Directors – Bell Creek

## Engel, John

---

**From:** Neal Suess <nsuess@loup.com>  
**Sent:** Friday, December 7, 2018 1:59 PM  
**To:** Engel, John  
**Cc:** Ron Ziola; Engelbert, Pat  
**Subject:** Low Platte River Basin Consortium Drought Plan Meeting and Presentation

John:

I appreciate the information that you shared with all participants at the meeting Wednesday night in Lincoln. We understand that you and the other participants are a long way from determining which direction to head and which methods of implementation to choose. I know that at meetings like that, some people like to dig into the minutia, in order to protect their own interests,

I just wanted to let you know that we appreciate being involved up front with where you are at regarding this and look forward to further discussions. We obviously have a concern with anything that affects Platte River flows (given the current state of our hydro license) and just want to make sure all views are represented and that all parties understand what effect certain projects can have on all other projects. This is pretty much why we have intervened in the Central Nebraska Interbasin transfer case between the Platte River and the Republican River. We are not necessarily against it, but want to make sure all parties understand the effects of these changes.

If you have any questions, we would be happy to discuss with you and others. Appreciate the discussion and look forward to hearing more in the future.

### Neal Suess, P.E.

President/CEO  
Loup Power District  
P.O. Box 988 (2404 15th Street)  
Columbus, NE 68602-0988  
*Phone: 402-564-3171*  
*Fax: 402-564-0970*  
*Cell: 402-910-8979*  
E-Mail: [nsuess@loup.com](mailto:nsuess@loup.com)



WASHINGTON COUNTY

# Pilot-Tribune & Enterprise

## Representatives encourage residents to voice opinions on drought mitigation plan

- Teresa Hoffman
- Dec 18, 2018

It's an essential part of the democratic process and two Washington County representatives are urging area residents to let their voices be heard as the process to develop a Lower Platte River Drought Contingency Plan continues.

Though he's been assured that the study is in the preliminary stages, Ted Japp of Blair, a member of the Papio-Missouri River Natural Resources District board, has concerns about the study's most recent draft because of the inclusion of the Bell Creek in Washington County.

Beginning in 2016, the Lower Platte, Papio-Missouri River, and Lower Platte North natural resources districts, Metropolitan Utilities District, Lincoln Water System and Nebraska Department of Natural Resources, collectively referred to as the Lower Platte River Consortium, began a collaborative effort to develop a drought contingency plan for the Lower Platte River Basin in Nebraska.

The focus of the first part of the plan is on augmenting surface water supplies in the Lower Platte River near Ashland.

Japp, who attended an open house on the plan Dec. 5 in Lincoln, said the most recent effort to study the issue stems from concerns about the City of Lincoln's water supply.

“In 2012 and 2002, the City of Lincoln imposed water restrictions because they were very concerned about their water supply diminishing to the point where it wouldn't be enough,” Japp told the Pilot-Tribune last week. “The Platte River tends to dry up a bit in the summertime and that was the concern. They needed to at least think outside of the box a little about ways to supplement Platte River water flow so they would ensure Lincoln, which is a growing community, would always have enough water.”

The most recent draft of the study offers a list of 11 potential mitigation measures, which are defined as actions, programs and strategies implemented during non-drought periods to address potential risks and effects and to reduce the need for response actions. Implementation of these measures, according to the study, would improve long-term resilience and reliability of the regional water study.

Two of the mitigation measures center on parts of the Bell Creek in Washington County, which is of concern to Japp and Steve Kruger, who represents District 6 on the Washington County Board of Supervisors. Kruger also attended the Dec. 5 open house.

The first is a surface water storage reservoir on the Bell Creek, which would be located east of Winslow and north of Arlington in Washington County. According to the study, it would be used to release water on demand.

Japp and Kruger are against the reservoir for several reasons.

“It's a pretty good size,” Japp said of the 1,720 surface acres. “That would involve an awful lot of farm land.”

Kruger joined Japp in expressing similar concerns, not only about farm land, saying “We aren't making any more ground elsewhere in this world” but also a loss in valuation for the county and area school districts.

“We would be losing, best I could figure, more valuation in our county than we gained this year in our valuation,” Kruger said.

Kruger is also concerned about the potential of roads being closed because of the reservoir.

“I don't know where the top of the elevation of that dam would be, but you've got to understand that the drop of the Bell Creek now it is so deep to begin with anyway and I don't know what the actual foot of drop would be from even the Telbasta Road, which is where the dam would be, on to Arlington,” he said. I don't know if it would be that great of an increase.”

Kruger believes there's not enough slope in the valley and it would “pretty much push water back up in the area of County Road 7 and probably push water back to County Road 4 and probably take three roads out,” indicating that scenario could affect public safety.

“That's one of my major concerns — the amount of roads that would be closed — because in our area, we have four fire departments and we need to have those roads available for emergency use.”

The second item relating to Washington County would involve pumping Missouri River water, via alluvial well-fields, into the Bell Creek Reservoir.

Kruger said that would involve pumping water from six wells north of Blair and putting piping along state Highway 91 to the bridge at Bell Creek, Japp and Kruger believe that it is a costly option.

In addition to attending the recent open house to express his opinion about the study, Japp said he's also talked with John Engel of HDR, the company in charge of the study, and he's been told not to worry.

“He said we have to put everything on the table,” Japp said.

Engel isn't the only person to assure Japp that the study is still is far from complete.

When the information about the study first came out, Japp said officials with the PMRNRD also told him not to panic, assuring him it was preliminary information.

But, while that may be the case, Japp and Kruger are concerned that the Bell Creek continues to be mentioned. In fact, Kruger said, the Bell Creek has been mentioned in three studies that have been done on this issue.

“They are telling me this is not anything to worry about at this point, but as Steve Kruger has said, why does it keep showing up?” Japp said. “It's never gone away completely and here it is again and that is the concern we have. Why doesn't it ever go away?”

HDR is expected to bring three or four of the 11 mitigation measures being considered forward for further study this spring, Japp said.

With that in mind, he and Kruger said now is the time for those who are concerned about the potential selection of the Bell Creek items for the plan to speak up.

Japp said he and Kruger encourage people affected by this issue, especially those who live north of Arlington in the Bell Creek area to contact Paul Woodward, groundwater management engineer for the PMRNRD, via email [pwoodward@pacionrd.org](mailto:pwoodward@pacionrd.org) or by calling 402-315-1772 to express their opinions.

Japp has also posted links and other information regarding public input on the study, on his Facebook page, [www.facebook.com/tedjappnrd](http://www.facebook.com/tedjappnrd).

“I've always told people, you have to let them know what your opinions are because if you don't disagree or if you don't voice your opinion, they kind of assume you are agreeing with them, so we don't want that,” he said.

Kruger agreed.

“It's easier to stop it from going forward than it is when it's already 80 to 90 percent finished,” he said.

A copy of Lower Platte Contingency Plan, and additional information on how to submit public comments can be found at [www.lpsnrd.org](http://www.lpsnrd.org).



Lower Platte Drought Consortium  
Open House  
December 5, 2018



Water Sustainability Fund

CONTACT INFORMATION		EMAIL	PHONE
Name	Dave Regina	dbrezina@gmail.com	402-270-1830
Name	Steven Kruger Superior Wabash County	stevenkruger@abbnbraska.com	402-478-4663
Name	Con Suoboda NRD - Director		402-488-8087
Name	Aung K. HL USBR		
Name	Phil Luebbert	Phillip.luebbert@gmail.com	402-499-4154
Name	Ron Ziola	ronziola@lup.com	402-564-3171

Lower Platte Drought Consortium  
Open House  
December 5, 2018



CONTACT INFORMATION		EMAIL	PHONE
Name	Rick Gammeter	rgammeter@Rockblaine.org	402 944 3388
Name	RICK KUOAT		
Name	Jack Nagel		402 430 6717
Name	RUSSELL MILLER	NES 313 408 7442.com	
Name	LIZ SARNO	organicsarno@gmail.com	402-309-0944
Name	Lawrence Stanislav	lstanislav1970@gmail	402-480-2157



Lower Platte Drought Consortium  
Open House  
December 5, 2018



CONTACT INFORMATION		EMAIL	PHONE
Name	Nancy Meyer LPN NRD	Nmeyer@istatek.com	402.720.1058
Name	Tom Mountford LPN NRD	tmountford@lpnrd.org	402-443-4675
Name	Don DrewBson LPs NRD	devldogdone@twc.com	
Name	Michael Kavan LPS NRD		402 429-0156
Name	Neal Sues Loup Power District	n.suesse@loup.com	402- 564-3171
Name	Ted & Lori Japp	drjapp@abbenebraska.com	402 427 7113

Lower Platte Drought Consortium  
Open House  
December 5, 2018



Water Sustainability Fund



CONTACT INFORMATION		EMAIL	PHONE
Name	Chelsea Johnson	chelseajarnet@gmail.com	402-274-7023
Name	Robert Conclanson	rcc1947@neb.rr.com	402-890-6403
Name	Jennifer Schell paper		
Name	Fayen Amen	<del>amen@amen.com</del>	
Name	Dan Schultz		
Name	JARED NELSON	Jnelson@lpswd.org	

Lower Platte Drought Consortium  
Open House  
December 5, 2018



CONTACT INFORMATION		EMAIL	PHONE
Name	George Cunningham	cunningham.g@plattemail.com	402-561-9422
Name	Neil Domingy	neil.domingy@usda.gov	402-437-4113-
Name	Dustin Wilcox	chilod@NEONET.ORG	
Name	Jim Shields - MUD		
Name	Mark Brohman - NET	mark.brohman@nebraska.gov	402-871-6795
Name	Glenn Johnson	glennjohnson39@gmail.com	



Water Sustainability Fund



CONTACT INFORMATION		EMAIL	PHONE
Name	Greg Osborn LPSNRD		
Name	Joe Birke LPNNRD		
Name	DAVID POTTER LPSNRD	dpotter@lpsned.org	476-2729
Name	Gary Aldridge LPSNRD		
Name	Donna Gauden City of Lincoln	dgauden@lincoln.ne.gov	402-441-8605
Name	Rickard Halvorsen	r.halvorsen@lpsnr.com	

Lower Platte Drought Consortium  
Open House  
December 5, 2018



CONTACT INFORMATION		EMAIL	PHONE
Name	FRANK FOLLARD	Follard@usa.com	82 380 7100
Name	Steve Owen Lincoln Water System	sowen@lincoln.ne.gov	402.441.5925
Name	Daryl Anderson Lower Platte North	danderson@lpn.net	802-847-0884
Name	Don Kawan L.P.N., N.R.D.		666-5253
Name	Bob Heger LPN NRD	bobheger14@hotmail	402 367 7879
Name	LARRY RUTH LPN NRD	larry.lynn.ruth@gmail.com	402. 430. 9299